GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 23

The Education of Cyrus

Xenophon

ΚΥΡΟΥ ΠΑΙΔΕΙΑ

The Education of Cyrus

Part Two: Books V–VIII

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

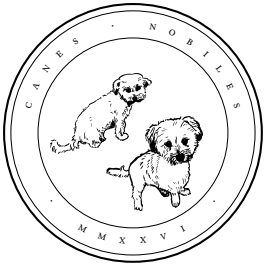


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 23 of the Canes Nobiles Greek interlinear texts

The Greek text follows Gemoll's Teubner of 1912

Set from page scans of the edition

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Words Gemoll secludes are not printed; words he supplies are printed without their brackets; ∗∗∗ marks a gap in the text. Book VIII, chapter 8, which he brackets as not Xenophon's, is printed.

CONTENTS

BOOK V

I · Panthea and Araspas 7
II · Gobryas' Fortress 20
III · Gadatas Comes Over 37
IV · The Rescue of Gadatas 58
V · Cyaxares Reconciled 78

BOOK VI

I · Araspas Goes Over 101
II · Croesus' Coalition 122

BOOK VI

(continued)

III · The Order of Battle 140
IV · Panthea Arms Abradatas 155

BOOK VII

I · Thymbrara 163
II · Sardis and Croesus 184
III · The Death of Panthea 195
IV · Caria and Phrygia 201
V · The Fall of Babylon 208

BOOK VIII

I · The Court 241
II · Friends by Kindness 259
III · The Procession 274
IV · The Victory Feast 294
V · The Covenant with Persia 308
VI · The Satraps 319
VII · The Death of Cyrus 330
VIII · The Decline of the Persians 342

BOOK V

I · PANTHEA AND ARASPAS

Cyrus has Cyaxares' share of the spoil kept for him and gives a Mede the singing girl he asks for. He puts the captured Susian woman, wife of Abradatas, in the keeping of his boyhood friend Araspas, who describes her beauty and grief and urges Cyrus to see her. Cyrus refuses, fearing to neglect his duties, and they argue whether love is voluntary; Araspas, sure he is master of himself, is caught by love. Cyrus asks the Medes and allies to stay with him of their own will; the Mede who once claimed kinship with Cyrus, Tigranes, the Hyrcanian, and all the Medes pledge themselves, and the Persians divide the tents.

Οἳ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξάν τε καὶ ἔλεξαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος 1

They indeed then these(-things) did both and said — and Cyrus

τὰ μὲν Κυαξάρου ἐκέλευσε διαλαβόντας φυλάττειν

the(-things) indeed of-Cyaxares ordered having-taken-over to-guard(-them)

οὓς ᾔδει οἰκειοτάτους αὐτῷ ὄντας· καὶ ὅσα ἐμοὶ δίδοτε,

whom he-knew most-intimate to-him being and what to-me you-give

ἡδέως, ἔφη, δέχομαι· χρήσεται δ' αὐτοῖς ὑμῶν ὁ ἀεὶ

gladly he-said I-accept will-use and them of-you the(-man) always

μάλιστα δεόμενος. φιλόμουσος δέ τις τῶν Μήδων εἶπε,

most needing music-loving and a-certain of-the Medes said

Καὶ μὴν ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, τῶν μουσουργῶν ἀκούσας χθὲς

And truly I O Cyrus the musicians having-heard yesterday

ἑσπέρας ὧν σὺ νῦν ἔχεις, ἤκουσά τε ἡδέως κἄν μοι

evening whom you now have heard(-them) both gladly and-if to-me

δῷς αὐτῶν μίαν, στρατεύεσθαι ἄν μοι δοκῶ ἥδιον

you-give of-them one to-campaign — to-myself I-seem more-gladly

ἢ οἴκοι μένειν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,

than at-home to-stay — and Cyrus said But I he-said

καὶ δίδωμί σοι καὶ χάριν οἶμαι σοὶ πλείω ἔχειν ὅτι

both give(-her) to-you and gratitude I-think to-you more to-have because

ἐμὲ ἤτησας ἢ σὺ ἐμοὶ ὅτι λαμβάνεις· οὕτως ἐγὼ ὑμῖν
me you-asked than you to-me because you-receive so I to-you
διψῶ χαρίζεσθαι. ταύτην μὲν οὖν ἔλαβεν ὁ αἰτήσας.
thirst to-do-favors this-one indeed then took the(-man) having-asked

2 Καλέσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος Ἀράσπαν Μῆδον, ὃς ἐκ παιδὸς ἦν
Having-called and — Cyrus Araspas a-Mede who from boyhood was
ἑταῖρος αὐτῷ, ᾧ καὶ τὴν στολὴν ἐκδὺς ἔδωκε τὴν
comrade to-him to-whom also the robe having-taken-off he-gave the
Μηδικήν, ὅτε παρὰ Ἀστυάγους εἰς Πέρσας ἀπήει, τοῦτον
Median when from Astyages to Persians he-was-departing this(-one)
ἐκέλευσε διαφυλάττειν αὐτῷ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὴν σκηνήν·
he-ordered to-guard-carefully for-him the woman and the tent

3 ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ γυνὴ Ἀβραδάτου τοῦ Σουσίου· ὅτε δὲ
was and this the woman of-Abradatas the Susian when and
ἡλίσκετο τὸ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων στρατόπεδον, ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς
was-being-taken the of-the Assyrians camp the husband of-her
οὐκ ἔτυχεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ὤν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν
not happened in the camp being but to the
Βακτρίων βασιλέα πρεσβεύων ᾤχετο· ἔπεμψε δὲ αὐτὸν
of-Bactrians king going-as-envoy had-gone sent and him
ὁ Ἀσσύριος περὶ συμμαχίας· ξένος γὰρ ὢν ἐτύγχανε
the Assyrian about an-alliance guest-friend for being he-happened
τῷ τῶν Βακτρίων βασιλεῖ· ταύτην οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευε
to-the of-the Bactrians king this-one then — Cyrus ordered
διαφυλάττειν τὸν Ἀράσπαν, ἕως ἂν αὐτὸς λάβῃ.
to-guard-carefully — Araspas until — himself should-take(-her)

4 κελευόμενος δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας ἐπήρετο, Ἑόρακας δή, ὦ Κῦρε,
being-ordered and — Araspas asked Have-you-seen then O Cyrus
ἔφη, τὴν γυναῖκα, ἣν με κελεύεις φυλάττειν; Μὰ Δί', ἔφη
he-said the woman whom me you-order to-guard No-by Zeus said
ὁ Κῦρος, οὐκ ἔγωγε. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἡνίκα ἐξῃροῦμέν
— Cyrus not I-at-least But I he-said when we-were-choosing-out

σοι αὐτήν· καὶ δῆτα, ὅτε μὲν εἰσήλθομεν εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν
for-you her and indeed when indeed we-went-in into the tent
αὐτῆς, τὸ πρῶτον οὐ διέγνωμεν αὐτήν· χαμαί τε γὰρ
of-her the first not we-distinguished her on-the-ground both for
ἐκάθητο καὶ αἱ θεράπαιναι πᾶσαι περὶ αὐτήν· καὶ τοίνυν
she-sat and the maidservants all around her and then
ὁμοίαν ταῖς δούλαις εἶχε τὴν ἐσθῆτα· ἐπεὶ δὲ γνῶναι
like to-the slaves she-had the clothing when but to-know
βουλόμενοι ὁποία εἴη ἡ δέσποινα πάσας περιεβλέψαμεν,
wishing what-sort was the mistress all we-looked-round-at
ταχὺ πάνυ καὶ πασῶν ἐφαίνετο διαφέρουσα τῶν ἄλλων,
quickly very and of-all she-appeared differing from-the others
καίπερ καθημένη κεκαλυμμένη τε καὶ εἰς γῆν ὁρῶσα.
although sitting veiled both and to ground looking
ὡς δὲ ἀναστῆναι αὐτὴν ἐκελεύσαμεν, συνανέστησαν μὲν 5
when and to-stand-up her we-bade stood-up-with indeed
αὐτῇ ἅπασαι αἱ ἀμφ' αὐτήν, διήνεγκε δ' ἐνταῦθα
her all the(-women) about her she-stood-out but there
πρῶτον μὲν τῷ μεγέθει, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ
first indeed in-the stature then and also in-the excellence and
τῇ εὐσχημοσύνῃ καίπερ ἐν ταπεινῷ σχήματι ἑστηκυῖα.
in-the grace although in humble posture standing
δῆλα δ' ἦν αὐτῇ καὶ τὰ δάκρυα στάζοντα, τὰ μὲν
plain and were for-her also the tears dripping the(-ones) indeed
κατὰ τῶν πέπλων, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς πόδας.
down the robes the(-ones) and also onto the feet
ὡς δ' ἡμῶν ὁ γεραίτατος εἶπε Θάρρει, ὦ γύναι· καλὸν μὲν 6
when and of-us the oldest said Take-heart O woman noble indeed
γὰρ κἀγαθὸν ἀκούομεν καὶ τὸν σὸν ἄνδρα εἶναι· νῦν μέντοι
for and-good we-hear also the your husband to-be now however
ἐξαιροῦμεν ἀνδρί σε εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὔτε τὸ εἶδος ἐκείνου
we-choose-out for-a-man you well know that neither in-the form than-him

χείρονι οὔτε τὴν γνώμην οὔτε δύναμιν ἥττω ἔχοντι, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς
worse nor in-the mind nor power less having but as
ἡμεῖς γε νομίζομεν, εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος ἀνήρ, καὶ Κῦρος
we at-least think if anyone also other man also Cyrus
ἄξιός ἐστι θαυμάζεσθαι, οὗ σὺ ἔσῃ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε· ὡς οὖν
worthy is to-be-admired whose you will-be the from now-on when then
τοῦτο ἤκουσεν ἡ γυνή, περικατερρήξατό τε τὸν ἄνωθεν
this heard the woman she-tore-down both the upper
πέπλον καὶ ἀνωδύρατο· συνανεβόησαν δὲ καὶ αἱ δμωαί.
robe and lamented cried-out-with(-her) and also the handmaids

7 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐφάνη μὲν αὐτῆς τὸ πλεῖστον μέρος τοῦ
in this and appeared indeed of-her the most part of-the
προσώπου, ἐφάνη δὲ ἡ δέρη καὶ αἱ χεῖρες· καὶ εὖ ἴσθι, ἔφη,
face appeared and the neck and the hands and well know he-said
ὦ Κῦρε, ὡς ἐμοί τε ἔδοξε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασι τοῖς
O Cyrus that to-me both it-seemed and to-the others all the(-ones)
ἰδοῦσι μήπω φῦναι μηδὲ γενέσθαι γυνὴ ἀπὸ θνητῶν
having-seen never-yet to-have-grown nor to-have-been-born a-woman from mortals
τοιαύτη ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀλλὰ πάντως, ἔφη, καὶ σὺ θέασαι αὐτήν.
such in — Asia but by-all-means he-said also you look-at her

8 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη, Μὰ Δία, πολύ γε ἧττον, εἰ τοιαύτη
and — Cyrus said No-by Zeus much at-least less if such
ἐστὶν οἵαν σὺ λέγεις. Τί δαί; ἔφη ὁ νεανίσκος. Ὅτι,
she-is as you say What then said the young-man Because
ἔφη, εἰ νυνὶ σοῦ ἀκούσας ὅτι καλή ἐστι πεισθήσομαι
he-said if now from-you having-heard that beautiful she-is I-shall-be-persuaded
ἐλθεῖν θεασόμενος, οὐδὲ πάνυ μοι σχολῆς οὔσης, δέδοικα
to-go going-to-look not-even very to-me leisure being I-fear
μὴ πολὺ θᾶττον ἐκείνη αὖθις ἀναπείσῃ καὶ πάλιν ἐλθεῖν
lest much sooner she again persuade(-me) also again to-go

θεασόμενον· ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἴσως ἂν ἀμελήσας ὧν με
going-to-look from and this perhaps — having-neglected what me
δεῖ πράττειν καθήμην ἐκείνην θεώμενος.
must to-do I-would-sit her watching
καὶ ὁ νεανίσκος ἀναγελάσας εἶπεν, Οἴει γάρ, ἔφη, 9
and the young-man having-laughed-out said Do-you-think then he-said
ὦ Κῦρε, ἱκανὸν εἶναι κάλλος ἀνθρώπου ἀναγκάζειν τὸν
O Cyrus able to-be beauty of-a-human to-compel the(-man)
μὴ βουλόμενον πράττειν παρὰ τὸ βέλτιστον; εἰ μέντοι,
not wishing to-act contrary-to the best if however
ἔφη, τοῦτο οὕτως ἐπεφύκει, πάντας ἂν ἠνάγκαζεν ὁμοίως.
he-said this so were-by-nature all — it-would-compel alike
ὁρᾷς, ἔφη, τὸ πῦρ, ὡς πάντας ὁμοίως καίει;
you-see he-said the fire how all alike it-burns
πέφυκε γὰρ τοιοῦτον· τῶν δὲ καλῶν τῶν μὲν ἐρῶσι 10
it-is-by-nature for such of-the but beautiful(-ones) some indeed they-love
τῶν δ' οὔ, καὶ ἄλλος γε ἄλλου. ἐθελούσιον γάρ, ἔφη,
some but not and one at-least another voluntary for he-said
ἐστί, καὶ ἐρᾷ ἕκαστος ὧν ἂν βούληται· αὐτίκ', ἔφη,
it-is and loves each whom — he-wishes for-instance he-said
οὐκ ἐρᾷ ἀδελφὸς ἀδελφῆς, ἄλλος δὲ ταύτης, οὐδὲ πατὴρ
not loves a-brother a-sister another but her nor a-father
θυγατρός, ἄλλος δὲ ταύτης· καὶ γὰρ φόβος καὶ νόμος
a-daughter another but her both for fear and law
ἱκανὸς ἔρωτα κωλύειν.
sufficient love to-prevent
εἰ δέ γ', ἔφη, νόμος τεθείη μὴ ἐσθίοντας μὴ πεινῆν 11
if but at-least he-said a-law were-laid-down not eating not to-be-hungry
καὶ μὴ πίνοντας μὴ διψῆν, μηδὲ ῥιγοῦν τοῦ χειμῶνος
and not drinking not to-be-thirsty nor to-be-cold in-the winter
μηδὲ θάλπεσθαι τοῦ θέρους, οὐδεὶς ἂν νόμος δυνηθείη
nor to-be-warm in-the summer no — law could

διαπράξασθαι ταῦτα πείθεσθαι ἀνθρώπους· πεφύκασι
to-accomplish these(-things) to-obey men they-are-by-nature
γὰρ ὑπὸ τούτων κρατεῖσθαι. τὸ δ' ἐρᾶν ἐθελούσιόν ἐστιν·
for by these to-be-mastered the but to-love voluntary is
ἕκαστος γοῦν τῶν καθ' ἑαυτὸν ἐρᾷ, ὥσπερ ἱματίων
each at-any-rate the(-things) suited-to himself loves just-as cloaks
καὶ ὑποδημάτων.
and shoes

12 Πῶς οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰ ἐθελούσιόν ἐστι τὸ ἐρασθῆναι,
How then said — Cyrus if voluntary is the to-fall-in-love
οὐ καὶ παύσασθαι ἔστιν ὅταν τις βούληται; ἀλλ' ἐγώ,
not also to-stop is-it-possible whenever one wishes but I
ἔφη, ἑόρακα καὶ κλαίοντας ὑπὸ λύπης δι' ἔρωτα, καὶ
he-said have-seen even weeping from grief through love and
δουλεύοντάς γε τοῖς ἐρωμένοις καὶ μάλα κακὸν νομίζοντας
being-slaves at-least to-the beloved and very evil thinking
πρὶν ἐρᾶν τὸ δουλεύειν, καὶ διδόντας γε πολλὰ ὧν
before to-love the being-a-slave and giving at-least many(-things) of-which
οὐ βέλτιον αὐτοῖς στέρεσθαι, καὶ εὐχομένους ὥσπερ καὶ
not better for-them to-be-deprived and praying as-if also
ἄλλης τινὸς νόσου ἀπαλλαγῆναι, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους μέντοι
from-other some disease to-be-freed and not able however
ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ δεδεμένους ἰσχυροτέρᾳ ἀνάγκῃ ἢ εἰ
to-be-freed but bound by-stronger necessity than if
ἐν σιδήρῳ ἐδέδεντο. παρέχουσι γοῦν ἑαυτοὺς τοῖς
in iron they-had-been-bound they-give at-any-rate themselves to-the
ἐρωμένοις πολλὰ καὶ εἰκῇ ὑπηρετοῦντας· καὶ μέντοι
beloved many(-things) and at-random serving and indeed
οὐδ' ἀποδιδράσκειν ἐπιχειροῦσι, τοιαῦτα κακὰ ἔχοντες,
not-even to-run-away they-try such evils having
ἀλλὰ καὶ φυλάττουσι τοὺς ἐρωμένους μή ποι ἀποδρῶσι.
but even they-guard the beloved lest anywhere they-run-away

Καὶ ὁ νεανίσκος εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα, Ποιοῦσι γάρ, ἔφη, 13
And the young-man said to these(-things) They-do indeed he-said
ταῦτα· εἰσὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, μοχθηροὶ οἱ τοιοῦτοι· διόπερ οἶμαι
these(-things) are however he-said wretched the such(-men) wherefore I-think
καὶ εὔχονται μὲν ἀεὶ ὡς ἄθλιοι ὄντες ἀποθανεῖν, μυρίων δ'
also they-pray indeed always as miserable being to-die countless and
οὐσῶν μηχανῶν ἀπαλλαγῆς τοῦ βίου οὐκ ἀπαλλάττονται.
being means of-release from-the life not they-are-released
οἱ αὐτοὶ δέ γε οὗτοι καὶ κλέπτειν ἐπιχειροῦσι καὶ
the same but at-least these also to-steal try and
οὐκ ἀπέχονται τῶν ἀλλοτρίων, ἀλλ' ἐπειδάν τι
not keep-away-from the(-things) of-others but when something
ἁρπάσωσιν ἢ κλέψωσιν, ὁρᾷς, ἔφη, ὅτι σὺ πρῶτος, ὡς
they-seize or steal you-see he-said that you first as
οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον ὂν τὸ κλέπτειν, αἰτιᾷ τὸν κλέπτοντα
not necessary being the to-steal blame the(-man) stealing
καὶ ἁρπάζοντα, καὶ οὐ συγγιγνώσκεις, ἀλλὰ κολάζεις.
and seizing and not you-pardon(-him) but you-punish(-him)
οὕτω μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ οἱ καλοὶ οὐκ ἀναγκάζουσιν ἐρᾶν 14
so however he-said also the beautiful not compel to-love
ἑαυτῶν οὐδ' ἐφίεσθαι ἀνθρώπους ὧν μὴ δεῖ, ἀλλὰ τὰ
themselves nor to-desire men what not (one)-must but the
μοχθηρὰ ἀνθρώπια πασῶν οἶμαι τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν ἀκρατῆ
wretched little-men of-all I-think the desires without-mastery
ἐστι, κἄπειτα ἔρωτα αἰτιῶνται· οἱ δέ γε καλοὶ κἀγαθοὶ
are and-then love they-blame the but at-least noble and-good
ἐπιθυμοῦντες καὶ χρυσίου καὶ ἵππων ἀγαθῶν καὶ γυναικῶν
desiring both gold and horses good and women
καλῶν, ὅμως πάντων τούτων δύνανται ἀπέχεσθαι ὥστε
beautiful yet all these can to-keep-away-from so-as
μὴ ἅπτεσθαι αὐτῶν παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον·
not to-touch them contrary-to the just

15 ἐγὼ γοῦν, ἔφη, ταύτην ἑορακὼς καὶ πάνυ καλῆς
I at-any-rate he-said her having-seen and very beautiful
δοξάσης μοι εἶναι ὅμως καὶ παρὰ σοί εἰμι καὶ ἱππεύω
having-seemed to-me to-be yet both with you am and ride
καὶ τἆλλα τὰ ἐμοὶ προσήκοντα ἀποτελῶ.
and the-other-things the to-me belonging accomplish

16 Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· ἴσως γὰρ θᾶττον ἀπῆλθες ἢ
Yes by Zeus said — Cyrus perhaps for sooner you-went-away than
ἐν ὅσῳ χρόνῳ ἔρως πέφυκε συσκευάζεσθαι ἄνθρωπον.
in as-much time love is-by-nature to-take-hold-of a-man
καὶ πυρὸς γάρ τοι ἔστι θιγόντα μὴ εὐθὺς καίεσθαι
even fire for surely it-is-possible having-touched not at-once to-be-burned
καὶ τὰ ξύλα οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀναλάμπει· ὅμως δ᾽ ἔγωγε οὔτε
and the wood not at-once blazes-up yet but I-at-least neither
πυρὸς ἑκὼν εἶναι ἅπτομαι οὔτε τοὺς καλοὺς εἰσορῶ.
fire willingly — touch nor the beautiful look-at
οὐδέ γε σοὶ συμβουλεύω, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ἐν τοῖς
nor at-least to-you advise he-said O Araspas on the
καλοῖς ἐᾶν τὴν ὄψιν ἐνδιατρίβειν· ὡς τὸ μὲν πῦρ
beautiful to-let the sight linger since the indeed fire
τοὺς ἁπτομένους καίει, οἱ δὲ καλοὶ καὶ τοὺς ἄπωθεν
the(-ones) touching burns the but beautiful even the(-ones) from-afar
θεωμένους ὑφάπτουσιν, ὥστε αἴθεσθαι τῷ ἔρωτι.
looking-on kindle so-that to-be-inflamed with-the love

17 Θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· οὐδ᾽ ἐὰν μηδέποτε παύσωμαι
Take-heart he-said O Cyrus not-even if never I-cease
θεώμενος, οὐ μὴ κρατηθῶ ὥστε ποιεῖν τι ὧν μὴ
looking not — I-shall-be-overcome so-as to-do anything of-what not
χρὴ ποιεῖν. Κάλλιστα, ἔφη, λέγεις· φύλαττε τοίνυν,
(one)-must to-do Most-finely he-said you-speak guard then

ἔφη, ὥσπερ σε κελεύω καὶ ἐπιμελοῦ αὐτῆς· ἴσως γὰρ
he-said as you I-order and take-care-of her perhaps for
ἂν πάνυ ἡμῖν ἐν καιρῷ γένοιτο αὕτη ἡ γυνή.
— very to-us in season may-be this the woman
τότε μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπόντες διελύθησαν. Ὁ δὲ νεανίσκος 18
then indeed then these(-things) having-said they-parted The but young-man
ἅμα μὲν ὁρῶν καλὴν τὴν γυναῖκα, ἅμα
at-the-same-time indeed seeing beautiful the woman at-the-same-time
δὲ αἰσθανόμενος τὴν καλοκἀγαθίαν αὐτῆς, ἅμα δὲ
and perceiving the nobility of-her at-the-same-time and
θεραπεύων αὐτὴν καὶ οἰόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτῇ, ἅμα
serving her and thinking to-please her at-the-same-time
δὲ αἰσθανόμενος οὐκ ἀχάριστον οὖσαν, ἀλλ' ἐπιμελομένην
and perceiving(-her) not ungracious being but taking-care
διὰ τῶν αὑτῆς οἰκετῶν ὡς καὶ εἰσιόντι εἴη αὐτῷ τὰ
through the of-herself servants that both on-his-coming-in might-be for-him the
δέοντα καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀσθενήσειεν, ὡς μηδενὸς ἐνδέοιτο,
necessary(-things) and if ever he-should-fall-ill that of-nothing he-might-be-in-need
ἐκ πάντων τούτων ἡλίσκετο ἔρωτι, καὶ ἴσως οὐδὲν
from all these was-captured by-love and perhaps nothing
θαυμαστὸν ἔπασχε. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐπράττετο.
surprising he-suffered and these(-things) indeed then so were-done
Βουλόμενος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐθελοντὰς μένειν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ 19
Wishing and — Cyrus as-volunteers to-remain with himself
τούς τε Μήδους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, συνεκάλεσε πάντας
the both Medes and the allies he-called-together all
τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους· ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
the(-men) in-authority when and they-had-come-together he-spoke as-follows
Ἄνδρες Μῆδοι καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς οἶδα 20
Men Medes and all the(-men) present I you know
σαφῶς ὅτι οὔτε χρημάτων δεόμενοι σὺν ἐμοὶ ἐξήλθετε
clearly that neither money needing with me you-came-out

οὔτε Κυαξάρῃ νομίζοντες τοῦτο ὑπηρετεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐμοὶ
nor to-Cyaxares thinking this to-serve but to-me
βουλόμενοι τοῦτο χαρίζεσθαι καὶ ἐμὲ τιμῶντες νυκτοπορεῖν
wishing this to-do-a-favor and me honoring to-march-by-night
καὶ κινδυνεύειν σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠθελήσατε.
and to-run-risks with me you-were-willing

21 καὶ χάριν τούτων ἐγὼ ὑμῖν ἔχω μέν, εἰ μὴ ἀδικῶ·
and gratitude for-these I to-you have indeed if not I-do-wrong
ἀποδιδόναι δὲ ἀξίαν οὔπω δύναμιν ἔχειν μοι δοκῶ. καὶ
to-repay but worth not-yet power to-have to-me I-seem and
τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ αἰσχύνομαι λέγων· τὸ δ᾽ ἐὰν μένητε
this indeed not I-am-ashamed saying the(-thing) but if you-stay
παρ᾽ ἐμοί, ἀποδώσω, τοῦτο, εὖ ἴστε, ἔφη, αἰσχυνοίμην ἂν
with me I-shall-repay this well know he-said I-would-be-ashamed —
εἰπεῖν· νομίζω γὰρ ἐμαυτὸν ἐοικέναι ἂν λέγοντι ταῦτα
to-say I-think for myself to-resemble — one-saying these(-things)
ἕνεκα τοῦ ὑμᾶς μᾶλλον ἐθέλειν παρ᾽ ἐμοὶ καταμένειν.
for-the-sake-of the you more to-wish with me to-remain
ἀντὶ δὲ τούτου τάδε λέγω· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑμῖν, κἂν ἤδη
instead and of-this these(-things) I-say I for to-you even-if already
ἀπίητε Κυαξάρῃ πειθόμενοι, ὅμως, ἂν ἀγαθόν τι
you-go-away Cyaxares obeying yet if good anything
πράξω, πειράσομαι οὕτω ποιεῖν ὥστε καὶ ὑμᾶς ἐμὲ ἐπαινεῖν.
I-do I-shall-try so to-act so-that also you me to-praise

22 οὐ γὰρ δὴ αὐτός γε ἄπειμι, ἀλλὰ καὶ Ὑρκανίοις
not for indeed myself at-least I-shall-go-away but also to-the-Hyrcanians
οἷς τοὺς ὅρκους καὶ τὰς δεξιὰς ἔδωκα ἐμπεδώσω
to-whom the oaths and the right-hands I-gave I-shall-abide-by(-them)
καὶ οὔποτε τούτους προδιδοὺς ἁλώσομαι, καὶ τῷ νῦν
and never them betraying I-shall-be-caught and to-the now

διδόντι Γωβρύᾳ καὶ τείχη ἡμῖν καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν
giving Gobryas both walls to-us and country and power
πειράσομαι ποιεῖν μὴ μεταμελῆσαι τῆς πρὸς ἐμὲ ὁδοῦ.
I-shall-try to-make not to-regret of-the to me journey
καὶ τὸ μέγιστον δή, θεῶν οὕτω διδόντων περιφανῶς 23
and the greatest indeed gods so giving manifestly
ἀγαθὰ καὶ φοβοίμην ἂν αὐτοὺς καὶ αἰσχυνοίμην
good-things both I-would-fear — them and be-ashamed
ἀπολιπὼν ταῦτα εἰκῇ ἀπελθεῖν. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
having-abandoned these(-things) at-random to-go-away I indeed then
οὕτως, ἔφη, ποιήσω· ὑμεῖς δὲ ὅπως γιγνώσκετε οὕτω
so he-said shall-do you and as you-judge so
καὶ ποιεῖτε, καὶ ἐμοὶ εἴπατε ὅ τι ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῇ.
also do and to-me tell what ever — to-you seems-best
ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε. Πρῶτος δ' ὁ φήσας ποτὲ 24
he indeed so spoke First and the(-man) having-said once
συγγενὴς τοῦ Κύρου εἶναι εἶπεν, Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μέν, ἔφη, ὦ
kinsman — of-Cyrus to-be said But I indeed he-said O
βασιλεῦ· βασιλεὺς γὰρ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖς σὺ φύσει πεφυκέναι
king king for to-me-at-least you-seem you by-nature to-be
οὐδὲν ἧττον ἢ ὁ ἐν τῷ σμήνει φυόμενος τῶν
no less than the(-one) in the hive born of-the
μελιττῶν ἡγεμών· ἐκείνῳ τε γὰρ αἱ μέλιτται ἑκοῦσαι μὲν
bees leader him both for the bees willingly indeed
πείθονται, ὅπου δ' ἂν μένῃ, οὐδεμία ἐντεῦθεν ἀπέρχεται·
obey wherever and — he-stays none from-there departs
ἐὰν δέ ποι ἐξίῃ, οὐδεμία αὐτοῦ ἀπολείπεται. οὕτω
if and anywhere he-goes-out none of-him is-left-behind so
δεινός τις ἔρως αὐταῖς τοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγγίγνεται·
terrible some love in-them for-the to-be-ruled by him is-inborn

25 καὶ πρὸς σὲ δέ μοι δοκοῦσι παραπλησίως πως οἱ
and toward you and to-me seem in-like-manner somehow the
ἄνθρωποι φιλίως διακεῖσθαι. καὶ γὰρ εἰς Πέρσας ὅτε
men friendly to-be-disposed and for to Persians when
παρ' ἡμῶν ἀπήεις, τίς Μήδων ἢ γέρων ἢ νέος
from us you-were-departing who of-Medes either old or young
σοῦ ἀπελείφθη τὸ μή σοι ἀκολουθεῖν ἕστε Ἀστυάγης
from-you was-left-behind so-as not you to-follow until Astyages
ἡμᾶς ἀπέστρεψεν; ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐκ Περσῶν βοηθὸς ἡμῖν
us turned-back when and from Persians as-helper to-us
ὡρμήθης, σχεδὸν αὖ ἑωρῶμεν τοὺς φίλους σου πάντας
you-set-out nearly again we-saw the friends your all
ἐθελουσίους συνεπομένους. ὅτε δ' αὖ τῆς δεῦρο στρατείας
willing following-along when and again the hither expedition
ἐπεθύμησας, πάντες σοι Μῆδοι ἑκόντες ἠκολούθησαν.
you-desired all you Medes willingly followed

26 νῦν δ' αὖ οὕτως ἔχομεν ὡς σὺν μὲν σοὶ ὅμως καὶ
now and again so we-are that with indeed you yet even
ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ὄντες θαρροῦμεν, ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ καὶ οἴκαδε
in the hostile(-land) being we-are-confident without but you even home
ἀπιέναι φοβούμεθα. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι ὅπως ποιήσουσιν
to-go-away we-fear the indeed then others how they-will-act
αὐτοὶ ἐροῦσιν· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ὧν ἐγὼ κρατῶ
themselves will-say I but O Cyrus both whom I command
καὶ μενοῦμεν παρὰ σοὶ καὶ ὁρῶντες σὲ ἀνεξόμεθα καὶ
and we-shall-remain with you and seeing you we-shall-bear-up and
καρτερήσομεν ὑπὸ σοῦ εὐεργετούμενοι.
we-shall-endure by you being-benefited

27 Ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔλεξεν ὁ Τιγράνης ὧδε· Σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,
Upon this spoke — Tigranes thus You he-said O Cyrus
μήποτε θαυμάσῃς ἂν ἐγὼ σιωπῶ· ἡ γὰρ ψυχή, ἔφη, οὐχ
never wonder if I keep-silent the for soul he-said not

ὡς βουλεύσουσα παρεσκεύασται ἀλλ᾽ ὡς ποιήσουσα ὅ
as going-to-deliberate is-prepared but as going-to-do what
τι ἂν παραγγέλῃς.
ever — you-command
ὁ δὲ Ὑρκάνιος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ᾽ ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ Μῆδοι, εἰ νῦν 28
the and Hyrcanian said But I indeed O Medes if now
ἀπέλθοιτε, δαίμονος ἂν φαίην τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν εἶναι τὸ μὴ
you-should-go-away of-a-divinity — I-would-say the plot to-be the not
ἐâσαι ὑμᾶς μέγα εὐδαίμονας γενέσθαι· ἀνθρωπίνῃ δὲ γνώμῃ
to-allow you greatly happy to-become by-human but judgment
τίς ἂν ἢ φευγόντων πολεμίων ἀποτρέποιτο ἢ ὅπλα
who — either fleeing enemies would-turn-away(-from) or arms
παραδιδόντων οὐκ ἂν λαμβάνοι ἢ ἑαυτοὺς διδόντων καὶ
surrendering not — would-take or themselves giving and
τὰ ἑαυτῶν οὐκ ἂν δέχοιτο, ἄλλως τε καὶ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος
the(-things) of-themselves not — would-accept especially both and the leader
ἡμῖν ὄντος τοιούτου ὃς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ὄμνυμι ὑμῖν πάντας τοὺς
to-us being such who to-me seems I-swear to-you all the
θεούς, εὖ ποιῶν ἡμᾶς μᾶλλον ἥδεσθαι ἢ ἑαυτὸν πλουτίζων.
gods well doing us more to-rejoice than himself enriching
ἐπὶ τούτῳ πάντες οἱ Μῆδοι τοιάδ᾽ ἔλεγον· Σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, 29
upon this all the Medes as-follows said You O Cyrus
καὶ ἐξήγαγες ἡμᾶς καὶ οἴκαδε ὅταν ἀπιέναι καιρὸς
both led-out us and home when to-go-away the-time
δοκῇ, σὺν σοὶ ἡμᾶς ἄγε. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἀκούσας
seems with you us lead — and Cyrus these(-things) having-heard
ἐπηύξατο, Ἀλλ᾽, ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, αἰτοῦμαί σε, δὸς τοὺς
prayed-in-addition But O Zeus greatest I-ask you grant the(-ones)
ἐμὲ τιμῶντας νικῆσαί με εὖ ποιοῦντα.
me honoring to-surpass me well doing

30 ἐκ τούτου ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους φυλακὰς
from this he-ordered the indeed others guards
καταστήσαντας ἀμφ' αὑτοὺς ἤδη ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ Πέρσας
having-posted about themselves now to-take-their-rest the and Persians
διαλαβεῖν τὰς σκηνάς, τοῖς μὲν ἱππεῦσι τὰς
to-divide-among(-themselves) the tents to-the indeed horsemen the(-ones)
τούτοις πρεπούσας, τοῖς δὲ πεζοῖς τὰς τούτοις ἀρκούσας·
for-these suitable to-the and foot-soldiers the(-ones) for-these sufficient
καὶ οὕτω καταστήσασθαι ὅπως ποιοῦντες οἱ ἐν ταῖς
and so to-arrange so-that doing the(-men) in the
σκηναῖς πάντα τὰ δέοντα φέρωσιν εἰς τὰς τάξεις
tents all the necessary(-things) they-might-bring to the companies
τοῖς Πέρσαις καὶ τοὺς ἵππους τεθεραπευμένους παρέχωσι,
for-the Persians and the horses groomed might-provide
Πέρσαις δὲ μηδὲν ἄλλο ᾖ ἔργον ἢ τὰ πρὸς τὸν
for-Persians and nothing other might-be work than the(-things) for the
πόλεμον ἐκπονεῖν. ταύτην μὲν οὖν οὕτω διῆγον τὴν ἡμέραν.
war to-work-at this indeed then so they-spent the day

II · GOBRYAS' FORTRESS

Cyrus marches to Gobryas, whose fortress proves too strong to take; Gobryas opens it, brings out provisions for the army, and offers Cyrus his treasure and his daughter, asking vengeance for his son. Cyrus gives the treasure back as the girl's dowry, saying that the chance to prove himself honest is a gift worth more than Babylon. Dining with the Persians, Gobryas admires their restraint at table. Asked about the king's enemies, the Hyrcanian names the Cadusians and the Sacians, and Gobryas tells of a great lord's son whom the young king castrated and who now rules his father's land; Cyrus bids Gobryas lead them straight toward Babylon while the enemy are still afraid.

Πρῲ̀ δ᾽ ἀναστάντες ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς Γωβρύαν, Κῦρος 1
Early and having-risen they-marched to Gobryas Cyrus
μὲν ἐφ᾽ ἵππου καὶ οἱ Περσῶν ἱππεῖς γεγενημένοι εἰς
indeed on horseback and the of-Persians horsemen having-become about
δισχιλίους· οἱ δὲ τὰ τούτων γέρρα καὶ τὰς κοπίδας
two-thousand the(-men) and the of-these wicker-shields and the sabers
ἔχοντες ἐπὶ τούτοις εἵποντο, ἴσοι ὄντες τὸν ἀριθμόν· καὶ
having behind these followed equal being in-the number and
ἡ ἄλλη δὲ στρατιὰ τεταγμένη ἐπορεύετο. ἕκαστον δ᾽
the other and army drawn-up marched each and
ἐκέλευσε τοῖς καινοῖς αὐτῶν θεράπουσιν εἰπεῖν ὅτι ὅστις
he-ordered to-the new their-own attendants to-tell that whoever
ἂν αὐτῶν ἢ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων φαίνηται ὄπισθεν ἢ τοῦ
— of-them or of-the rearguard appears behind or of-the
μετώπου πρόσθεν ἴῃ ἢ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια ἔξω τῶν
front in-front goes or on the flanks outside of-the(-men)
ἐν τάξει ἰόντων ἁλίσκηται, κολασθήσεται.
in rank going is-caught will-be-punished

δευτεραῖοι δὲ ἀμφὶ δείλην γίγνονται πρὸς τῷ Γωβρύα 2
on-the-second-day and about afternoon they-come to the of-Gobryas
χωρίῳ, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ὑπερίσχυρόν τε τὸ ἔρυμα καὶ ἐπὶ
place and they-see very-strong both the fortification and on
τῶν τειχῶν πάντα παρεσκευασμένα ὡς ἂν κράτιστα
the walls all-things prepared so-that — most-strongly
ἀπομάχοιντο· καὶ βοῦς δὲ πολλοὺς καὶ πάμπολλα
they-might-defend-it and oxen and many and very-many
πρόβατα ὑπὸ τὰ ἐρυμνὰ προσηγμένα ἑώρων.
sheep under the defenses brought-in they-saw

πέμψας δ᾽ ὁ Γωβρύας πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσε 3
having-sent and — Gobryas to — Cyrus bade(-him)
περιελάσαντα ἰδεῖν ᾗ ἡ πρόσοδος εὐπετεστάτη, εἴσω
having-ridden-around to-see where the approach easiest(-was) inside

δὲ πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τῶν πιστῶν τινας, οἵτινες αὐτῷ
and to-send to himself of-the trusty(-men) some who to-him
τὰ ἔνδον ἰδόντες ἀπαγγελοῦσιν.
the(-things) inside having-seen will-report

4 οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτὸς μὲν τῷ ὄντι βουλόμενος
so indeed — Cyrus himself indeed in-the reality wishing
ἰδεῖν εἴ που εἴη αἱρέσιμον τὸ τεῖχος, εἰ ψευδὴς φαίνοιτο
to-see if anywhere was capturable the wall if false should-appear
ὁ Γωβρύας, περιήλαυνε πάντοθεν, ἑώρα τε ἰσχυρότερα
— Gobryas rode-around from-all-sides he-saw and stronger
πάντα ἢ προσελθεῖν· οὓς δ' ἔπεμψε πρὸς Γωβρύαν,
all-things than to-approach whom and he-sent to Gobryas
ἀπήγγελλον τῷ Κύρῳ ὅτι τοσαῦτα εἴη ἔνδον ἀγαθὰ
reported — to-Cyrus that so-many there-were inside good-things
ὅσα ἐπ' ἀνθρώπων γενεάν, ὡς σφίσι δοκεῖν, μὴ ἂν
as for men's generation as to-them to-seem not —
ἐπιλιπεῖν τοὺς ἔνδον ὄντας.
to-fail the(-men) inside being

5 ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν φροντίδι ἦν ὅ τι ποτ' εἴη
— indeed then Cyrus in anxiety was what ever at-all might-be
ταῦτα, ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας αὐτός τε ἐξήει πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ
these(-things) — and Gobryas himself both came-out to him and
τοὺς ἔνδοθεν πάντας ἐξῆγε φέροντας οἶνον, ἄλφιτα,
the(-men) from-within all he-led-out carrying wine barley-meal
ἄλευρα, ἄλλους δ' ἐλαύνοντας βοῦς, αἶγας, οἷς, σῦς, καὶ
wheat-flour others and driving oxen goats sheep swine and
εἴ τι βρωτόν, πάντα ἱκανὰ προσῆγον ὡς δειπνῆσαι
if anything to-eat all sufficient they-brought so-as to-dine
πᾶσαν τὴν σὺν Κύρῳ στρατιάν.
all the with Cyrus army

οἱ μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ταχθέντες διῄρουν τε ταῦτα 6
the(-men) indeed then for this assigned divided both these(-things)
καὶ ἐδειπνοποίουν. ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας, ἐπεὶ πάντες αὐτῷ
and made-dinner — and Gobryas when all his
οἱ ἄνδρες ἔξω ἦσαν, εἰσιέναι τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσεν
the men outside were to-come-in — Cyrus he-bade
ὅπως νομίζοι ἀσφαλέστατον. προεισπέμψας οὖν ὁ Κῦρος
as he-thought safest having-sent-in-first then — Cyrus
προσκόπους καὶ δύναμιν αὐτὸς οὕτως εἰσῄει. ἐπειδὴ δ'
scouts and a-force himself so went-in when and
εἰσῆλθεν ἀναπεπταμένας ἔχων τὰς πύλας, παρεκάλει
he-had-gone-in wide-open keeping the gates he-summoned
πάντας τοὺς φίλους καὶ ἄρχοντας τῶν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ.
all the friends and commanders of-the(-men) with himself
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἐκφέρων ὁ Γωβρύας φιάλας χρυσᾶς 7
when and inside they-were bringing-out — Gobryas bowls golden
καὶ πρόχους καὶ κάλπιδας καὶ κόσμον παντοῖον καὶ
and pitchers and urns and adornment of-every-kind and
δαρεικοὺς ἀμέτρους τινὰς καὶ πάντα καλὰ πολλά, τέλος
darics countless some and all-things beautiful many at-last
τὴν θυγατέρα, δεινόν τι κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος, πενθικῶς δ'
the daughter wondrous some beauty and stature mourning but
ἔχουσαν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τεθνηκότος, ἐξάγων ὧδε εἶπεν·
being the brother having-died bringing(-her)-out thus said
Ἐγώ σοι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα δωροῦμαι,
I to-you O Cyrus the indeed property this give
τὴν δὲ θυγατέρα ταύτην ἐπιτρέπω διαθέσθαι ὅπως ἂν
the and daughter this I-entrust to-dispose-of as —
σὺ βούλῃ· ἱκετεύομεν δέ, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ πρόσθεν τοῦ υἱοῦ,
you wish we-beseech and I indeed also before for-the son
αὕτη δὲ νῦν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τιμωρὸν γενέσθαι σε.
she and now for-the brother avenger to-become you

8 Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν, Ἀλλ᾽ ἐγὼ μὲν σοὶ
— and Cyrus to these(-things) said But I indeed to-you
καὶ τότε ὑπεσχόμην ἀψευδοῦντός σου τιμωρήσειν εἰς
also then promised not-lying you to-avenge(-you) to
δύναμιν· νῦν δὲ ὅτε ἀληθεύοντά σε ὁρῶ, ἤδη ὀφείλω
(my)-power now and when speaking-truly you I-see already I-owe
τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν, καὶ ταύτῃ ὑπισχνοῦμαι τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα
the promise and to-her I-promise the same these(-things)
σὺν θεοῖς ποιήσειν. καὶ τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα, ἔφη,
with gods to-do and the indeed property this he-said
ἐγὼ μὲν δέχομαι, δίδωμι δὲ αὐτὰ τῇ παιδὶ ταύτῃ
I indeed accept give and it to-the girl this
κἀκείνῳ ὃς ἂν γήμῃ αὐτήν. ἓν δὲ δῶρον ἄπειμι ἔχων
and-to-him who — marries her one but gift I-go-away having
παρὰ σοῦ ἀνθ᾽ οὗ οὐδ᾽ ἂν τὰ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι,
from you in-exchange-for which not-even — the(-things) in Babylon
οὐδὲ τὰ πανταχοῦ ἥδιον ἂν ἔχων ἀπέλθοιμι.
nor the(-things) everywhere more-gladly — having would-I-go-away
9 καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας θαυμάσας τε τί τοῦτ᾽ εἴη καὶ
and — Gobryas having-wondered both what this was and
ὑποπτεύσας μὴ τὴν θυγατέρα λέγοι, οὕτως ἤρετο· Καὶ
having-suspected lest the daughter he-meant so asked And
τί τοῦτ᾽ ἔστιν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο,
what this is he-said O Cyrus and — Cyrus answered
Ὅτι, ἔφη, ἐγώ, ὦ Γωβρύα, πολλοὺς μὲν οἶμαι εἶναι
Because he-said I O Gobryas many indeed I-think to-be
ἀνθρώπους οἳ οὔτε ἀσεβεῖν ἂν θέλοιεν οὔτε ἀδικεῖν
men who neither to-be-impious — would-wish nor to-do-wrong
οὔτε ἂν ψεύδοιντο ἑκόντες εἶναι· διά τε τὸ μηδένα
nor — would-lie willingly to-be because-of both the no-one
αὐτοῖς ἠθεληκέναι προέσθαι μήτε χρήματα πολλὰ μήτε
to-them to-have-been-willing to-offer neither money much nor

τυραννίδα μήτε τείχη ἐρυμνὰ μήτε τέκνα ἀξιέραστα,
tyranny nor walls strong nor children lovely
ἀποθνῄσκουσι πρότερον πρὶν δῆλοι γενέσθαι οἷοι ἦσαν·
they-die sooner before clear to-become what-sort they-were
ἐμοὶ δὲ σὺ νυνὶ καὶ τείχη ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πλοῦτον παντοδαπὸν 10
to-me and you now both walls strong and wealth of-every-kind
καὶ δύναμιν τὴν σὴν καὶ θυγατέρα ἀξιόκτητον ἐγχειρίσας
and power the your and a-daughter worth-possessing having-put-in-hands
πεποίηκάς με δῆλον γενέσθαι πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ὅτι οὔτ' ἂν
have-made me clear to-become to-all men that neither —
ἀσεβεῖν περὶ ξένους θέλοιμι οὔτ' ἂν ἀδικεῖν χρημάτων
to-be-impious toward strangers would-I-wish nor — to-do-wrong of-money
ἕνεκα οὔτε συνθήκας ἂν ψευδοίμην ἑκὼν εἶναι.
for-the-sake nor agreements — would-I-break willingly to-be
τούτων ἐγώ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἕως ἂν ἀνὴρ δίκαιος ὦ καὶ δοκῶν 11
these I well know as-long-as — a-man just I-am and seeming
εἶναι τοιοῦτος ἐπαινῶμαι ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων, οὔποτ' ἐπιλήσομαι,
to-be such am-praised by men never shall-I-forget
ἀλλὰ πειράσομαί σε ἀντιτιμῆσαι πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς.
but I-shall-try you to-honor-in-return with-all the fine(-things)
καὶ ἀνδρὸς δ', ἔφη, τῇ θυγατρὶ μὴ φοβοῦ ὡς 12
and of-a-husband and he-said for-the daughter not fear that
ἀπορήσεις ἀξίου ταύτης· πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ φίλοι
you-will-be-at-a-loss worthy of-her many for and good friends
εἰσὶν ἐμοί· ὧν τις γαμεῖ ταύτην· εἰ μέντοι χρήμαθ'
are to-me of-whom one will-marry her if however money
ἕξει τοσαῦτα ὅσα σὺ δίδως ἢ καὶ ἄλλα πολλαπλάσια
he-will-have so-much as-much-as you give or even other many-times
τούτων, οὐκ ἂν ἔχοιμι εἰπεῖν· σὺ μέντοι εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι εἰσί
than-these not — I-could to-say you however well know that there-are
τινες αὐτῶν οἳ ὧν μὲν σὺ δίδως χρημάτων οὐδὲ μικρὸν
some of-them who for-what indeed you give money not-even a-little

τούτων ἕνεκά σε μᾶλλον θαυμάζουσιν· ἐμὲ δὲ ζηλοῦσι
of-these for-the-sake-of you more admire me and they-envy
νυνὶ καὶ εὔχονται πᾶσι θεοῖς γενέσθαι ποτὲ ἐπιδείξασθαι
now and pray to-all gods to-be-given ever to-show
ὡς πιστοὶ μέν εἰσιν οὐδὲν ἧττον ἐμοῦ τοῖς φίλοις, τοῖς δὲ
that faithful indeed they-are no less than-I to-the friends to-the and
πολεμίοις ὡς οὔποτ' ἂν ὑφεῖντο ζῶντες, εἰ μή τις θεὸς
enemies that never — would-they-yield living if not some god
βλάπτοι· ἀντὶ δ' ἀρετῆς καὶ δόξης ἀγαθῆς ὅτι οὐδ'
should-harm instead-of and virtue and reputation good that not-even
ἂν τὰ Σύρων πρὸς τοῖς σοῖς καὶ Ἀσσυρίων πάντα
— the(-things) of-Syrians in-addition-to the yours and of-Assyrians all
προέλοιντο· τοιούτους ἄνδρας εὖ ἴσθι ἐνταῦθα καθημένους.
would-they-choose such men well know here sitting
13 καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπε γελάσας, Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ
and — Gobryas said having-laughed By the gods he-said O
Κῦρε, δεῖξον δή μοι ποῦ οὗτοί εἰσιν, ἵνα τούτων τινὰ
Cyrus show then to-me where these are so-that of-these one
αἰτήσωμαι παῖδά μοι γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Οὐδὲν
I-may-ask son to-me to-become and — Cyrus said Nothing
ἐμοῦ σε δεήσει πυνθάνεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἂν σὺν ἡμῖν ἕπῃ,
of-me you it-will-be-necessary to-inquire but if with us you-follow
αὐτὸς σὺ ἕξεις καὶ ἄλλῳ δεικνύναι αὐτῶν ἕκαστον.
yourself you will-be-able even to-another to-show of-them each
14 Τοσαῦτ' εἰπὼν δεξιάν τε λαβὼν τοῦ Γωβρύα καὶ
So-much having-said a-right-hand both having-taken — of-Gobryas and
ἀναστὰς ἐξῄει, καὶ τοὺς μεθ' αὑτοῦ ἐξῆγεν ἅπαντας·
having-stood-up he-went-out and the(-men) with himself led-out all
καὶ πολλὰ δεομένου τοῦ Γωβρύα ἔνδον δειπνεῖν οὐκ
and much begging — Gobryas inside to-dine not

ἠθέλησεν, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδείπνει καὶ τὸν
he-was-willing but in the camp he-dined and —
Γωβρύαν σύνδειπνον παρέλαβεν.
Gobryas as-dinner-companion took-along
ἐπὶ στιβάδος δὲ κατακλινεὶς ἤρετο αὐτὸν ὧδε· Εἰπέ μοι, 15
on a-straw-bed and having-reclined he-asked him thus Tell me
ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, πότερον οἴει σοὶ εἶναι πλείω ἢ
he-said O Gobryas whether you-think for-you to-be more than
ἑκάστῳ ἡμῶν στρώματα; καὶ ὃς εἶπεν, Ὑμῖν νὴ Δί' εὖ οἶδ'
for-each of-us coverlets and he said To-you by Zeus well I-know
ὅτι, ἔφη, καὶ στρώματα πλείω ἐστὶ καὶ κλῖναι, καὶ οἰκία
that he-said both coverlets more are and couches and house
γε πολὺ μείζων ἡ ὑμετέρα τῆς ἐμῆς, οἵ γε οἰκίᾳ
at-least much larger the your than-the mine who at-least as-a-house
μὲν χρῆσθε γῇ τε καὶ οὐρανῷ, κλῖναι δ' ὑμῖν εἰσιν ὁπόσαι
indeed use earth both and sky couches and to-you are as-many-as
εὐναὶ γένοιντ' ἂν ἐπὶ γῆς· στρώματα δὲ νομίζετε οὐχ ὅσα
beds could-be — on earth coverlets and you-consider not as-many-as
πρόβατα φύει, ἀλλ' ὅσα ὄρη τε καὶ πεδία ἀνίησι.
sheep grow but as-many-as mountains both and plains send-up
τὸ μὲν δὴ πρῶτον συνδειπνῶν αὐτοῖς ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ 16
the indeed then first dining-with them — Gobryas and
ὁρῶν τὴν φαυλότητα τῶν παρατιθεμένων βρωμάτων πολὺ
seeing the meanness of-the served foods much
σφᾶς ἐνόμιζεν ἐλευθεριωτέρους εἶναι αὐτῶν·
themselves he-thought more-liberal to-be than-them
ἐπεὶ δὲ κατενόησε τὴν μετριότητα τῶν συσσίτων· ἐπ' 17
when and he-observed the moderation of-the messmates at
οὐδενὶ γὰρ βρώματι οὐδὲ πώματι Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τῶν
no for food nor drink a-Persian man of-the
πεπαιδευμένων οὔτ' ἂν ὄμμασιν ἐκπεπληγμένος καταφανὴς
educated neither — with-eyes struck visible

γένοιτο οὔτε ἁρπαγῇ οὔτε τῷ νῷ μὴ οὐχὶ προσκοπεῖν
would-become nor by-snatching nor in-the mind — not to-look-ahead-to
ἅπερ ἂν καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ σίτῳ ὤν· ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ οἱ ἱππικοὶ διὰ
what — even not at food being but just-as the horsemen through
τὸ μὴ ταράττεσθαι ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων δύνανται ἅμα
the not to-be-disturbed on the horses can at-the-same-time
ἱππεύοντες καὶ ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ λέγειν τὸ δέον,
riding both to-see and to-hear and to-say the(-thing) needful
οὕτω κἀκεῖνοι ἐν τῷ σίτῳ οἴονται δεῖν φρόνιμοι καὶ
so they-too at the food think (one)-must sensible and
μέτριοι φαίνεσθαι· τὸ δὲ κεκινῆσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν βρωμάτων
moderate to-appear the and to-be-stirred by the foods
καὶ τῆς πόσεως πάνυ αὐτοῖς ὑικὸν καὶ θηριῶδες δοκεῖ εἶναι·
and the drinking very to-them swinish and beastly seems to-be
18 ἐνενόησε δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ὡς ἐπηρώτων ἀλλήλους τοιαῦτα
be-noticed and of-them also how they-asked one-another such(-things)
οἷα ἐρωτηθῆναι ἥδιον ἢ μὴ καὶ ἔσκωπτον οἷα
as to-be-asked pleasanter than not and jested such-as
σκωφθῆναι ἥδιον ἢ μή· ἅ τε ἔπαιζον, ὡς πολὺ μὲν
to-be-jested-at pleasanter than not what and they-played how far indeed
ὕβρεως ἀπῆν, πολὺ δὲ τοῦ αἰσχρόν τι εἰπεῖν,
from-insolence it-was far and from-the shameful something to-say
πολὺ δὲ τοῦ χαλεπαίνεσθαι πρὸς ἀλλήλους·
far and from-the to-be-angered toward one-another
19 μέγιστον δὲ αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι τὸ ἐν στρατείᾳ ὄντας
greatest and to-him it-seemed to-be the in campaign being
τῶν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν κίνδυνον ἐμβαινόντων μηδενὸς
of-the(-men) into the same danger entering than-no-one
οἴεσθαι δεῖν πλείω παρατίθεσθαι, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο νομίζειν
to-think (one)-must more to-be-served but this to-consider

ἡδίστην εὐωχίαν εἶναι τοὺς συμμάχεσθαι μέλλοντας ὅτι
pleasantest feast to-be the(-men) to-fight-together intending as
βελτίστους παρασκευάζειν.
best to-make
ἡνίκα δὲ ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν ἀνίστατο, εἰπεῖν λέγεται· 20
when and as to home going-away he-rose to-have-said he-is-said
Οὐκέτι θαυμάζω, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἐκπώματα μὲν καὶ ἱμάτια καὶ
No-longer I-wonder O Cyrus if cups indeed and cloaks and
χρυσίον ἡμεῖς ὑμῶν πλέονα κεκτήμεθα, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐλάττονος
gold we than-you more have-acquired ourselves but of-less
ὑμῶν ἄξιοί ἐσμεν. ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ ἐπιμελούμεθα ὅπως ἡμῖν
than-you worth we-are we indeed for take-care that for-us
ταῦτα ὡς πλεῖστα ἔσται, ὑμεῖς δέ μοι δοκεῖτε ἐπιμέλεσθαι
these(-things) as most will-be you but to-me seem to-take-care
ὅπως αὐτοὶ ὡς βέλτιστοι ἔσεσθε. ὃ μὲν ταῦτ' εἶπεν·
that yourselves as best you-will-be he indeed these(-things) said
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, Ἄγ', ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, ὅπως πρῲ παρέσῃ 21
— And Cyrus Come he-said O Gobryas that early you-be-present
ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας ἐξωπλισμένους, ἵνα καὶ τὴν δύναμίν
having the horsemen armed so-that also the power
σου ἴδωμεν, καὶ ἅμα διὰ τῆς σῆς χώρας ἄξεις
of-you we-may-see and at-the-same-time through the your country you-will-lead
ἡμᾶς, ὅπως ἂν εἰδῶμεν ἅ τε δεῖ φίλια καὶ πολέμια
us so-that — we-may-know what both must friendly and hostile
ἡμᾶς νομίζειν.
us to-consider
Τότε μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπόντες ἀπῆλθον ἑκάτερος ἐπὶ 22
Then indeed then these(-things) having-said they-went-away each to
τὰ προσήκοντα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, παρῆν ὁ
the(-things) proper When and day came was-present —
Γωβρύας ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας, καὶ ἡγεῖτο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος,
Gobryas having the horsemen and led — and Cyrus

ὥσπερ προσήκει ἀνδρὶ ἄρχοντι, οὐ μόνον τῷ πορεύεσθαι
as befits a-man commanding not only to-the to-make
τὴν ὁδὸν προσεῖχε τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλ᾽ ἅμα προϊὼν
the journey turned the mind but at-the-same-time going-forward
ἐπεσκοπεῖτο εἴ τι δυνατὸν εἴη τοὺς πολεμίους
he-considered if anything possible it-were the enemies
ἀσθενεστέρους ποιεῖν ἢ αὑτοὺς ἰσχυροτέρους.
weaker to-make or themselves stronger

23 καλέσας οὖν τὸν Ὑρκάνιον καὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν, τούτους
having-called then the Hyrcanian and — Gobryas these
γὰρ ἐνόμιζεν εἰδέναι μάλιστα ὧν αὐτὸς ᾤετο δεῖσθαι
for he-thought to-know most of-what himself he-thought he-needed
μαθεῖν, Ἐγώ τοι, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες φίλοι, οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν
to-learn I surely he-said O men friends I-think with you
ἂν ὡς πιστοῖς βουλευόμενος περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τοῦδε
— as trustworthy(-men) deliberating about the war this
οὐκ ἂν ἐξαμαρτάνειν· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν ἢ ἐμοὶ
not — to-err I-see for that more for-you than for-me
σκεπτέον ὅπως ὁ Ἀσσύριος ἡμῶν μὴ ἐπικρατήσει.
must-be-considered how the Assyrian us not will-prevail-over
ἐμοὶ μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, τῶνδε ἀποσφαλέντι ἔστιν ἴσως καὶ
for-me indeed for he-said in-these having-failed there-is perhaps also
ἄλλη ἀποστροφή· ὑμῖν δ᾽, εἰ οὗτος ἐπικρατήσει, ὁρῶ
another refuge for-you but if this(-man) prevails I-see
ἅμα πάντα τὰ ὄντα ἀλλότρια γιγνόμενα.
at-once all the(-things) existing another's becoming

24 καὶ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν πολέμιός ἐστιν, οὐκ ἐμὲ μισῶν, ἀλλ᾽
and for to-me indeed enemy he-is not me hating but
οἰόμενος ἀσύμφορον ἑαυτῷ μεγάλους εἶναι ἡμᾶς, καὶ
thinking disadvantageous for-himself great to-be us and
στρατεύει διὰ τοῦτο ἐφ᾽ ἡμᾶς· ὑμᾶς δὲ καὶ μισεῖ,
he-campaigns because-of this against us you but also he-hates

ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζων ὑφ᾽ ὑμῶν. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο
to-be-wronged thinking by you to these(-things) answered
ἀμφότεροι κατὰ ταὐτά, περαίνειν ὅ τι μέλλει, ὡς
both by the-same(-things) to-accomplish what ever he-intends as
ταῦτ᾽ εἰδόσι σφίσι καὶ μέλον αὐτοῖς ἰσχυρῶς ὅπῃ
these(-things) knowing them and it-concerning them strongly how
τὸ μέλλον ἀποβήσοιτο.
the future would-turn-out
Ἐνταῦθα ἤρξατο ὧδε· Λέξατε δή μοι, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς νομίζει 25
Then he-began thus Tell then to-me he-said you does-he-think
μόνους πολεμικῶς ἔχειν ὁ Ἀσσύριος πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ἢ
alone hostilely to-be-disposed the Assyrian toward himself or
ἐπίστασθε καὶ ἄλλον τινὰ αὐτῷ πολέμιον; Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη,
do-you-know also other some to-him enemy Yes by Zeus said
ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, πολεμιώτατοι μέν εἰσιν αὐτῷ Καδούσιοι,
the Hyrcanian most-hostile indeed are to-him Cadusians
ἔθνος πολύ τε καὶ ἄλκιμον· Σάκαι γε μὴν ὅμοροι
a-nation large both and valiant Sacians at-least indeed neighbors
ἡμῖν, οἳ κακὰ πολλὰ πεπόνθασιν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου·
to-us who evils many have-suffered from the Assyrian
ἐπειρᾶτο γὰρ κἀκείνους ὥσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς καταστρέψασθαι.
he-tried for them-too just-as also us to-subdue
Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἴεσθε νῦν αὐτοὺς ἀμφοτέρους ἡδέως ἂν 26
Therefore he-said do-you-think now them both gladly —
ἐπιβῆναι μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ; ἔφασαν καὶ σφόδρ᾽ ἄν,
to-attack with us the Assyrian they-said even very-much —
εἴ πῄ γε δύναιντο συμμεῖξαι. Τί δ᾽, ἔφη, ἐν μέσῳ
if somehow at-least they-could to-join What and he-said in middle
ἐστὶ τοῦ συμμεῖξαι; Ἀσσύριοι, ἔφασαν, τὸ αὐτὸ ἔθνος
is of-the to-join Assyrians they-said the same nation
δι᾽ οὗπερ νυνὶ πορεύῃ.
through which now you-are-marching

27 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Κῦρος, Τί γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ
when and these(-things) heard — Cyrus What for he-said O
Γωβρύα, οὐ σὺ τοῦ νεανίσκου τούτου ὃς νῦν εἰς τὴν
Gobryas not you of-the young-man this who now into the
βασιλείαν καθέστηκεν ὑπερηφανίαν πολλήν τινα τοῦ
kingship has-been-established arrogance much some of-the
τρόπου κατηγόρεις; Τοιαῦτα γάρ, οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,
character accused Such(-things) for I-think said — Gobryas
ἔπαθον ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ. Πότερα δῆτα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς σὲ
I-suffered from him Whether indeed said — Cyrus to you
μόνον τοιοῦτος ἐγένετο ἢ καὶ εἰς ἄλλους τινάς;
alone such was-he or also to others some
28 Νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ εἰς ἄλλους γε πολλούς·
By Zeus said — Gobryas also to others at-least many
ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενοῦντας οἷα ὕβριζε τί δεῖ
but the(-ones) indeed being-weak how he-insulted why (one)-must
λέγειν; ἑνὸς δὲ ἀνδρὸς πολὺ δυνατωτέρου ἢ ἐγὼ υἱόν,
to-say of-one but man much more-powerful than I a-son
καὶ ἐκείνου ἑταῖρον ὄντα ὥσπερ τὸν ἐμόν, συμπίνοντα
also of-him comrade being just-as the mine drinking-with(-him)
παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ συλλαβὼν ἐξέτεμεν, ὡς μέν τινες ἔφασαν,
with himself having-seized he-castrated as indeed some said
ὅτι ἡ παλλακὶς αὐτοῦ ἐπῄνεσεν αὐτὸν ὡς καλὸς
because the concubine of-him praised him that handsome
εἴη καὶ ἐμακάρισε τὴν μέλλουσαν αὐτῷ γυναῖκα
he-was and called-happy the(-woman) going-to to-him wife
ἔσεσθαι· ὡς δ᾽ αὐτὸς νῦν λέγει, ὅτι ἐπείρασεν αὐτοῦ
to-be as but himself now says because he-tempted of-him
τὴν παλλακίδα. καὶ νῦν οὗτος εὐνοῦχος μέν ἐστι, τὴν
the concubine and now this(-one) a-eunuch indeed is the
δ᾽ ἀρχὴν ἔχει, ἐπεὶ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ ἐτελεύτησεν.
but rule holds since the father of-him died

Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἴει ἂν καὶ τοῦτον ἡδέως ἡμᾶς ἰδεῖν, 29
Therefore he-said do-you-think — also this(-one) gladly us to-see
εἰ οἴοιτο ἑαυτῷ βοηθοὺς ἂν γενέσθαι; Εὖ μὲν οὖν οἶδα,
if he-thought for-himself helpers — to-become Well indeed then I-know
ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας· ἀλλ' ἰδεῖν τοι αὐτὸν χαλεπόν ἐστιν,
said — Gobryas but to-see surely him hard it-is
ὦ Κῦρε. Πῶς; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι εἰ μέλλει τις ἐκείνῳ
O Cyrus How said — Cyrus Because if is-going anyone with-him
συμμείξειν, παρ' αὐτὴν δεῖ Βαβυλῶνα παριέναι.
to-join by very (one)-must Babylon to-pass
Τί οὖν, ἔφη, τοῦτο χαλεπόν· Ὅτι νὴ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, 30
Why then he-said this hard Because by Zeus said — Gobryas
οἶδα ἐξελθοῦσαν ἂν δύναμιν ἐξ αὐτῆς πολλαπλασίαν
I-know coming-out — a-force from it many-times-greater
ἧς σὺ ἔχεις νῦν· εὖ δ' ἴσθι ὅτι καὶ δι' αὐτὸ τοῦτο
than-what you have now well and know that also through very this
ἧττόν σοι νῦν ἢ τὸ πρότερον Ἀσσύριοι καὶ τὰ ὅπλα
less to-you now than the earlier Assyrians both the arms
ἀποφέρουσι καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἀπάγουσιν, ὅτι τοῖς
hand-over and the horses lead-over because to-the(-ones)
ἰδοῦσιν αὐτῶν ὀλίγη ἔδοξεν εἶναι ἡ σὴ δύναμις· καὶ ὁ
having-seen of-them small seemed to-be the your force and the
λόγος οὗτος πολὺς ἤδη ἔσπαρται· δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ἔφη,
report this widely already has-been-sown it-seems and to-me he-said
βέλτιον εἶναι φυλαττομένους πορεύεσθαι.
better to-be on-guard to-march
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ Γωβρύα τοιαῦτα τοιάδε πρὸς 31
and — Cyrus having-heard — from-Gobryas such(-things) as-follows to
αὐτὸν ἔλεξε. Καλῶς μοι δοκεῖς, ὦ Γωβρύα, λέγειν, κελεύων
him spoke Well to-me you-seem O Gobryas to-speak bidding
ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα τὰς πορείας ποιεῖσθαι. ἔγωγ' οὖν σκοπῶν
as most-safely the marches to-make I-at-least then considering

οὐ δύναμαι ἐννοῆσαι ἀσφαλεστέραν οὐδεμίαν πορείαν ἡμῖν
not can to-think-of safer any march for-us
τῆς πρὸς αὐτὴν Βαβυλῶνα εἶναι, εἰ ἐκεῖ τῶν πολεμίων
than-the(-one) to very Babylon to-be if there of-the enemies
ἐστὶ τὸ κράτιστον. πολλοὶ μὲν γάρ εἰσιν, ὡς σὺ φῂς· εἰ
is the strongest(-part) many indeed for they-are as you say if
δὲ θαρρήσουσι, καὶ δεινοὶ ἡμῖν, ὡς ἐγώ φημι, ἔσονται.
but they-will-take-courage also terrible to-us as I say they-will-be
32 μὴ ὁρῶντες μὲν οὖν ἡμᾶς, ἀλλ᾽ οἰόμενοι ἀφανεῖς εἶναι
not seeing indeed then us but thinking unseen to-be
διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι ἐκείνους, σάφ᾽ ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὅτι τοῦ
because-of the to-fear them clearly know he-said that of-the
μὲν φόβου ἀπαλλάξονται ὃς αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, θάρρος δ᾽
indeed fear they-will-be-rid which to-them arose courage and
ἐμφύσεται ἀντὶ τούτου τοσούτῳ μεῖζον ὅσῳ ἂν
will-grow-in(-them) instead-of this so-much greater by-as-much-as —
πλείονα χρόνον ἡμᾶς μὴ ὁρῶσιν· ἂν δὲ ἤδη ἴωμεν ἐπ᾽
longer time us not they-see if but now we-go against
αὐτούς, πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν εὑρήσομεν ἔτι κλαίοντας
them many indeed of-them we-shall-find still lamenting
τοὺς ἀποθανόντας ὑφ᾽ ἡμῶν, πολλοὺς δ᾽ ἔτι τραύματα
the(-men) killed by us many and still wounds
ἐπιδεδεμένους ἃ ὑπὸ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἔλαβον, πάντας δ᾽
bound-up which from the ours they-received all and
ἔτι μεμνημένους τῆς μὲν τοῦδε τοῦ στρατεύματος τόλμης,
still remembering the indeed of-this the army daring
τῆς δ᾽ αὑτῶν φυγῆς τε καὶ συμφορᾶς.
the and of-themselves flight both and disaster
33 εὖ δ᾽ ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, οἱ πολλοὶ ἄνθρωποι, ὅταν
well and know he-said O Gobryas the many men when
μὲν θαρρῶσιν, ἀνυπόστατον τὸ φρόνημα παρέχονται·
indeed they-are-confident irresistible the spirit display

ὅταν δὲ δείσωσιν, ὅσῳ ἂν πλείους ὦσι, τοσούτῳ
when but they-are-afraid by-as-much-as — more they-are by-so-much
μείζω καὶ ἐκπεπληγμένον μᾶλλον τὸν φόβον κέκτηνται.
greater and panic-stricken more the fear they-possess
ἐκ πολλῶν μὲν γὰρ καὶ κακῶν λόγων ηὐξημένος αὐτοῖς 34
from many indeed for and bad words increased to-them
πάρεστιν, ἐκ πολλῶν δὲ καὶ πονηρῶν σχημάτων, ἐκ
it-is-present from many and also wretched postures from
πολλῶν δὲ καὶ δυσθύμων τε καὶ ἐξεστηκότων προσώπων
many and also dejected both and distraught faces
ἤθροισται. ὥσθ' ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγέθους οὐ ῥᾴδιον αὐτόν
it-has-been-gathered so-that through the magnitude not easy it
ἐστιν οὔτε λόγοις κατασβέσαι οὔτε προσάγοντα πολεμίοις
is either with-words to-quench or leading(-them) against-enemies
μένος ἐμβαλεῖν οὔτε ἀπάγοντα ἀναθρέψαι τὸ φρόνημα,
courage to-throw-in or leading(-them)-away to-revive the spirit
ἀλλ' ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον αὐτοῖς παρακελεύῃ θαρρεῖν,
but by-as-much-as — more them you-exhort to-take-heart
τοσούτῳ ἐν δεινοτέροις ἡγοῦνται εἶναι.
by-so-much in more-terrible(-straits) they-think to-be
ἐκεῖνο μέντοι νὴ Δί', ἔφη, σκεψώμεθα ἀκριβῶς ὅπως ἔχει. 35
that however by Zeus he-said let-us-consider exactly how it-stands
εἰ μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε αἱ νῖκαι ἔσονται ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς
if indeed for the from now-on the victories will-be in the warlike
ἔργοις ὁπότεροι ἂν πλείονα ὄχλον ἀπαριθμήσωσιν, ὀρθῶς
deeds whichever — greater crowd count-up rightly
καὶ σὺ φοβῇ περὶ ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμεῖς τῷ ὄντι ἐν δεινοῖς
also you fear about us and we in-the reality in dangers
ἐσμεν· εἰ μέντοι ὥσπερ πρόσθεν διὰ τοὺς εὖ μαχομένους
are if however as before through the(-men) well fighting
ἔτι καὶ νῦν αἱ μάχαι κρίνονται, θαρρῶν οὐδὲν ἂν
still also now the battles are-decided being-confident in-nothing —

σφαλείης· πολὺ μὲν γὰρ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πλείονας εὑρήσεις
you-would-fail much indeed for with the gods more you-will-find
παρ' ἡμῖν τοὺς θέλοντας μάχεσθαι ἢ παρ' ἐκείνοις·
with us the(-men) willing to-fight than with them
36 ὡς δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον θαρρῇς, καὶ τόδε κατανόησον· οἱ μὲν
that and still more you-may-take-heart also this consider the indeed
γὰρ πολέμιοι πολὺ μὲν ἐλάττονές εἰσι νῦν ἢ πρὶν ἡττηθῆναι
for enemies much indeed fewer are now than before to-be-defeated
ὑφ' ἡμῶν, πολὺ δ' ἐλάττονες ἢ ὅτε ἀπέδρασαν ἡμᾶς·
by us much and fewer than when they-ran-away-from us
ἡμεῖς δὲ καὶ μείζονες νῦν, ἐπεὶ νενικήκαμεν, καὶ ἰσχυρότεροι,
we and also greater now since we-have-conquered and stronger
ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἡμῖν προσγεγένησθε· μὴ γὰρ ἔτι ἀτίμαζε
since you to-us have-been-added not for any-longer slight
μηδὲ τοὺς σούς, ἐπεὶ σὺν ἡμῖν εἰσι· σὺν γὰρ τοῖς νικῶσι,
even the yours since with us they-are with for the conquering
σάφ' ἴσθι, ὦ Γωβρύα, θαρροῦντες καὶ οἱ ἀκόλουθοι ἕπονται.
clearly know O Gobryas confident even the camp-followers follow
37 μὴ λανθανέτω δέ σε μηδὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὅτι ἔξεστι
not let-escape and you even this he-said that it-is-possible
μὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ νῦν ἰδεῖν ἡμᾶς· γοργότεροι δέ,
indeed for-the enemies also now to-see us more-terrible but
σάφ' ἴσθι, οὐδαμῶς ἂν φανείημεν αὐτοῖς ἢ ἰόντες ἐπ'
clearly know in-no-way — we-could-appear to-them than going against
ἐκείνους. ὡς οὖν ἐμοῦ ταῦτα γιγνώσκοντος ἄγε ἡμᾶς
them as then of-me these(-things) judging lead us
τὴν εὐθὺ Βαβυλῶνος.
the(-road) straight of-Babylon

III · GADATAS COMES OVER

Raiding Assyria, the army gives the booty, after the gods' share and its own, to Gobryas. Cyrus challenges the king to fight; the king answers Gobryas with an insult. Gobryas wins over Gadatas, and by a staged attack Gadatas is trusted into a frontier fort and hands it over to Cyrus, who leaves it to the Hyrcanians and the allies in common. The Cadusians and Sacians join with large forces. When the king moves against Gadatas' land, Cyrus marches to help him, sets the order of a night march naming every officer, and rides along the column keeping it quiet and in order. At daybreak he sends the cavalry ahead, ready to fight or pursue.

Οὕτω μὲν δὴ πορευόμενοι τεταρταῖοι πρὸς τοῖς ὁρίοις 1
So indeed then marching on-the-fourth-day at the borders
τῆς Γωβρύα χώρας ἐγένοντο. ὡς δὲ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ἦν,
of-the of-Gobryas country they-were when and in the hostile(-land) he-was
κατέστησε λαβὼν ἐν τάξει μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τούς τε πεζοὺς
he-stationed having-taken in rank with himself the both foot-soldiers
καὶ τῶν ἱππέων ὅσους ἐδόκει καλῶς αὐτῷ ἔχειν· τοὺς
and of-the horsemen as-many-as seemed well to-him to-be the
δ' ἄλλους ἱππέας ἀφῆκε καταθεῖν, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς
and other horsemen he-let-go to-raid and ordered the(-ones)
μὲν ὅπλα ἔχοντας κατακαίνειν, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καὶ
indeed arms having to-kill the and others and
πρόβατα ὅσα ἂν λάβωσι πρὸς αὑτὸν ἄγειν. ἐκέλευσε
sheep as-many-as — they-take to himself to-bring he-ordered
δὲ καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας συγκαταθεῖν· καὶ ἦκον πολλοὶ μὲν
and also the Persians to-raid-with(-them) and they-came many indeed
αὐτῶν κατακεκυλισμένοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ
of-them having-rolled-off from the horses many and also
λείαν πλείστην ἄγοντες.
booty very-much bringing

2 ὡς δὲ παρῆν ἡ λεία, συγκαλέσας τούς τε τῶν Μήδων
when and was-present the booty having-called-together the both of-the Medes
ἄρχοντας καὶ τῶν Ὑρκανίων καὶ τοὺς ὁμοτίμους ἔλεξεν
commanders and of-the Hyrcanians and the peers he-spoke
ὧδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐξένισεν ἡμᾶς ἅπαντας πολλοῖς ἀγαθοῖς
thus Men friends entertained us all with-many good-things
Γωβρύας. εἰ οὖν, ἔφη, τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξελόντες τὰ νομιζόμενα
Gobryas if then he-said to-the gods having-set-apart the customary(-share)
καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ ἱκανὰ τὴν ἄλλην τούτῳ δοίημεν
and for-the army the sufficient(-share) the rest to-this(-man) we-should-give
λείαν, ἆρ' ἄν, ἔφη, καλὸν ποιήσαιμεν τῷ εὐθὺς φανεροὶ εἶναι
booty then — he-said fine would-we-do in-the at-once manifest to-be
ὅτι καὶ τοὺς εὖ ποιοῦντας πειρώμεθα νικᾶν εὖ ποιοῦντες;
that also the(-ones) well doing(-us) we-try to-surpass well doing
3 ὡς δὲ τοῦτ' ἤκουσαν, πάντες μὲν ἐπήνουν, πάντες δ'
when and this they-heard all indeed praised(-it) all and
ἐνεκωμίαζον· εἷς δὲ καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Πάνυ, ἔφη, ὦ
extolled(-it) one and also spoke thus By-all-means he-said O
Κῦρε, τοῦτο ποιήσωμεν· καὶ γάρ μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὁ
Cyrus this let-us-do and for to-me seems he-said —
Γωβρύας πτωχούς τινας ἡμᾶς νομίζειν, ὅτι οὐ δαρεικῶν
Gobryas beggars some us to-consider because not with-darics
μεστοὶ ἤκομεν οὐδὲ ἐκ χρυσῶν φιαλῶν πίνομεν· εἰ δὲ
full we-have-come nor from golden bowls we-drink if but
τοῦτο ποιήσομεν, γνοίη ἄν, ἔφη, ὅτι ἔστιν ἐλευθερίους
this we-shall-do would-know — he-said that it-is-possible liberal
εἶναι καὶ ἄνευ χρυσοῦ.
to-be even without gold
4 Ἄγε δή, ἔφη, τὰ τῶν θεῶν ἀποδόντες τοῖς μάγοις καὶ
Come then he-said the(-share) of-the gods having-given-over to-the magi and
ὅσα τῇ στρατιᾷ ἱκανὰ ἐξελόντες τἆλλα καλέσαντες
as-much-as for-the army sufficient having-set-apart the-rest having-called

τὸν Γωβρύαν δότε αὐτῷ· οὕτω δὴ λαβόντες ἐκεῖνοι
— *Gobryas give to-him so indeed having-taken they*
ὅσα ἔδει τἆλλα ἔδοσαν τῷ Γωβρύᾳ.
as-much-as was-needful the-rest gave — to-Gobryas
Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ᾔει πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα παραταξάμενος 5
From this indeed he-went toward Babylon having-drawn-up
ὥσπερ ὅτε ἡ μάχη ἦν. ὡς δ' οὐκ ἀντεξῆσαν οἱ
just-as when the battle was when and not came-out-against(-him) the
Ἀσσύριοι, ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν προσελάσαντα
Assyrians ordered — Cyrus — Gobryas having-ridden-up
εἰπεῖν ὅτι εἰ βούλεται ἐξιὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑπὲρ τῆς χώρας
to-say that if wishes coming-out the king for the country
μάχεσθαι, κἂν αὐτὸς σὺν ἐκείνῳ μάχοιτο· εἰ δὲ μὴ
to-fight even-would himself with him fight if but not
ἀμυνεῖ τῇ χώρᾳ, ὅτι ἀνάγκη τοῖς κρατοῦσι πείθεσθαι.
he-will-defend the country that necessity(-is) the(-men) prevailing to-obey
ὁ μὲν δὴ Γωβρύας προσελάσας ἔνθα ἀσφαλὲς ἦν 6
— *indeed then Gobryas having-ridden-up where safe it-was*
ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὁ δ' αὐτῷ ἐξέπεμψεν ἀποκρινούμενον τοιάδε·
these(-things) said he but to-him sent-out going-to-answer as-follows
Δεσπότης ὁ σὸς λέγει, ὦ Γωβρύα, Οὐχ ὅτι ἀπέκτεινά σου
Master the your says O Gobryas Not that I-killed of-you
τὸν ὑὸν μεταμέλει μοι, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐ καὶ σὲ προσαπέκτεινα.
the son it-repents me but that not also you I-killed-besides
μάχεσθαι δὲ ἂν βούλησθε, ἥκετε εἰς τριακοστὴν ἡμέραν·
to-fight but if you-wish come on thirtieth day
νῦν δ' οὔπω ἡμῖν σχολή· ἔτι γὰρ παρασκευαζόμεθα.
now but not-yet for-us leisure still for we-are-preparing

7 ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ μήποτέ σοι λήξειεν αὕτη
— *and Gobryas said But never to-you may-cease this*
ἡ μεταμέλεια· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἀνιῶ σέ τι, ἐξ οὗ
the repentance clear for that I-vex you somewhat from which
αὕτη σε ἡ μεταμέλεια ἔχει.
this you the repentance holds

8 Ὁ μὲν δὴ Γωβρύας ἀπήγγειλε τὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου· ὁ
— *indeed then Gobryas reported the(-words) of-the Assyrian —*
δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἀπήγαγε τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ
and Cyrus having-heard these(-things) led-away the army and
καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, οὐκ ἔλεγες μέντοι
having-called — Gobryas Tell me he-said not were-saying however
σὺ ὅτι τὸν ἐκτμηθέντα ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου οἴει ἂν σὺν
you that the(-man) castrated by the Assyrian you-think — with
ἡμῖν γενέσθαι; Εὖ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, δοκῶ εἰδέναι· πολλὰ
us to-become(-ally) Well indeed then he-said I-think to-know many(-things)
γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε κἀκεῖνος ἐπαρρησιασάμεθα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
for indeed I-at-least and-he spoke-freely to one-another

9 Ὁπότε τοίνυν σοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, καλῶς ἔχειν, πρόσιθι πρὸς
When then to-you it-seems he-said well to-be go to
αὐτόν· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οὕτω ποίει ὅπως ἂν αὐτοὶ ὅ
him and first indeed so act that — yourselves what
τι ἂν λέγῃ εἰδῆτε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ συγγένῃ αὐτῷ, ἐὰν
ever — he-says you-may-know when and you-meet him if
γνῷς αὐτὸν φίλον ἡμῖν βουλόμενον εἶναι, τοῦτο δεῖ
you-recognize him friend to-us wishing to-be this (one)-must
μηχανᾶσθαι ὅπως λάθῃ φίλος ὢν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ
to-contrive that he-escape-notice friend being to-us neither for
ἂν φίλους τις ποιήσειεν ἄλλως πως πλείω ἀγαθὰ ἐν
— friends anyone could-do otherwise somehow more good in

πολέμῳ ἢ πολέμιος δοκῶν εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθροὺς πλείω
war than an-enemy seeming to-be nor — enemies more
τις βλάψειεν ἄλλως πως ἢ φίλος δοκῶν εἶναι.
anyone could-harm otherwise somehow than a-friend seeming to-be
Καὶ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, οἶδ' ὅτι κἂν πρίαιτο Γαδάτας 10
And truly said — Gobryas I-know that even-would buy Gadatas
τὸ μέγα τι ποιῆσαι κακὸν τὸν νῦν βασιλέα Ἀσσυρίων.
the great some to-do harm the present king of-Assyrians
ἀλλ' ὅ τι ἂν δύναιτο, τοῦτο καὶ ἡμᾶς δεῖ σκοπεῖν.
but what ever — he-could this also us must to-consider
Λέγε δή μοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς τὸ φρούριον τὸ 11
Tell then me said — Cyrus to the fort the(-one)
πρὸ τῆς χώρας, ὅ φατε Ὑρκανίοις τε καὶ Σάκαις
before the country which you-say against-Hyrcanians both and Sacians
ἐπιτετειχίσθαι τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ πρόβολον εἶναι τοῦ
to-have-been-fortified-against for-this the country a-defense to-be of-the
πολέμου, ἆρ' ἄν, ἔφη, οἴει ὑπὸ τοῦ φρουράρχου
war then — he-said do-you-think by the commander-of-the-fort
παρεθῆναι τὸν εὐνοῦχον ἐλθόντα σὺν δυνάμει; Σαφῶς
to-be-admitted the eunuch having-come with a-force Clearly
γ', ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, εἴπερ ἀνύποπτος ὤν, ὥσπερ νῦν
at-least said — Gobryas if-indeed unsuspected being as now
ἐστιν, ἀφίκοιτο πρὸς αὐτόν.
he-is he-should-come to him
Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ἀνύποπτος ἂν εἴη, εἰ προσβάλοιμι μὲν ἐγὼ 12
Therefore he-said unsuspected — he-would-be if I-should-attack indeed I
πρὸς τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ ὡς λαβεῖν βουλόμενος, ἀπομάχοιτο
against the places of-him as to-take wishing should-fight-back
δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ λάβοιμι μὲν αὐτοῦ τι
and he with all-his-might and I-should-take indeed of-his something
ἐγώ, ἀντιλάβοι δὲ κἀκεῖνος ἡμῶν ἢ ἄλλους τινὰς ἢ
I should-take-in-return and he-too of-us either others some or

καὶ ἀγγέλους πεμπομένους ὑπ᾽ ἐμοῦ πρὸς τούτους οὕς φατε
also messengers being-sent by me to these whom you-say
πολεμίους τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ εἶναι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ληφθέντες
enemies to-the Assyrian to-be and the(-ones) indeed captured
λέγοιεν ὅτι ἐπὶ στράτευμα ἔρχονται, ὁ δ᾽ εὐνοῦχος ἀκούσας
should-say that for an-army they-are-going the and eunuch having-heard
προσποιήσαιτο προαγγεῖλαι βουλόμενος ταῦτα παρεῖναι.
should-pretend to-forewarn wishing these(-things) to-be-present

13 καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν ὅτι οὕτω μὲν γιγνομένων σαφῶς
and — Gobryas said that so indeed happening clearly
παρείη ἂν αὐτόν, καὶ δέοιτό γ᾽ ἂν αὐτοῦ μένειν ἕως
would-admit — him and would-beg at-least — him to-stay until
ἀπέλθοις. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴ γε ἅπαξ εἰσέλθοι,
you-went-away Therefore said — Cyrus if at-least once he-went-in
δύναιτ᾽ ἂν ἡμῖν ὑποχείριον ποιῆσαι τὸ χωρίον;
could-be — for-us subject make the place

14 Εἰκὸς γοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, τὰ μὲν ἔνδον ἐκείνου
Likely at-any-rate said — Gobryas the(-things) indeed inside he
συμπαρασκευάζοντος, τὰ δ᾽ ἔξωθεν σοῦ ἰσχυρότερα
preparing-with(-you) the(-things) and from-outside you stronger(-forces)
προσάγοντος. Ἴθι οὖν, ἔφη, καὶ πειρῶ ταῦτα διδάξας
bringing-up Go then he-said and try these(-things) having-taught
καὶ διαπραξάμενος παρεῖναι· πιστὰ δὲ αὐτῷ οὐκ ἂν μείζω
and having-accomplished to-be-present pledges and to-him not — greater
οὔτ᾽ εἴποις οὔτε δείξαις ὧν αὐτὸς σὺ τυγχάνεις
either you-could-say or show than-what yourself you happen
παρ᾽ ἡμῶν εἰληφώς.
from us having-received

15 Ἐκ τούτου ᾤχετο μὲν ὁ Γωβρύας· ἄσμενος δὲ ἰδὼν
From this went indeed — Gobryas gladly and having-seen
αὐτὸν ὁ εὐνοῦχος συνωμολόγει τε πάντα καὶ συνέθετο
him the eunuch agreed-to both everything and arranged

ἃ ἔδει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήγγειλεν ὁ Γωβρύας ὅτι πάντα
what was-needful when and reported — Gobryas that everything
δοκοίη ἰσχυρῶς τῷ εὐνούχῳ τὰ ἐπισταλέντα, ἐκ
seemed(-good) strongly to-the eunuch the(-things) enjoined from
τούτου τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ προσέβαλε μὲν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπεμάχετο
this on-the next-day attacked indeed — Cyrus fought-back
δὲ ὁ Γαδάτας. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὃ ἔλαβε χωρίον ὁ Κῦρος,
and — Gadatas there-was and also what took place — Cyrus
ὁποῖον ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας.
such-as said — Gadatas

τῶν δὲ ἀγγέλων οὓς ἔπεμψεν ὁ Κῦρος προειπὼν ᾗ 16
of-the and messengers whom sent — Cyrus having-told-beforehand where
πορεύσοιντο, τοὺς μὲν εἴασεν ὁ Γαδάτας διαφεύγειν·
they-should-go the(-ones) indeed allowed — Gadatas to-escape
οὓς δ' ἔλαβε, βασανίζων ἐναντίον πολλῶν, ὡς ἤκουσεν
whom but he-took torturing in-the-presence-of many when he-heard
ἐφ' ἃ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι, εὐθέως συσκευασάμενος ὡς
for what they-said to-be-going at-once having-packed-up as
ἐξαγγελῶν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπορεύετο.
going-to-report in-the night he-marched

τέλος δὲ πιστευθεὶς ὡς βοηθὸς εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὸ φρούριον· 17
at-last and being-trusted as helper he-goes-in into the fort
καὶ τέως μὲν συμπαρεσκεύαζεν ὅ τι ἐδύνατο τῷ
and for-a-while indeed helped-prepare what ever he-could with-the
φρουράρχῳ· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἦλθε, καταλαμβάνει
commander-of-the-fort when and — Cyrus came he-seizes
τὸ χωρίον συνεργοὺς ποιησάμενος καὶ τοὺς παρὰ τοῦ
the place as-helpers having-made also the(-men) from the
Κύρου αἰχμαλώτους.
of-Cyrus captives

18 ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ὁ εὐνοῦχος τὰ ἔνδον
when and this happened at-once the eunuch the(-things) inside
καταστήσας ἐξῆλθε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, καὶ τῷ νόμῳ
having-settled came-out to — Cyrus and by-the custom
προσκυνήσας εἶπε, Χαῖρε, ὦ Κῦρε.
having-made-obeisance said Rejoice O Cyrus

19 Ἀλλὰ ποιῶ ταῦτ', ἔφη· σὺ γάρ με σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς οὐ
But I-do these(-things) he-said you for me with the gods not
κελεύεις μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀναγκάζεις χαίρειν. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι,
bid only but also compel to-rejoice well for know
ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγὼ μέγα ποιοῦμαι φίλιον τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον τοῖς
he-said that I great make friendly this the place to-the
ἐνθάδε συμμάχοις καταλείπων· σὲ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα,
here allies leaving you and he-said O Gadatas
ὁ Ἀσσύριος παῖδας μέν, ὡς ἔοικε, τὸ ποιεῖσθαι ἀφείλετο,
the Assyrian children indeed as it-seems the to-beget deprived-of
οὐ μέντοι τό γε φίλους δύνασθαι κτᾶσθαι ἀπεστέρησεν·
not however the at-least friends to-be-able to-acquire took-away
ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ἡμᾶς τοιούτους τῷ ἔργῳ τούτῳ φίλους
but well know that us such by-the deed this friends
πεποίησαι, οἵ σοι, ἐὰν δυνώμεθα, πειρασόμεθα μὴ χείρους
you-have-made who to-you if we-can we-shall-try not worse
βοηθοὶ παραστῆναι ἢ εἰ παῖδας ἐκγόνους ἐκτήσω. ὃ
helpers to-stand-by than if children offspring you-had-acquired he
μὲν τοιαῦτα ἔλεγεν.
indeed such(-things) said

20 ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ Ὑρκάνιος ἄρτι ᾐσθημένος τὸ γεγενημένον
in and this the Hyrcanian just having-learned the(-thing) having-happened
προσθεῖ τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ λαβὼν τὴν δεξιὰν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν,
runs-up — to-Cyrus and having-taken the right-hand of-him said

Ὦ μέγα ἀγαθὸν σὺ τοῖς φίλοις Κῦρε, ὡς πολλήν με τοῖς
O great blessing you to-the friends Cyrus how much me to-the
θεοῖς ποιεῖς χάριν ὀφείλειν ὅτι σοί με συνήγαγον.
gods you-make gratitude to-owe because to-you me they-brought-together
Ἴθι νῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ λαβὼν τὸ χωρίον οὗπερ 21
Go now said — Cyrus and having-taken the place of-which
ἕνεκά με ἀσπάζῃ διατίθει αὐτὸ οὕτως ὡς ἂν τῷ
for-the-sake-of me you-embrace dispose-of it so that — to-the
ὑμετέρῳ φύλῳ πλείστου ἄξιον ᾖ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
your tribe of-most worth it-may-be and to-the other
συμμάχοις, μάλιστα δ', ἔφη, Γαδάτᾳ τουτῳῖ, ὃς ἡμῖν
allies most and he-said to-Gadatas this-one-here who for-us
αὐτὸ λαβὼν παρέδωκεν.
it having-taken handed-over
Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, ἐπειδὰν Καδούσιοι ἔλθωσι 22
What then said the Hyrcanian when Cadusians come
καὶ Σάκαι καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ πολῖται, καλέσωμεν καὶ τούτων,
and Sacians and the my citizens shall-we-call also of-these
ἵνα κοινῇ βουλευσώμεθα πάντες ὅσοις προσήκει πῶς
so-that in-common we-may-deliberate all whom it-concerns how
ἂν συμφορώτατα χρώμεθα τῷ φρουρίῳ;
— most-advantageously we-may-use the fort
ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω συνήνεσεν ὁ Κῦρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον 23
these(-things) indeed so agreed-to — Cyrus when and came-together
οἷς ἔμελε περὶ τοῦ φρουρίου, ἐβουλεύσαντο κοινῇ
to-whom it-mattered about the fort they-resolved in-common
φυλάττειν οἵσπερ ἀγαθὸν ἦν φίλιον ὄν, ὅπως αὐτοῖς
to-guard(-it) for-whom good it-was friendly being so-that for-them
μὲν πρόβολος εἴη πολέμου, τοῖς δ' Ἀσσυρίοις
indeed a-bulwark it-might-be of-war against-the and Assyrians
ἐπιτετειχισμένον.
a-fortress-built

24 τούτων γενομένων πολὺ δὴ προθυμότερον καὶ πλείους
these(-things) having-happened much indeed more-eagerly and more-numerous
καὶ Καδούσιοι συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι·
both Cadusians campaigned-with(-him) and Sacians and Hyrcanians
καὶ συνελέγη ἐντεῦθεν στράτευμα Καδουσίων μὲν πελτασταὶ
and was-collected from-there an-army of-Cadusians indeed peltasts
εἰς δισμυρίους καὶ ἱππεῖς εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Σακῶν δὲ
about twenty-thousand and horsemen about four-thousand of-Sacians and
τοξόται εἰς μυρίους καὶ ἱπποτοξόται εἰς δισχιλίους· καὶ
archers about ten-thousand and mounted-archers about two-thousand and
Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ πεζούς τε ὁπόσους ἐδύναντο προσεξέπεμψαν
Hyrcanians and foot-soldiers both as-many-as they-could sent-out-besides
καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐξεπλήρωσαν εἰς δισχιλίους· τὸ γὰρ πρόσθεν
and horsemen they-filled-up to two-thousand the for before
καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν πλείους οἴκοι αὐτοῖς ἱππεῖς, ὅτι καὶ
left-behind were more at-home to-them horsemen because both
οἱ Καδούσιοι καὶ οἱ Σάκαι τοῖς Ὑρκανίοις πολέμιοι ἦσαν.
the Cadusians and the Sacians to-the Hyrcanians enemies were
25 ὅσον δὲ χρόνον ἐκαθέζετο ὁ Κῦρος ἀμφὶ τὴν περὶ τὸ
as-long and time sat — Cyrus about the round the
φρούριον οἰκονομίαν, τῶν κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία
fort management of-the(-people) along these the places
πολλοὶ μὲν ἀπῆγον ἵππους, πολλοὶ δὲ ἀπέφερον
many indeed were-bringing-in horses many and were-bringing-in
ὅπλα, φοβούμενοι ἤδη πάντας τοὺς προσχώρους.
arms fearing already all the neighbors
26 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου προσέρχεται τῷ Κύρῳ ὁ Γαδάτας καὶ
From and this comes-up — to-Cyrus — Gadatas and
λέγει ὅτι ἥκουσιν αὐτῷ ἄγγελοι ὡς ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἐπεὶ
says that have-come to-him messengers that the Assyrian when
πύθοιτο τὰ περὶ τοῦ φρουρίου, χαλεπῶς τε ἐνέγκοι
he-learned the(-things) about the fort angrily both took(-it)

καὶ συσκευάζοιτο ὡς ἐμβαλῶν ἐς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν. ἢν
and was-packing-up as going-to-invade into the his country if
οὖν ἀφῇς με, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ τείχη ἂν πειραθείην διασῶσαι,
then you-let-go me O Cyrus the walls — I-would-try to-save
τῶν δ' ἄλλων μείων λόγος.
of-the and rest less account
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἢν οὖν ἴῃς νῦν, πότε ἔσῃ οἴκοι; 27
and — Cyrus said If then you-go now when will-you-be at-home
καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν, Εἰς τρίτην δειπνήσω ἐν τῇ
and — Gadatas said On the-third(-day) I-shall-dine in the
ἡμετέρᾳ. Ἦ καὶ τὸν Ἀσσύριον, ἔφη, οἴει ἐκεῖ ἤδη
our(-land) Truly also the Assyrian he-said do-you-think there already
καταλήψεσθαι; Εὖ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, οἶδα· σπεύσει γὰρ ἕως
to-overtake Well indeed then he-said I-know he-will-hasten for while
ἔτι πρόσω δοκεῖς ἀπεῖναι.
still far you-seem to-be-away
Ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ποσταῖος ἂν τῷ στρατεύματι 28
I and said — Cyrus on-what-day — with-the army
ἐκεῖσε ἀφικοίμην; πρὸς τοῦτο δὴ ὁ Γαδάτας λέγει,
there would-arrive to this indeed — Gadatas says
Πολὺ ἤδη, ὦ δέσποτα, ἔχεις τὸ στράτευμα καὶ οὐκ ἂν
Large already O master you-have the army and not —
δύναιο μεῖον ἢ ἐν ἓξ ἢ ἑπτὰ ἡμέραις ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τὴν
you-could less than in six or seven days to-come to the
ἐμὴν οἴκησιν. Σὺ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἄπιθι ὡς
my dwelling You indeed then said — Cyrus go-away as
τάχιστα· ἐγὼ δ' ὡς ἂν δυνατὸν ᾖ πορεύσομαι.
quickly-as-possible I and as — possible may-be shall-march
ὁ μὲν δὴ Γαδάτας ᾤχετο· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συνεκάλεσε 29
— indeed then Gadatas went-off — and Cyrus called-together
πάντας τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν συμμάχων· καὶ ἤδη πολλοί
all the commanders of-the allies and already many

τε ἐδόκουν καὶ καλοὶ κἀγαθοὶ παρεῖναι· ἐν οἷς δὴ
both seemed and noble and-good to-be-present among whom indeed
λέγει ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα.
says — Cyrus these(-things)

30 Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, Γαδάτας διέπραξεν ἃ δοκεῖ πᾶσιν
Men allies Gadatas has-accomplished what seems to-all
ἡμῖν πολλοῦ ἄξια εἶναι, καὶ ταῦτα πρὶν καὶ ὁτιοῦν
us of-much worth to-be and these(-things) before even anything-whatever
ἀγαθὸν ὑφ' ἡμῶν παθεῖν. νῦν δὲ ὁ Ἀσσύριος εἰς τὴν χώραν
good from us to-receive now and the Assyrian into the country
αὐτοῦ ἐμβαλεῖν ἀγγέλλεται, δῆλον ὅτι ἅμα μὲν
of-him to-invade is-reported clear that at-the-same-time indeed
τιμωρεῖσθαι αὐτὸν βουλόμενος, ὅτι δοκεῖ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ μεγάλα
to-punish him wishing because he-thinks by him greatly
βεβλάφθαι· ἅμα δὲ ἴσως κἀκεῖνο ἐννοεῖται ὡς εἰ
to-have-been-harmed at-the-same-time and perhaps that-too he-considers that if
οἱ μὲν πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀφιστάμενοι μηδὲν ὑπ' ἐκείνου κακὸν
the(-men) indeed to us revolting nothing from him evil
πείσονται, οἱ δὲ σὺν ἐκείνῳ ὄντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀπολοῦνται,
will-suffer the(-men) and with him being by us will-perish
ὅτι τάχιστα οὐδένα εἰκὸς σὺν αὐτῷ βουλήσεσθαι εἶναι.
as quickly-as-possible no-one likely with him to-wish to-be

31 νῦν οὖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, καλόν τι ἄν μοι δοκοῦμεν ποιῆσαι,
now then O men fine something — to-me we-seem to-do
εἰ προθύμως Γαδάτᾳ βοηθήσαιμεν ἀνδρὶ εὐεργέτῃ· καὶ
if eagerly to-Gadatas we-should-help to-a-man benefactor and
ἅμα δίκαια ποιοῖμεν ἂν χάριν ἀποδιδόντες· ἀλλὰ
at-the-same-time just(-things) we-would-do — gratitude repaying but
μὴν καὶ σύμφορά γ' ἄν, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, πράξαιμεν
truly also advantageous(-things) at-least — as to-me seems we-would-do
ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς.
for-us ourselves

εἰ γὰρ πᾶσι φαινοίμεθα τοὺς μὲν κακῶς ποιοῦντας νικᾶν 32
if for to-all we-should-appear the(-ones) indeed badly doing to-surpass
πειρώμενοι κακῶς ποιοῦντες, τοὺς δ' εὐεργέτας ἀγαθοῖς
trying badly doing(-them) the(-ones) and benefactors in-good-things
ὑπερβαλλόμενοι, εἰκὸς ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων φίλους μὲν πολλοὺς
outdoing likely from the such(-conduct) friends indeed many
ἡμῖν βούλεσθαι γίγνεσθαι, ἐχθρὸν δὲ μηδένα ἐπιθυμεῖν εἶναι·
for-us to-wish to-become enemy and no-one to-desire to-be
εἰ δὲ ἀμελῆσαι δόξαιμεν Γαδάτα, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν ποίοις 33
if but to-neglect we-should-seem Gadatas by the gods with-what-sort-of
λόγοις ἂν ἄλλον πείθοιμεν χαρίζεσθαί τι ἡμῖν; πῶς δ'
words — another could-we-persuade to-do-a-favor anything to-us how and
ἂν τολμῷμεν ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐπαινεῖν; πῶς δ' ἂν ἀντιβλέψαι
— would-we-dare us ourselves to-praise how and — to-look-in-the-face
τις ἡμῶν δύναιτο Γαδάτᾳ, εἰ ἡττώμεθ' εὖ ποιοῦντος
anyone of-us could Gadatas if we-should-be-outdone well doing(-us)
τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ἑνὸς ἀνδρὸς καὶ τούτου οὕτω διακειμένου;
so-many being by-one man and this(-man) so disposed
ὃ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ πάντες ἰσχυρῶς συνεπήνουν 34
he indeed so spoke they and all strongly approved
ταῦτα ποιεῖν. Ἄγε τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὑμῖν συνδοκεῖ
these(-things) to-do Come then he-said since also to-you it-seems-good-too
ταῦτα, ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ ὀχήμασι καταλίπωμεν
these(-things) over indeed the pack-animals and wagons let-us-leave
ἕκαστοι τοὺς μετ' αὐτῶν ἐπιτηδειοτάτους πορεύεσθαι.
each the(-men) with them most-suitable to-march
Γωβρύας δ' ἡμῖν ἀρχέτω αὐτῶν καὶ ἡγείσθω αὐτοῖς· καὶ 35
Gobryas and for-us let-command them and let-lead them and
γὰρ ὁδῶν ἔμπειρος καὶ τἆλλα ἱκανός· ἡμεῖς δ', ἔφη,
for of-roads experienced and in-the-other-things capable we and he-said
καὶ ἵπποις τοῖς δυνατωτάτοις καὶ ἀνδράσι πορευώμεθα,
both with-horses the strongest and with-men let-us-march

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τριῶν ἡμερῶν λαβόντες· ὅσῳ δ' ἂν
the necessaries of-three days having-taken by-as-much-as and —
κουφότερον συσκευασώμεθα καὶ εὐτελέστερον, τοσούτῳ
lighter we-pack and more-cheaply by-so-much
ἥδιον τὰς ἐπιούσας ἡμέρας ἀριστήσομέν τε καὶ
more-pleasantly the following days we-shall-breakfast both and
δειπνήσομεν καὶ καθευδήσομεν. νῦν δ', ἔφη, πορευώμεθα ὧδε·
dine and sleep now and he-said let-us-march thus
36 πρώτους μὲν ἄγε σύ, Χρυσάντα, τοὺς θωρακοφόρους, ἐπεὶ
first indeed lead you Chrysantas the breastplate-wearers since
ὁμαλή τε καὶ πλατεῖα ἡ ὁδός ἐστι, τοὺς ταξιάρχους ἔχων ἐν
level both and broad the road is the taxiarchs having in
μετώπῳ πάντας· ἡ δὲ τάξις ἑκάστη ἐφ' ἑνὸς ἴτω· ἁθρόοι
front all the and company each in single(-file) let-go in-a-body
γὰρ ὄντες καὶ τάχιστα καὶ ἀσφαλέστατα πορευοίμεθ' ἄν.
for being both quickest and safest we-would-march —
37 τούτου δ' ἕνεκα, ἔφη, τοὺς θωρακοφόρους κελεύω
of-this and for-the-sake he-said the breastplate-wearers I-bid
ἡγεῖσθαι ὅτι τοῦτο βραδύτατόν ἐστι τοῦ στρατεύματος·
to-lead because this slowest is of-the army
τοῦ δὲ βραδυτάτου ἡγουμένου ἀνάγκη ῥᾳδίως ἕπεσθαι
the and slowest leading necessity(-is) easily to-follow
πάντα τὰ θᾶττον ἰόντα· ὅταν δὲ τὸ τάχιστον ἡγῆται
all the faster going when but the quickest leads
ἐν νυκτί, οὐδέν ἐστι θαυμαστὸν καὶ διασπᾶσθαι τὰ
in night nothing is surprising even to-be-pulled-apart the
στρατεύματα· τὸ γὰρ προταχθὲν ἀποδιδράσκει.
armies the for placed-in-front runs-away
38 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις, ἔφη, Ἀρτάβαζος τοὺς Περσῶν πελταστὰς
after and these he-said Artabazus the of-Persians peltasts
καὶ τοξότας ἀγέτω· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Ἀνδαμύας ὁ Μῆδος τὸ
and archers let-lead after and these Andamyas the Mede the

Μήδων πεζόν· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Ἔμβας τὸ Ἀρμενίων πεζόν· ἐπὶ
of-Medes infantry after and these Embas the of-Armenians infantry after
δὲ τούτοις Ἀρτούχας Ὑρκανίους· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Θαμβράδας
and these Artuchas Hyrcanians after and these Thambradas
τὸ Σακῶν πεζόν· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Δατάμας Καδουσίους.
the of-Sacians infantry after and these Datamas Cadusians
ἀγόντων δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες ἐν μετώπῳ μὲν τοὺς 39
let-lead and also these all in front indeed the
ταξιάρχους ἔχοντες, δεξιοὺς δὲ τοὺς πελταστάς, ἀριστεροὺς
taxiarchs having on-the-right and the peltasts on-the-left
δὲ τοὺς τοξότας τοῦ ἑαυτῶν πλαισίου· οὕτω γὰρ
and the archers of-the of-themselves column so for
πορευόμενοι καὶ εὐχρηστότεροι γίγνονται.
marching also more-serviceable they-become
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ σκευοφόροι, ἔφη, πάντων ἐπέσθων· οἱ 40
after and these the baggage-carriers he-said of-all let-follow the
δὲ ἄρχοντες αὐτῶν ἐπιμελείσθων ὅπως συνεσκευασμένοι
and commanders of-them let-take-care that packed-up
τε ὦσι πάντα πρὶν καθεύδειν καὶ πρῲ σὺν τοῖς σκεύεσι
both they-are all before to-sleep and early with the baggage
παρῶσιν εἰς τὴν τεταγμένην χώραν καὶ ὅπως κοσμίως
they-be-present at the appointed place and that in-order
ἕπωνται.
they-follow
ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς σκευοφόροις, ἔφη, τοὺς Πέρσας ἱππέας 41
after and the baggage-carriers he-said the Persian horsemen
Μαδάτας ὁ Πέρσης ἀγέτω, ἔχων καὶ οὗτος τοὺς
Madatas the Persian let-lead having also this(-man) the
ἑκατοντάρχους τῶν ἱππέων ἐν μετώπῳ· ὁ δ' ἑκατόνταρχος
centurions of-the horsemen in front the and centurion
τὴν τάξιν ἀγέτω εἰς ἕνα, ὥσπερ οἱ πέζαρχοι.
the company let-lead in single(-file) just-as the infantry-commanders

42 ἐπὶ τούτοις Ῥαμβάκας Μῆδος ὡσαύτως τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ
after these Rhambacas a-Mede likewise the of-himself
ἱππέας· ἐπὶ τούτοις σύ, ὦ Τιγράνη, τὸ σεαυτοῦ ἱππικόν·
horsemen after these you O Tigranes the of-yourself cavalry
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ ἵππαρχοι μεθ' ὧν ἕκαστοι ἀφίκοντο
and the other and cavalry-commanders with whom each arrived
πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐπὶ τούτοις Σάκαι ἄγετε· ἔσχατοι δέ, ὥσπερ
to us after these Sacians lead last and as
ἦλθον, Καδούσιοι ἰόντων· Ἀλκεύνα, σὺ δὲ ὁ ἄγων
they-came Cadusians let-go Alceunas you and the(-one) leading
αὐτοὺς ἐπιμελοῦ τὸ νῦν εἶναι πάντων τῶν ὄπισθεν καὶ
them take-care the now to-be of-all the(-men) behind and
μηδένα ἔα ὕστερον τῶν σῶν ἱππέων γίγνεσθαι.
no-one let later than-the your horsemen to-be

43 ἐπιμελεῖσθε δὲ τοῦ σιωπῇ πορεύεσθαι οἵ τε ἄρχοντες καὶ
take-care and of-the in-silence to-march the both commanders and
πάντες δὲ οἱ σωφρονοῦντες· διὰ γὰρ τῶν ὤτων ἐν τῇ
all and the sensible(-men) through for the ears in the
νυκτὶ ἀνάγκη μᾶλλον ἢ διὰ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἕκαστα
night necessity(-is) more than through the eyes each-thing
καὶ αἰσθάνεσθαι καὶ σκέπτεσθαι· καὶ τὸ ταραχθῆναι
both to-perceive and to-consider and the to-be-thrown-into-confusion
δὲ ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ πολὺ μεῖζόν ἐστι πρᾶγμα ἢ ἐν τῇ
and in the night much greater is matter than in the
ἡμέρᾳ καὶ δυσκαταστατώτερον· οὗ ἕνεκα ἥ τε σιωπὴ
day and harder-to-set-right of-which for-the-sake the both silence
ἀσκητέα καὶ ἡ τάξις φυλακτέα.
must-be-practiced and the order must-be-kept

44 τὰς δὲ νυκτερινὰς φυλακάς, ὅταν μέλλητε νυκτὸς
the and night watches when you-intend by-night
ἀναστήσεσθαι, χρὴ ὡς βραχυτάτας καὶ πλείστας
to-rise (one)-must as shortest and most

ποιεῖσθαι, ὡς μηδένα ἡ ἐν τῇ φυλακῇ ἀγρυπνία πολλὴ
to-make so-that no-one the in the watch sleeplessness much
οὖσα λυμαίνηται ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ· ἡνίκα δ' ἂν ὥρα ᾖ
being may-harm in the march when and — the-hour be
πορεύεσθαι, σημαίνειν τῷ κέρατι.
to-march to-signal with-the horn
ὑμεῖς δ' ἔχοντες ἃ δεῖ ἕκαστοι πάρεστε εἰς τὴν 45
you and having what (one)-must each be-present at the
ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος ὁδόν· ὁ δ' ὁρμώμενος ἀεὶ τῷ
to Babylon road the(-man) and setting-out always to-the(-man)
κατ' οὐρὰν παρεγγυάτω ἕπεσθαι.
at the-rear let-pass-the-word to-follow
Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ᾤχοντο ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς καὶ ἅμα 46
From this indeed they-went to the tents and at-the-same-time
ἀπιόντες διελέγοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὡς μνημονικῶς ὁ
going-away they-talked to one-another how retentively —
Κῦρος ὁπόσοις συνέταττε πᾶσιν ὀνομάζων ἐνετέλλετο.
Cyrus as-many-as he-arranged all naming gave-instructions(-to)
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπιμελείᾳ τοῦτο ἐποίει· πάνυ γὰρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ 47
— and Cyrus by-care this did very for it-seemed to-him
θαυμαστὸν εἶναι εἰ οἱ μὲν βάναυσοι ἴσασι τῆς ἑαυτοῦ
surprising to-be if the indeed craftsmen know of-the of-himself
τέχνης ἕκαστος τῶν ἐργαλείων τὰ ὀνόματα, καὶ ὁ ἰατρὸς
craft each of-the tools the names and the doctor
δὲ οἶδε καὶ τῶν ὀργάνων καὶ τῶν φαρμάκων οἷς χρῆται
and knows both of-the instruments and of-the medicines which he-uses
πάντων τὰ ὀνόματα, ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς οὕτως ἠλίθιος ἔσοιτο
of-all the names the but general so foolish would-be
ὥστε οὐκ εἴσοιτο τῶν ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἡγεμόνων τὰ ὀνόματα,
that not he-would-know of-the under himself leaders the names
οἷς ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν αὐτῷ ὀργάνοις χρῆσθαι καὶ ὅταν
whom necessity is for-him as-instruments to-use both when

καταλαβεῖν τι βούληται καὶ ὅταν φυλάξαι καὶ ὅταν
to-seize something he-wishes and when to-guard and when
θαρρῦναι καὶ ὅταν φοβῆσαι· καὶ τιμῆσαι δὲ ὁπότε τινὰ
to-encourage and when to-frighten and to-honor and whenever anyone
βούλοιτο, πρέπον αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὀνομαστὶ προσαγορεύειν.
he-wished fitting to-him it-seemed to-be by-name to-address

48 ἐδόκουν δ' αὐτῷ οἱ γιγνώσκεσθαι δοκοῦντες ὑπὸ
seemed and to-him the(-men) to-be-known seeming by
τοῦ ἄρχοντος καὶ τοῦ καλόν τι ποιοῦντες ὁρᾶσθαι
the commander both of-the fine something doing to-be-seen
μᾶλλον ὀρέγεσθαι καὶ τοῦ αἰσχρόν τι ποιεῖν μᾶλλον
more to-reach-for and from-the shameful something to-do more
προθυμεῖσθαι ἀπέχεσθαι.
to-be-eager to-keep-away

49 ἠλίθιον δὲ καὶ τοῦτ' ἐδόκει εἶναι αὐτῷ τὸ ὁπότε τι
foolish and also this seemed to-be to-him the whenever anything
βούλοιτο πραχθῆναι, οὕτω προστάττειν ὥσπερ ἐν οἴκῳ
he-wished to-be-done so to-command as in house
ἔνιοι δεσπόται προστάττουσιν, Ἴτω τις ἐφ' ὕδωρ, Ξύλα
some masters command Let-go someone for water Wood
τις σχισάτω·
someone let-split

50 οὕτω γὰρ προσταττομένων εἰς ἀλλήλους τε ὁρᾶν πάντες
so for being-commanded at one-another both to-look all
ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ καὶ οὐδεὶς περαίνειν τὸ προσταχθὲν καὶ
seemed to-him and no-one to-accomplish the(-thing) commanded and
πάντες ἐν αἰτίᾳ εἶναι καὶ οὐδεὶς οὔτε αἰσχύνεσθαι οὔτε
all in blame to-be and no-one either to-be-ashamed or
φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ ὁμοίως σὺν πολλοῖς αἰτίαν ἔχειν·
to-fear because-of the equally with many blame to-have

διὰ ταῦτα δὴ αὐτὸς πάντας ὠνόμαζεν ὅτῳ
because-of these(-things) indeed himself all he-named to-whomever
τι προστάττοι.
anything he-commanded
Καὶ Κῦρος μὲν δὴ περὶ τούτων οὕτως ἐγίγνωσκεν. 51
And Cyrus indeed then about these(-things) so judged
οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες καὶ φυλακὰς
the and soldiers then indeed having-dined and guards
καταστησάμενοι καὶ συσκευασάμενοι πάντα ἃ ἔδει
having-posted and having-packed-up all what was-needful
ἐκοιμήθησαν.
slept
ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἐν μέσῳ νυκτῶν, ἐσήμηνε τῷ κέρατι. 52
when and it-was in middle of-nights signaled with-the horn
Κῦρος δ' εἰπὼν τῷ Χρυσάντᾳ ὅτι ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ὑπομενοίη
Cyrus and having-told — Chrysantas that on the road he-would-wait
ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐξήει λαβὼν τοὺς ἀμφ'
in the front of-the army went-out having-taken the about
αὐτὸν ὑπηρέτας· βραχεῖ δὲ χρόνῳ ὕστερον Χρυσάντας
himself attendants short and time later Chrysantas
παρῆν ἄγων τοὺς θωρακοφόρους.
was-present leading the breastplate-wearers
τούτῳ μὲν ὁ Κῦρος δοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῆς ὁδοῦ πορεύεσθαι 53
to-him indeed — Cyrus having-given guides of-the road to-march
ἐκέλευσεν ἡσύχως· οὐ γάρ πω ἐν ὁδῷ πάντες ἦσαν· αὐτὸς
bade quietly not for yet on road all were himself
δὲ ἑστηκὼς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τὸν μὲν προσιόντα προυπέμπετο
and standing on the road the(-one) indeed coming-up sent-on
ἐν τάξει, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν ὑστερίζοντα ἔπεμπε καλῶν.
in rank for and the(-one) lagging he-sent calling(-him)

54 ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες ἐν ὁδῷ ἦσαν, πρὸς μὲν Χρυσάνταν
when and all on road were to indeed Chrysantas
ἱππέας ἔπεμψεν ἐροῦντας ὅτι ἐν ὁδῷ ἤδη πάντες· ἄγε
horsemen he-sent going-to-say that on road already all lead
οὖν θᾶττον.
then faster

55 αὐτὸς δὲ παρελαύνων τὸν ἵππον εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἥσυχος
himself and riding-past the horse to the front quietly
κατεθεᾶτο τὰς τάξεις. καὶ οὓς μὲν ἴδοι εὐτάκτως καὶ σιωπῇ
he-surveyed the companies and whom indeed he-saw in-good-order and in-silence
ἰόντας, προσελαύνων αὐτοῖς τίνες τε εἶεν ἤρετο καὶ ἐπεὶ
going riding-up to-them who both they-were he-asked and when
πύθοιτο ἐπῄνει· εἰ δέ τινας θορυβουμένους αἴσθοιτο, τὸ
he-learned he-praised(-them) if but some disturbed he-perceived the
αἴτιον τούτου σκοπῶν κατασβεννύναι τὴν ταραχὴν ἐπειρᾶτο.
cause of-this examining to-quench the confusion he-tried

56 Ἓν μόνον παραλέλειπται τῆς ἐν νυκτὶ ἐπιμελείας αὐτοῦ,
One only has-been-left-out of-the at night care of-his
ὅτι πρὸ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος πεζοὺς εὐζώνους
that before all the army foot-soldiers light-armed
οὐ πολλοὺς προύπεμπεν, ἐφορωμένους ὑπὸ Χρυσάντα
not many he-sent-ahead watched by Chrysantas
καὶ ἐφορῶντας αὐτὸν, ὡς ὠτακουστοῦντες καὶ εἴ
and watching him so-that listening and if
πως ἄλλως δύναιντο αἰσθάνεσθαί τι, σημαίνοιεν τῷ
somehow otherwise they-could to-perceive anything they-might-signal —
Χρυσάντᾳ ὅ τι καιρὸς δοκοίη εἶναι· ἄρχων δὲ καὶ
to-Chrysantas what ever timely seemed to-be a-commander and also
ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦν ὃς καὶ τούτους ἐκόσμει, καὶ τὸ μὲν
over these there-was who also these ordered and the indeed
ἄξιον λόγου ἐσήμαινε, τὸ δὲ μὴ οὐκ ἠνώχλει λέγων.
worth of-mention he-signaled the but not not he-bothered(-him) telling

τὴν μὲν δὴ νύκτα οὕτως ἐπορεύετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα 57
the indeed then night so he-marched when and day
ἐγένετο, τοὺς μὲν Καδουσίων ἱππέας, ὅτι αὐτῶν καὶ οἱ
came the indeed of-Cadusians horsemen because of-them also the
πεζοὶ ἐπορεύοντο ἔσχατοι, παρὰ τούτοις κατέλιπεν, ὡς
foot-soldiers marched last beside these he-left so-that
μηδ' οὗτοι ψιλοὶ ἱππέων ἴοιεν· τοὺς δ' ἄλλους εἰς τὸ
not-even these bare of-horsemen might-go the and others to the
πρόσθεν παρελαύνειν ἐκέλευσεν, ὅτι καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐν
front to-ride-forward he-bade because also the enemies in
τῷ πρόσθεν ἦσαν, ὅπως εἴ τί που ἐναντιοῖτο αὐτῷ,
the front were so-that if anything anywhere opposed him
ἀπαντῴη ἔχων τὴν ἰσχὺν ἐν τάξει καὶ μάχοιτο, εἴ τέ
he-might-meet(-it) having the strength in rank and fight if and
τί που φεῦγον ὀφθείη, ὡς ἐξ ἑτοιμοτάτου διώκοι.
anything anywhere fleeing were-seen that from most-ready(-state) he-might-pursue
ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ τεταγμένοι οὕς τε διώκειν δέοι 58
were and for-him always assigned whom both to-pursue there-should-be-need
καὶ οὓς παρ' αὐτῷ μένειν· πᾶσαν δὲ τὴν τάξιν λυθῆναι
and whom by him to-stay whole but the formation to-be-broken
οὐδέποτε εἴα.
never he-allowed
Κῦρος μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἦγε τὸ στράτευμα· οὐ μέντοι 59
Cyrus indeed then so led the army not however
αὐτός γε μιᾷ χώρᾳ ἐχρῆτο, ἀλλ' ἄλλοτε ἀλλαχῇ
himself at-least one place used but at-one-time in-another-place
περιελαύνων ἐφεώρα τε καὶ ἐπεμελεῖτο, εἴ του δέοιντο.
riding-around he-watched both and took-care if of-anything they-needed
οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον οὕτως ἐπορεύοντο.
the(-men) indeed then about Cyrus so marched

IV · THE RESCUE OF GADATAS

A cavalry officer of Gadatas betrays him to the king, who lies in ambush; Gadatas is wounded, but Cyrus arrives and routs the Assyrians. Gadatas thanks him with gifts. The Cadusian commander, raiding without orders, is killed; Cyrus tends the wounded, has the Cadusians choose a new commander, buries their dead, and ravages the land. He offers the king a truce for all who work the land. Gadatas, who has no heir, gives his horses and asks protection; Cyrus garrisons his forts and takes him and his mother along. Passing Babylon at a safe distance, Cyrus takes three Syrian forts.

1 Ἐκ δὲ τοῦ Γαδάτα ἱππικοῦ τῶν δυνατῶν τις ἀνδρῶν
From and the of-Gadatas cavalry of-the powerful one men
ἐπεὶ ἑώρα αὐτὸν ἀφεστηκότα ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου, ἐνόμισεν,
when he-saw him having-revolted from the Assyrian thought
εἴ τι οὗτος πάθοι, αὐτὸς ἂν λαβεῖν παρὰ τοῦ
if anything this(-man) should-suffer himself — to-get from the
Ἀσσυρίου πάντα τὰ Γαδάτα· οὕτω δὴ πέμπει τινὰ
Assyrian all the(-things) of-Gadatas so indeed he-sends one
τῶν ἑαυτοῦ πιστῶν πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ κελεύει
of-the his-own trusty(-men) to the Assyrian and bids
τὸν ἰόντα, εἰ καταλάβοι ἤδη ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα χώρᾳ τὸ
the(-man) going if he-should-find already in the of-Gadatas country the
Ἀσσύριον στράτευμα, λέγειν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ ὅτι εἰ βούλοιτο
Assyrian army to-tell the Assyrian that if he-wished
ἐνεδρεῦσαι, λάβοι ἂν Γαδάταν καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ.
to-lay-an-ambush he-would-take — Gadatas and the(-men) with him
2 δηλοῦν δὲ ἐνετέλλετο ὅσην τε εἶχεν ὁ Γαδάτας
to-make-plain and he-instructed how-great both had — Gadatas
δύναμιν καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος οὐ συνέποιτο αὐτῷ· καὶ τὴν
force and that Cyrus not was-following him and the
ὁδὸν ἐδήλωσεν ᾗ προσιέναι μέλλοι. προσεπέστειλε δὲ
road he-made-plain by-which to-approach he-intended he-sent-word-besides and

τοῖς αὑτοῦ οἰκέταις, ὡς πιστεύοιτο μᾶλλον, καὶ τὸ
to-the his-own servants so-that he-might-be-trusted more also the
τεῖχος ὃ ἐτύγχανεν αὐτὸς ἔχων ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα χώρᾳ
fort which happened himself holding in the of-Gadatas country
παραδοῦναι τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ καὶ τὰ ἐνόντα· ἥξειν δὲ
to-hand-over to-the Assyrian and the(-things) in(-it) to-come and
καὶ αὐτὸς ἔφασκεν, εἰ μὲν δύναιτο, ἀποκτείνας Γαδάταν,
also himself he-said if indeed he-could having-killed Gadatas
εἰ δὲ μή, ὡς σὺν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐσόμενος.
if but not as with the Assyrian the remaining(-time) going-to-be
ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἐπὶ ταῦτα ταχθεὶς ἐλαύνων ὡς δυνατὸν ἦν 3
when and the(-man) for these(-things) appointed riding as possible was
τάχιστα ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ ἐδήλωσεν ἐφ' ἃ
most-quickly arrives at the Assyrian and made-plain for what
ἥκοι, ἀκούσας ἐκεῖνος τό τε χωρίον παρέλαβεν εὐθὺς καὶ
he-came having-heard he the both place took-over at-once and
πολλὴν ἵππον ἔχων καὶ ἅρματα ἐνήδρευεν ἐν κώμαις ἀθρόαις.
much cavalry having and chariots lay-in-ambush in villages close-together
ὁ δὲ Γαδάτας ὡς ἐγγὺς ἦν τούτων τῶν κωμῶν, 4
— and Gadatas when near he-was to-these the villages
πέμπει τινὰς προδιερευνησομένους. ὁ δὲ Ἀσσύριος ὡς
sends some going-to-search-ahead — and Assyrian when
ἔγνω προσιόντας τοὺς διερευνητάς, φεύγειν κελεύει ἅρματα
he-knew approaching the searchers to-flee orders chariots
ἐξαναστάντα δύο ἢ τρία καὶ ἵππους ὀλίγους, ὡς δὴ
having-started-up two or three and horses few as-if indeed
φοβηθέντας καὶ ὀλίγους ὄντας. οἱ δὲ διερευνηταὶ ὡς εἶδον
having-taken-fright and few being the and searchers when they-saw
ταῦτα, αὐτοί τε ἐδίωκον καὶ τῷ Γαδάτᾳ κατέσειον· καὶ ὃς
these(-things) themselves both pursued and — to-Gadatas beckoned and he

ἐξαπατηθεὶς διώκει ἀνὰ κράτος. οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι, ὡς ἐδόκει
having-been-deceived pursues with all-might the and Assyrians when seemed
ἁλώσιμος εἶναι ὁ Γαδάτας, ἀνίστανται ἐκ τῆς ἐνέδρας.
capturable to-be — Gadatas rise-up from the ambush
5 καὶ οἳ μὲν ἀμφὶ Γαδάταν ἰδόντες ἔφευγον, οἳ
and they indeed about Gadatas having-seen(-them) fled they
δ' αὖ ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐδίωκον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ὁ
and in-turn as likely pursued and in this the(-man)
ἐπιβουλεύων τῷ Γαδάτᾳ παίει αὐτόν, καὶ καιρίας μὲν
plotting-against — Gadatas strikes him and a-mortal indeed
πληγῆς ἁμαρτάνει, τύπτει δὲ αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν ὦμον καὶ
blow misses strikes but him in the shoulder and
τιτρώσκει. ποιήσας δὲ τοῦτο ἐξίσταται, ἕως σὺν τοῖς
wounds(-him) having-done and this he-stands-aside until with the
διώκουσιν ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγνώσθη ὃς ἦν, ὁμοῦ δὴ
pursuers he-was when and was-recognized who he-was together indeed
προθύμως ἐκτείνων τὸν ἵππον σὺν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐδίωκεν.
eagerly stretching-out the horse with the king he-pursued
6 ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡλίσκοντο μὲν δῆλον ὅτι οἱ
then indeed were-being-caught indeed clear(-it-is) that the(-men)
βραδυτάτους ἔχοντες τοὺς ἵππους ὑπὸ τῶν ταχίστους·
slowest having the horses by the(-ones) fastest
ἤδη δὲ μάλα πάντες πιεζόμενοι διὰ τὸ κατατετρῦσθαι
already and very all being-hard-pressed because-of the to-have-been-worn-out
ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας οἱ τοῦ Γαδάτα ἱππεῖς καθορῶσι τὸν Κῦρον
by the march the — of-Gadatas horsemen catch-sight-of — Cyrus
προσιόντα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· δοκεῖν δὲ χρὴ ἀσμένους
approaching with the army to-think and (one)-must gladly
καὶ ὥσπερ εἰς λιμένα ἐκ χειμῶνος προσφέρεσθαι αὐτούς.
and as-if into a-harbor from a-storm to-be-borne-toward(-him) them

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἐθαύμασεν· ὡς δ' ἔγνω τὸ 7
— and Cyrus the indeed first wondered when and he-knew the
πρᾶγμα, ἔστε μὲν πάντες ἐναντίοι ἤλαυνον, ἐναντίος καὶ
matter while indeed all opposite rode opposite also
αὐτὸς ἐν τάξει ἦγε τὴν στρατιάν· ὡς δὲ γνόντες οἱ
himself in rank led the army when and having-realized the
πολέμιοι τὸ ὂν ἐτράποντο εἰς φυγήν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ
enemies the being(-fact) turned to flight then indeed —
Κῦρος διώκειν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένους,
Cyrus to-pursue ordered the(-men) for this appointed
αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις εἵπετο ὡς ᾤετο συμφέρειν.
himself and with the others followed as he-thought to-be-advantageous
ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ ἅρματα ἡλίσκοντο, ἔνια μὲν καὶ 8
then indeed also chariots were-being-taken some indeed also
ἐκπιπτόντων τῶν ἡνιόχων, τῶν μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀναστροφῇ,
falling-out the charioteers some indeed in the turning-about
τῶν δὲ καὶ ἄλλως, ἔνια δὲ καὶ περιτεμνόμενα ὑπὸ τῶν
some and also otherwise some and also cut-off by the
ἱππέων. καὶ ἀποκτείνουσιν ἄλλους τε πολλοὺς καὶ τὸν
horsemen and they-kill others both many and the(-man)
παίσαντα Γαδάταν.
having-struck Gadatas
τῶν μέντοι πεζῶν Ἀσσυρίων, οἳ ἔτυχον τὸ Γαδάτα 9
of-the however foot Assyrians who happened the of-Gadatas
χωρίον πολιορκοῦντες, οἳ μὲν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος κατέφυγον
place besieging some indeed into the fort fled
τὸ ἀπὸ Γαδάτα ἀποστάν, οἳ δὲ φθάσαντες εἰς πόλιν
the(-one) from Gadatas having-revolted some and having-got-ahead into city
τινὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου μεγάλην, ἔνθα καὶ αὐτὸς σὺν τοῖς
some of-the Assyrian large where also himself with the
ἵπποις καὶ τοῖς ἅρμασι κατέφυγεν ὁ Ἀσσύριος.
horses and the chariots fled the Assyrian

10 Κῦρος μὲν δὴ διαπραξάμενος ταῦτα ἐπανεχώρει εἰς
Cyrus indeed then having-accomplished these(-things) returned into
τὴν Γαδάτα χώραν. καὶ προστάξας οἷς ἔδει ἀμφὶ τὰ
the of-Gadatas country and having-ordered whom it-was-needful about the
αἰχμάλωτα ἔχειν, εὐθὺς ἐπορεύετο, ὡς ἐπισκέψαιτο τὸν
captives to-be(-busy) at-once marched so-that he-might-visit —
Γαδάταν πῶς ἔχοι ἐκ τοῦ τραύματος. πορευομένῳ δὲ
Gadatas how he-was from the wound marching and
αὐτῷ ὁ Γαδάτας ἐπιδεδεμένος ἤδη τὸ τραῦμα ἀπαντᾷ.
him — Gadatas bound-up already the wound meets
ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Κῦρος ἥσθη τε καὶ εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ
having-seen and him — Cyrus was-pleased both and said I
δὲ πρὸς σὲ ᾖα ἐπισκεψόμενος πῶς ἔχεις.
and to you was-going going-to-see how you-are
11 Ἐγὼ δέ γ', ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας, ναὶ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς σὲ
I and at-least said — Gadatas yes by the gods you
ἐπαναθεασόμενος ᾖα ὁποῖός τίς ποτε φαίνῃ ἰδεῖν
going-to-look-at-again was-going what-sort some ever you-appear to-see
ὁ τοιαύτην ψυχὴν ἔχων· ὅστις οὔτ' οἶδα ἔγωγε ὅ
the(-one) such a-soul having who neither know I-at-least what
τι νῦν ἐμοὶ δεόμενος οὔτε μὲν ὑποσχόμενός γέ μοι
ever now to-me needing nor indeed having-promised at-least to-me
ταῦτα πράξειν οὔτ' εὖ πεπονθὼς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ εἴς γε τὸ
these(-things) to-do nor well having-been-treated by me in at-least the
ἴδιον οὐδ' ὁτιοῦν, ἀλλ' ὅτι τοὺς φίλους ἔδοξά σοί
private(-interest) even anything-at-all but because the friends I-seemed to-you
τι ὀνῆσαι, οὕτω μοι προθύμως ἐβοήθησας ὡς νῦν τὸ
somewhat to-have-helped so for-me eagerly you-helped that now the
μὲν ἐπ' ἐμοὶ οἴχομαι, τὸ δ' ἐπὶ σοὶ σέσωσμαι.
indeed on me(-depending) I-am-lost the and on you(-depending) I-have-been-saved

οὐ μὰ τοὺς θεούς, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἦν οἷος ἔφυν ἐξ 12
not by the gods O Cyrus if I-were such-as I-was-born from
ἀρχῆς καὶ ἐπαιδοποιησάμην, οὐκ οἶδ' ἂν εἰ ἐκτησάμην
beginning and had-begotten-children not I-know — whether I-would-have-got
παῖδα τοιοῦτον περὶ ἐμέ· ἐπεὶ ἄλλους τε οἶδα παῖδας
a-son such toward me since others both I-know children
καὶ τοῦτον τὸν νῦν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέα πολὺ πλείω ἤδη
and this the present of-Assyrians king much more already
τὸν ἑαυτοῦ πατέρα ἀνιάσαντα ἢ σὲ νῦν δύναται ἀνιᾶν.
the his-own father having-grieved than you now can to-grieve
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν ὧδε. Ὦ Γαδάτα, ἦ 13
and — Cyrus to these(-things) said thus O Gadatas truly
πολὺ μεῖζον παρεὶς θαῦμα ἐμὲ νῦν θαυμάζεις. Καὶ
much greater having-passed-over wonder me now you-wonder-at And
τί δὴ τοῦτ' ἔστιν; ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας. Ὅτι τοσοῦτοι μέν,
what then this is said — Gadatas That so-many indeed
ἔφη, Περσῶν ἐσπούδασαν περὶ σέ, τοσοῦτοι δὲ Μήδων,
he-said of-Persians were-zealous about you so-many and of-Medes
τοσοῦτοι δὲ Ὑρκανίων, πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες
so-many and of-Hyrcanians all and the(-men) present
Ἀρμενίων καὶ Σακῶν καὶ Καδουσίων.
of-Armenians and of-Sacians and of-Cadusians
καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας ἐπηύξατο, Ἀλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ, ἔφη, καὶ 14
and — Gadatas prayed-in-addition But O Zeus he-said also
τούτοις πόλλ' ἀγαθὰ δοῖεν οἱ θεοί, καὶ πλεῖστα τῷ
to-these many good-things may-give the gods and most to-the(-one)
αἰτίῳ τοῦ καὶ τούτους τοιούτους εἶναι. ὅπως μέντοι οὓς
responsible for-the also these such to-be that however whom
ἐπαινεῖς τούτους, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ξενίσωμεν καλῶς, δέχου
you-praise these O Cyrus also we-may-entertain well accept
τάδε ξένια οἷα ἐγὼ δοῦναι δύναμαι. ἅμα δὲ
these gifts-of-hospitality such-as I to-give can at-the-same-time and

προσῆγε πάμπολλα, ὥστε καὶ θύειν τὸν βουλόμενον
he-brought-up very-many so-that both to-sacrifice the(-man) wishing
καὶ ξενίζεσθαι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα ἀξίως τῶν καλῶς
and to-be-entertained all the army worthily of-the(-things) well
πεποιημένων καὶ καλῶς συμβάντων.
done and well having-turned-out

15 Ὁ δὲ Καδούσιος ὠπισθοφυλάκει καὶ οὐ μετέσχε τῆς
The and Cadusian commanded-the-rear and not shared-in the
διώξεως· βουλόμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς λαμπρόν τι ποιῆσαι,
pursuit wishing and also himself brilliant something to-do
οὔτε ἀνακοινωσάμενος οὔτε εἰπὼν οὐδὲν Κύρῳ καταθεῖ τὴν
neither having-consulted nor having-said anything to-Cyrus raids the
πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα χώραν. διεσπαρμένοις δὲ τοῖς ἵπποις αὐτοῦ
toward Babylon country scattered and with-the horses of-him
ἀπιὼν ὁ Ἀσσύριος ἐκ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ πόλεως, οἷ κατέφυγε,
going-away the Assyrian from the his-own city to-which he-had-fled
συντυγχάνει μάλα συντεταγμένον ἔχων τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα.
falls-in very drawn-up having the his-own army

16 ὡς δ' ἔγνω μόνους ὄντας τοὺς Καδουσίους, ἐπιτίθεται,
when and he-knew alone being the Cadusians he-attacks
καὶ τόν τε ἄρχοντα τῶν Καδουσίων ἀποκτείνει καὶ ἄλλους
and the both commander of-the Cadusians kills and others
πολλούς, καὶ ἵππους τινὰς λαμβάνει τῶν Καδουσίων
many and horses some takes of-the Cadusians
καὶ ἣν ἄγοντες λείαν ἐτύγχανον ἀφαιρεῖται. καὶ ὁ
and which bringing booty they-happened he-takes-away and the
μὲν Ἀσσύριος διώξας ἄχρι οὗ ἀσφαλὲς ᾤετο
indeed Assyrian having-pursued as-far-as where safe he-thought
εἶναι ἀπετράπετο· οἱ δὲ Καδούσιοι ἐσῴζοντο πρὸς τὸ
to-be turned-back the and Cadusians got-safe to the
στρατόπεδον ἀμφὶ δείλην οἱ πρῶτοι.
camp about afternoon the first(-ones)

Κῦρος δ’ ὡς ἤσθετο τὸ γεγονός, ἀπήντα τοῖς 17
Cyrus and when he-perceived the(-thing) having-happened went-to-meet the
Καδουσίοις καὶ ὅντινα ἴδοι τετρωμένον ἀναλαμβάνων
Cadusians and whomever he-saw wounded taking-up
τοῦτον μὲν ὡς Γαδάταν ἔπεμπεν, ὅπως θεραπεύοιτο,
this(-one) indeed to Gadatas he-sent so-that he-might-be-cared-for
τοὺς δ’ ἄλλους συγκατεσκήνου καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
the and others he-quartered-with and that the necessaries
ἕξουσι συνεπεμελεῖτο, παραλαμβάνων Περσῶν τῶν
they-would-have he-took-care-with(-them) taking-along of-Persians of-the
ὁμοτίμων συνεπιμελητάς· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις οἱ ἀγαθοὶ
peers fellow-overseers in for the such(-things) the good
ἐπιπονεῖν ἐθέλουσι.
to-toil are-willing
καὶ ἀνιώμενος μέντοι ἰσχυρῶς δῆλος ἦν, ὡς καὶ τῶν 18
and grieving however strongly plain he-was so-that even the
ἄλλων δειπνούντων ἡνίκα ὥρα ἦν, Κῦρος ἔτι σὺν τοῖς
others dining when the-hour was Cyrus still with the
ὑπηρέταις καὶ τοῖς ἰατροῖς οὐδένα ἑκὼν ἀτημέλητον
attendants and the doctors no-one willingly uncared-for
παρέλειπεν, ἀλλ’ ἢ αὐτόπτης ἐφεώρα ἢ εἰ μὴ αὐτὸς
passed-by but either as-eyewitness he-looked-over(-him) or if not himself
ἐξανύτοι, πέμπων φανερὸς ἦν τοὺς θεραπεύσοντας.
he-could-finish sending plain he-was the(-men) going-to-care-for(-him)
Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. ἅμα δὲ τῇ 19
And then indeed so they-slept at-the-same-time and with-the
ἡμέρᾳ κηρύξας συνιέναι τῶν μὲν ἄλλων τοὺς
day having-proclaimed to-come-together of-the indeed others the
ἄρχοντας, τοὺς δὲ Καδουσίους ἅπαντας, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
commanders the and Cadusians all he-spoke as-follows
Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ἀνθρώπινον τὸ γεγενημένον· τὸ γὰρ
Men allies human the(-thing) having-happened the for

ἁμαρτάνειν ἀνθρώπους ὄντας οὐδὲν οἶμαι θαυμαστόν. ἄξιοί
to-err men being nothing I-think surprising worthy
γε μέντοι ἐσμὲν τοῦ γεγενημένου πράγματος τούτου
at-least however we-are of-the having-happened matter this
ἀπολαῦσαί τι ἀγαθόν, τὸ μαθεῖν μήποτε διασπᾶν ἀπὸ τοῦ
to-reap some good the to-learn never to-detach from the
ὅλου δύναμιν ἀσθενεστέραν τῆς τῶν πολεμίων δυνάμεως.
whole a-force weaker than-the of-the enemies force
20 καὶ οὐ τοῦτο, ἔφη, λέγω ὡς οὐ δεῖ ποτε καὶ ἐλάττονι ἔτι
and not this he-said I-say that not (one)-must ever even with-smaller still
μορίῳ ἰέναι, ὅπου ἂν δέῃ, ἢ νῦν ὁ Καδούσιος ᾤχετο·
part to-go wherever — there-be-need than now the Cadusian went
ἀλλ' ἐάν τις κοινούμενος ὁρμᾶται τῷ ἱκανῷ βοηθῆσαι,
but if one consulting sets-out with-the(-one) able to-help
ἔστι μὲν ἀπαρτηθῆναι, ἔστι δὲ τῷ ὑπομένοντι
it-is-possible indeed to-be-cut-off it-is-possible and for-the(-one) staying
ἐξαπατήσαντι τοὺς πολεμίους ἄλλοσε τρέψαι ἀπὸ τῶν
having-deceived the enemies elsewhere to-turn(-them) from the(-men)
ἐξεληλυθότων, ἔστι δὲ τἆλλα παρέχοντα πράγματα
having-gone-out it-is-possible and in-other-ways giving troubles
τοῖς πολεμίοις τοῖς φίλοις ἀσφάλειαν παρέχειν· καὶ οὕτω
to-the enemies to-the friends safety to-provide and so
μὲν οὐδ' ὁ χωρὶς ὢν ἀπέσται, ἀλλ' ἐξαρτήσεται τῆς
indeed not-even the(-man) apart being will-be-away but he-will-be-attached to-the
ἰσχύος· ὁ δὲ ἀπεληλυθὼς μὴ ἀνακοινωσάμενος, ὅπου
strength the(-man) but having-gone-away not having-consulted wherever
ἂν ᾖ, οὐδὲν διάφορον πάσχει ἢ εἰ μόνος ἐστρατεύετο.
— he-is nothing different suffers than if alone he-were-campaigning
21 ἀλλ' ἀντὶ μὲν τούτου, ἔφη, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ, ἀμυνούμεθα
but in-return indeed for-this he-said if god wills we-shall-punish
τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ εἰς μακράν. ἀλλ' ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα
the enemies not after long but as soon-as

ἀριστήσητε, ἄξω ὑμᾶς ἔνθα τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο· καὶ
you-have-breakfasted I-shall-lead you where the matter happened and
ἅμα μὲν θάψομεν τοὺς τελευτήσαντας, ἅμα
at-the-same-time indeed we-shall-bury the(-men) having-died at-the-same-time
δὲ δείξομεν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἔνθα κρατῆσαι νομίζουσιν
and we-shall-show to-the enemies where to-have-prevailed they-think
ἐνταῦθα ἄλλους αὐτῶν κρείττους, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ· καὶ ὅπως
there others than-them stronger if god wills and that
γε μηδὲ τὸ χωρίον ἡδέως ὁρῶσιν ἔνθα κατέκανον
at-least not-even the place gladly they-may-see where they-killed
ἡμῶν τοὺς συμμάχους· ἂν δὲ μὴ ἀντεπεξίωσι,
our the allies if but not they-come-out-against(-us)
καύσομεν αὐτῶν τὰς κώμας καὶ δῃώσομεν τὴν χώραν,
we-shall-burn their the villages and we-shall-ravage the country
ἵνα μὴ ἃ ἡμᾶς ἐποίησαν ὁρῶντες εὐφραίνωνται, ἀλλὰ
so-that not what to-us they-did seeing they-may-rejoice but
τὰ ἑαυτῶν κακὰ θεώμενοι ἀνιῶνται.
the their-own evils beholding they-may-grieve
οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι, ἔφη, ἀριστᾶτε ἰόντες· ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ 22
the indeed then others he-said breakfast going you and O
Καδούσιοι, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελθόντες ἄρχοντα ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
Cadusians first indeed having-gone-away a-commander of-you yourselves
ἕλεσθε ἥπερ ὑμῖν νόμος, ὅστις ὑμῶν ἐπιμελήσεται σὺν
choose as for-you custom(-is) who of-you will-take-care with
τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ σὺν ἡμῖν, ἤν τι προσδέησθε· ἐπειδὰν
the gods and with us if anything you-need-besides when
δὲ ἕλησθε, πέμψατε πρὸς ἐμὲ τὸν αἱρεθέντα.
and you-have-chosen send to me the chosen(-man)
οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξαν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπεὶ ἐξήγαγε 23
they indeed then these(-things) did — and Cyrus when he-led-out
τὸ στράτευμα, κατέστησεν εἰς τάξιν τὸν ἠρημένον ὑπὸ
the army stationed in rank the(-man) chosen by

τῶν Καδουσίων καὶ ἐκέλευσε πλησίον αὑτοῦ ἄγειν τὴν
the Cadusians and ordered near himself to-lead the
τάξιν, ὅπως, ἔφη, ἂν δυνώμεθα, ἀναθαρρύνωμεν τοὺς
company so-that he-said — we-may-be-able we-may-encourage the
ἄνδρας. οὕτω δὴ ἐπορεύοντο· καὶ ἐξελθόντες ἔθαπτον
men so indeed they-marched and having-gone-out they-buried
μὲν τοὺς Καδουσίους, ἐδήουν δὲ τὴν χώραν. ποιήσαντες
indeed the Cadusians ravaged and the country having-done
δὲ ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας
and these(-things) they-went-away the necessaries from the hostile(-land)
ἔχοντες πάλιν εἰς τὴν Γαδάτα.
having back into the(-land) of-Gadatas

24 Ἐννοήσας δὲ ὅτι οἱ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀφεστηκότες ὄντες
Having-considered and that the(-men) to him having-revolted being
πλησίον Βαβυλῶνος κακῶς πείσονται, ἢν μὴ αὐτὸς αἰεὶ
near Babylon badly will-suffer if not himself always
παρῇ, οὕτως ὅσους τε τῶν πολεμίων ἀφίει, τούτους
be-present so as-many-as both of-the enemies he-released these
ἐκέλευσε λέγειν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ, καὶ αὐτὸς κήρυκα ἔπεμψε
he-bade to-tell the Assyrian and himself a-herald sent
πρὸς αὐτὸν ταὐτὰ λέγοντα, ὅτι ἕτοιμος εἴη τοὺς
to him the-same-things saying that ready he-was the(-men)
ἐργαζομένους τὴν γῆν ἐᾶν καὶ μὴ ἀδικεῖν, εἰ
working the land to-let-alone and not to-wrong(-them) if
καὶ ἐκεῖνος βούλοιτο ἐᾶν ἐργάζεσθαι τοὺς τῶν πρὸς
also he were-willing to-let to-work the of-the(-men) to
ἑαυτὸν ἀφεστηκότων ἐργάτας.
himself having-revolted workers

25 καίτοι, ἔφη, σὺ μὲν ἢν καὶ δύνῃ κωλύειν, ὀλίγους
and-yet he-said you indeed if even you-are-able to-prevent few
τινὰς κωλύσεις· ὀλίγη γάρ ἐστι χώρα ἡ τῶν πρὸς
some you-will-prevent small for is country the of-the(-men) to

ἐμὲ ἀφεστηκότων· ἐγὼ δὲ πολλὴν ἄν σοι χώραν ἐᾠην
me having-revolted I but much — to-you country would-allow
ἐνεργὸν εἶναι. εἰς δὲ τὴν τοῦ καρποῦ κομιδήν, ἐὰν μὲν
worked to-be for and the of-the crop gathering if indeed
πόλεμος ᾖ, ὁ ἐπικρατῶν οἶμαι καρπώσεται· ἐὰν δὲ
war be the(-one) prevailing I-think will-reap(-it) if but
εἰρήνη, δῆλον, ἔφη, ὅτι σύ. ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἢ τῶν ἐμῶν
peace clear he-said that you if however anyone either of-the mine
ὅπλα ἀνταίρηται σοὶ ἢ τῶν σῶν ἐμοί, τούτους,
arms raises against-you or of-the yours against-me these
ἔφη, ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἑκάτεροι ἀμυνοίμεθα.
he-said as — we-can each may-we-defend-ourselves-against
ταῦτα ἐπιστείλας τῷ κήρυκι ἔπεμψεν αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ 26
these(-things) having-enjoined on-the herald he-sent him the and
Ἀσσύριοι ὡς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, πάντα ἐποίουν πείθοντες
Assyrians when they-heard these(-things) everything did persuading
τὸν βασιλέα συγχωρῆσαι ταῦτα καὶ ὅτι μικρότατον
the king to-agree-to these(-things) and as smallest
τοῦ πολέμου λιπεῖν.
of-the war to-leave
καὶ ὁ Ἀσσύριος μέντοι εἴτε ὑπὸ τῶν ὁμοφύλων 27
and the Assyrian however whether by the kinsmen
πεισθεὶς εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτω βουληθεὶς συνήνεσε
having-been-persuaded or also himself so having-wished agreed-to
ταῦτα· καὶ ἐγένοντο συνθῆκαι τοῖς μὲν ἐργαζομένοις
these(-things) and there-were agreements for-the indeed working
εἰρήνην εἶναι, τοῖς δ' ὁπλοφόροις πόλεμον.
peace to-be for-the and arms-bearing war
ταῦτα μὲν δὴ διεπέπρακτο περὶ τῶν ἐργατῶν ὁ 28
these(-things) indeed then had-been-arranged about the workers —
Κῦρος· τὰς μέντοι νομὰς τῶν κτηνῶν τοὺς μὲν ἑαυτοῦ
Cyrus the however pastures of-the cattle the indeed of-himself

φίλους ἐκέλευσε καταθέσθαι, εἰ βούλοιντο, ἐν τῇ ἑαυτῶν
friends he-bade to-place if they-wished in the their-own
ἐπικρατείᾳ· τὴν δὲ τῶν πολεμίων λείαν ἦγον ὁπόθεν
domain the and of-the enemies booty they-drove from-wherever
δύναιντο, ὅπως εἴη ἡ στρατεία ἡδίων τοῖς συμμάχοις.
they-could so-that might-be the campaign pleasanter for-the allies
οἱ μὲν γὰρ κίνδυνοι οἱ αὐτοὶ καὶ ἄνευ τοῦ λαμβάνειν
the indeed for dangers the same even without the to-take
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἡ δ' ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων τροφὴ κουφοτέραν
the necessaries the and from the enemies food lighter
τὴν στρατείαν ἐδόκει παρέχειν.
the campaign seemed to-make

29 Ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεσκευάζετο ἤδη ὁ Κῦρος ὡς ἀπιών, παρῆν ὁ
When and was-preparing already — Cyrus as going-away was-present —
Γαδάτας ἄλλα τε δῶρα πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα φέρων ὡς ἂν
Gadatas other both gifts many and of-every-kind bringing as —
ἐξ οἴκου μεγάλου, καὶ ἵππους δὲ ἦγε πολλοὺς ἀφελόμενος
from house great and horses and he-led many having-taken-away
τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέων οἷς ἠπιστήκει διὰ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν.
from-the his-own horsemen whom he-had-distrusted because-of the plot
30 ὡς δ' ἐπλησίασεν, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ὦ Κῦρε, νῦν μέν σοι
when and he-came-near he-spoke as-follows O Cyrus now indeed to-you
ἐγὼ ταῦτα δίδωμι ἐν τῷ παρόντι, καὶ χρῶ αὐτοῖς, ἐὰν
I these(-things) give in the present and use them if
δέῃ τι· νόμιζε δ', ἔφη, καὶ τἆλλα πάντα τἀμὰ σὰ
there-be-need anything consider and he-said also the-other all my-things yours
εἶναι. οὔτε γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτ' ἔσται ποτὲ ὅτῳ ἐγὼ ἀπ' ἐμοῦ
to-be neither for there-is nor there-will-be ever to-whom I from me
φύντι καταλείψω τὸν ἐμὸν οἶκον· ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, σὺν ἐμοὶ
born shall-leave the my house but necessity(-is) he-said with me
τελευτῶντι πᾶν ἀποσβῆναι τὸ ἡμέτερον γένος καὶ ὄνομα.
dying all to-be-quenched the our race and name

καὶ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὄμνυμί σοι τοὺς θεούς, οἳ 31
and these(-things) he-said O Cyrus I-swear to-you the gods who
καὶ ὁρῶσι πάντα καὶ ἀκούουσι πάντα, οὔτε ἄδικον οὔτε
both see all-things and hear all-things neither unjust nor
αἰσχρὸν οὐδὲν οὔτ' εἰπὼν οὔτε ποιήσας ἔπαθον. καὶ
shameful anything either having-said or having-done I-suffered and
ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων κατεδάκρυσε τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τύχην
at-the-same-time these(-things) saying he-wept-over the his-own fortune
καὶ οὐκέτι ἐδυνάσθη πλείω εἰπεῖν.
and no-longer was-able more to-say
Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ μὲν πάθους ᾤκτιρεν αὐτόν, 32
And — Cyrus having-heard for-the indeed suffering pitied him
ἔλεξε δὲ ὧδε. Ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν ἵππους δέχομαι, ἔφη· σέ τε
he-spoke and thus But the indeed horses I-accept he-said you both
γὰρ ὠφελήσω εὐνουστέροις δοὺς αὐτοὺς ἢ οἳ νῦν
for I-shall-benefit to-better-disposed(-men) having-given them than who now
σοι εἶχον, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἐγώ τε οὖ δὴ πάλαι ἐπιθυμῶ, τὸ
to-you had(-them) as it-seems I and what indeed long-ago I-desire the
Περσῶν ἱππικὸν θᾶττον ἐκπληρώσω εἰς τοὺς μυρίους ἱππεῖς·
of-Persians cavalry sooner I-shall-fill-up to the ten-thousand horsemen
τὰ δ' ἄλλα χρήματα σὺ ἀπαγαγὼν φύλαττε, ἔστ' ἂν ἐμὲ
the and other property you having-taken-away guard until — me
ἴδῃς ἔχοντα ὥστε σοῦ μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι ἀντιδωρούμενον· εἰ δὲ
you-see having so-as than-you not to-be-outdone giving-gifts-in-return if but
πλείω μοι δοὺς ἀπίοις ἢ λαμβάνοις παρ' ἐμοῦ,
more to-me having-given you-should-go-away than you-receive from me
μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἂν δυναίμην μὴ αἰσχύνεσθαι.
no-by the gods not I-know how — I-could not to-be-ashamed

33 πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μέν, ἔφη,
to these(-things) — Gadatas said But these(-things) indeed he-said
πιστεύω σοι· ὁρῶ γάρ σου τὸν τρόπον· φυλάττειν μέντοι
I-trust you I-see for your the character to-guard however
ὅρα εἰ ἐπιτήδειός εἰμι.
consider if suitable I-am

34 ἕως μὲν γὰρ φίλοι ἦμεν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ, καλλίστη δὴ
while indeed for friends we-were to-the Assyrian finest indeed
ἐδόκει εἶναι ἡ τοῦ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς κτῆσις· τῆς γὰρ μεγίστης
seemed to-be the of-the my father possession of-the for greatest
πόλεως Βαβυλῶνος ἐγγὺς οὖσα ὅσα μὲν ὠφελεῖσθαι
city Babylon near being as-much-as indeed to-be-benefited
ἔστιν ἀπὸ μεγάλης πόλεως, ταῦτα ἀπελαύομεν, ὅσα
is-possible from a-great city these(-things) we-enjoyed as-much-as
δὲ ἐνοχλεῖσθαι, οἴκαδε δεῦρ' ἀπιόντες τούτων ἐκποδὼν
but to-be-troubled home bither going-away from-these out-of-the-way
ἦμεν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ ἐχθροί ἐσμεν, δῆλον ὅτι ἐπειδὰν σὺ
we-were now and since enemies we-are clear that when you
ἀπέλθῃς, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπιβουλευσόμεθα καὶ ὁ οἶκος ὅλος,
go-away also ourselves we-shall-be-plotted-against and the house whole
καὶ οἶμαι λυπηρῶς βιωσόμεθα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς καὶ πλησίον
and I-think grievously we-shall-live the enemies both near
ἔχοντες καὶ κρείττους ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ὁρῶντες.
having and stronger than-us ourselves seeing

35 τάχ' οὖν εἴποι τις ἄν· καὶ τί δῆτα οὐχ οὕτως
perhaps then would-say someone — and why then not so
ἐνενοοῦ πρὶν ἀποστῆναι; ὅτι, ὦ Κῦρε, ἡ ψυχή μου
did-you-think before to-revolt because O Cyrus the soul my
διὰ τὸ ὑβρίσθαι καὶ ὀργίζεσθαι οὐ τὸ ἀσφαλέστατον
through the to-have-been-outraged and to-be-angry not the safest
σκοποῦσα διῆγεν, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ τοῦτο κυοῦσα, ἆρά ποτ'
considering lived but always this pregnant-with whether ever

ἔσται ἀποτείσασθαι τὸν καὶ θεοῖς ἐχθρὸν καὶ
it-will-be-possible to-take-vengeance-on the(-one) both to-gods hateful and
ἀνθρώποις, ὃς διατελεῖ μισῶν, οὐκ ἄν τίς τι αὐτὸν
to-men who continues hating not if anyone in-anything him
ἀδικῇ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐάν τινα ὑποπτεύσῃ βελτίονα ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι.
wrongs but if anyone he-suspects better than-himself to-be
τοιγαροῦν οἶμαι αὐτὸς πονηρὸς ὢν πᾶσι πονηροτέροις 36
therefore I-think himself wicked being with-all more-wicked
ἑαυτοῦ συμμάχοις χρήσεται. ἐὰν δέ τις ἄρα καὶ
than-himself allies he-will-deal if but anyone after-all also
βελτίων αὐτοῦ φανῇ, θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδέν σε
better than-him appears take-heart he-said O Cyrus not-at-all you
δεήσει τῷ ἀγαθῷ ἀνδρὶ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖνος
it-will-be-necessary with-the good man to-fight but he
τοῦτο ἀρκέσει μηχανώμενος, ἕως ἂν ἕλῃ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ
this will-suffice contriving until — he-takes the than-himself
βελτίονα. τοῦ μέντοι ἐμὲ ἀνιᾶν καὶ σὺν πονηροῖς ῥᾳδίως
better(-man) over-the however me to-grieve even with wicked(-men) easily
οἶμαι κρατῶν ἔσται.
I-think master he-will-be
Ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα τῷ Κύρῳ ἔδοξεν ἄξια ἐπιμελείας λέγειν· 37
Having-heard these(-things) — to-Cyrus it-seemed worthy of-attention to-say
καὶ εὐθὺς εἶπε, Τί οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα, οὐχὶ τὰ μὲν τείχη
and at-once he-said Why then he-said O Gadatas not the indeed walls
φυλακῇ ἐχυρὰ ἐποιήσαμεν, ὅπως ἄν σοι σῷα ᾖ
with-a-garrison strong did-we-make so-that — for-you safe they-may-be
χρῆσθαι ἀσφαλῶς, ὁπόταν εἰς αὐτὰ ἴῃς· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν ἡμῖν
to-use safely whenever into them you-go yourself and with us
στρατεύῃ, ἵνα ἦν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ νῦν σὺν ἡμῖν ὦσιν, οὗτος
you-campaign so-that if the gods as now with us be this(-man)
σὲ φοβῆται, ἀλλὰ μὴ σὺ τοῦτον; ὅ τι δὲ ἡδύ σοι
you may-fear but not you this(-man) what ever and pleasant to-you

ὁρᾶν τῶν σῶν ἢ ὅτῳ συνὼν χαίρεις, ἔχων σὺν σαυτῷ
to-see of-the yours or with-whom being-with you-rejoice having with yourself
πορεύου. καὶ σύ τ᾽ ἂν ἐμοί, ὥς γ᾽ ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, πάνυ
march and you both — to-me as at-least to-me seems very
χρήσιμος εἴης, ἐγώ τε σοὶ ὅσα ἂν δύνωμαι πειράσομαι.
useful would-be I and to-you as-much-as — I-can I-shall-try
38 ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Γαδάτας ἀνέπνευσέ τε καὶ εἶπεν,
having-heard these(-things) — Gadatas breathed-again both and said
Ἆρ᾽ οὖν, ἔφη, δυναίμην ἂν συσκευασάμενος φθάσαι πρίν
So then he-said could-I — having-packed-up to-arrive-first before
σε ἐξιέναι; βούλομαι γάρ τοι, ἔφη, καὶ τὴν μητέρα ἄγειν
you to-go-out I-wish for surely he-said also the mother to-bring
μετ᾽ ἐμαυτοῦ. Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽ ἔφη, φθάσεις μέντοι. ἐγὼ
with myself Yes by Zeus he-said you-will-arrive-first indeed I
γὰρ ἐπισχήσω ἕως ἂν φῇς καλῶς ἔχειν.
for shall-wait until — you-say well to-be
39 οὕτω δὴ ὁ Γαδάτας ἀπελθὼν φύλαξι μὲν τὰ τείχη
so indeed — Gadatas having-gone-away with-guards indeed the walls
σὺν Κύρῳ ὠχυρώσατο, συνεσκευάσατο δὲ πάντα ὁπόσοις
with Cyrus fortified packed-up and all with-which
ἂν οἶκος μέγας καλῶς οἰκοῖτο. ἤγετο δὲ καὶ τῶν
— a-house great finely might-be-managed he-took and also of-the
ἑαυτοῦ τῶν τε πιστῶν οἷς ἥδετο καὶ ὧν ἠπίστει
his-own the both trusty(-men) in-whom he-delighted and whom he-distrusted
πολλούς, ἀναγκάσας τοὺς μὲν καὶ γυναῖκας ἄγειν,
many having-compelled the(-ones) indeed also wives to-bring
τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀδελφούς, τοὺς δὲ καὶ παῖδας, ὡς
the(-ones) and also brothers the(-ones) and also children so-that
δεδεμένους τούτοις κατέχοι αὐτούς.
bound by-these he-might-hold-fast them

καὶ τὸν μὲν Γαδάταν εὐθὺς ὁ Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν 40
and — indeed Gadatas at-once — Cyrus among the(-men) about him
ᾔει ἔχων καὶ ὁδῶν φραστῆρα καὶ ὑδάτων καὶ χιλοῦ καὶ
went having and of-roads as-informant and of-waters and of-fodder and
σίτου, ὡς εἴη ἐν ἀφθονωτάτοις στρατοπεδεύεσθαι.
of-grain so-that it-might-be-possible in most-abundant(-places) to-encamp
Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος καθεώρα τὴν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων πόλιν 41
When and marching he-caught-sight-of the of-the Babylonians city
καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἡ ὁδὸς ἣν ᾔει παρ᾽ αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος
and it-seemed to-him the road which he-was-going along very the wall
φέρειν, καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν καὶ τὸν Γαδάταν ἠρώτα εἰ
to-lead having-called — Gobryas and — Gadatas he-asked if
εἴη ἄλλη ὁδός, ὥστε μὴ πάνυ ἐγγὺς τοῦ τείχους ἄγειν.
there-were another road so-as not very near the wall to-lead
καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν, Εἰσὶ μέν, ὦ δέσποτα, καὶ πολλαὶ 42
and — Gobryas said There-are indeed O master even many
ὁδοί· ἀλλ᾽ ἔγωγ᾽, ἔφη, ὤμην καὶ βούλεσθαι ἄν σε νῦν ὅτι
roads but I-at-least he-said thought also to-wish — you now as
ἐγγυτάτω τῆς πόλεως ἄγειν, ἵνα καὶ ἐπιδείξαις αὐτῷ ὅτι τὸ
nearest the city to-lead so-that also you-might-show to-him that the
στράτευμά σου ἤδη πολύ τέ ἐστι καὶ καλόν· ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὅτε
army your now large both is and fine since also when
ἔλαττον εἶχες προσῆλθές τε πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἐθεᾶτο
smaller you-had you-approached both toward very the wall and he-watched
ἡμᾶς οὐ πολλοὺς ὄντας· νῦν δὲ εἰ καὶ παρεσκευασμένος
us not many being now and if even prepared
τί ἐστιν, ὥσπερ πρὸς σὲ εἶπεν ὅτι παρασκευάζοιτο ὡς
somewhat he-is as to you he-said that he-was-preparing as
μαχούμενός σοι, οἶδ᾽ ὅτι ἰδόντι αὐτῷ τὴν σὴν δύναμιν
going-to-fight you I-know that having-seen to-him the your power
πάλιν ἀπαρασκευαστότατα τὰ ἑαυτοῦ φανεῖται.
again most-unprepared the(-things) of-himself will-appear

43 Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπε, Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Γωβρύα,
And — Cyrus to these(-things) said You-seem to-me O Gobryas
θαυμάζειν ὅτι ἐν ᾧ μὲν χρόνῳ πολὺ μείονα ἔχων
to-wonder that in which indeed time much smaller having
στρατιὰν ἦλθον, πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος προσῆγον· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ
an-army I-came toward very the wall I-led-up now but since
πλείονα δύναμιν ἔχω, οὐκ ἐθέλω ὑπ' αὐτὰ τὰ τείχη ἄγειν.
greater force I-have not I-am-willing under very the walls to-lead
44 ἀλλὰ μὴ θαύμαζε· οὐ γὰρ τὸ αὐτό ἐστι προσάγειν καὶ
but not wonder not for the same it-is to-lead-toward and
παράγειν. προσάγουσι μὲν γὰρ πάντες οὕτω ταξάμενοι ὡς
to-lead-past lead-toward indeed for all so having-drawn-up as
ἂν ἄριστοι εἶεν μάχεσθαι, καὶ ἀπάγουσι δὲ οἱ σώφρονες
— best they-may-be to-fight and lead-away but the prudent
ᾗ ἂν ἀσφαλέστατα, οὐχ ᾗ ἂν τάχιστα ἀπέλθοιεν.
where — most-safely not where — most-quickly they-may-go-away
45 παριέναι δὲ ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν ἐκτεταμέναις μὲν ταῖς ἁμάξαις,
to-pass-by and necessity is stretched-out indeed with-the wagons
ἀνειρμένοις δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις σκευοφόροις ἐπὶ πολύ·
strung-out and also the other baggage-carriers over long-way
ταῦτα δὲ πάντα δεῖ προκεκαλύφθαι τοῖς ὁπλοφόροις
these(-things) and all must to-have-been-screened by-the arms-bearers
καὶ μηδαμῇ τοῖς πολεμίοις γυμνὰ ὅπλων τὰ σκευοφόρα
and in-no-way to-the enemies bare of-arms the baggage-carriers
φαίνεσθαι.
to-appear
46 ἀνάγκη οὖν οὕτω πορευομένων ἐπὶ λεπτὸν καὶ ἀσθενὲς
necessity then so marching on thin and weak
τὸ μάχιμον τετάχθαι· εἰ οὖν βούλοιντο ἁθρόοι ἐκ τοῦ
the fighting(-part) to-be-drawn-up if then they-wished in-a-body from the

τείχους προσπεσεῖν πῃ, ὅπῃ προσμείξαιεν, πολὺ ἂν
wall to-fall-upon(-us) somewhere wherever they-engaged much —
ἐρρωμενέστεροι συμμιγνύοιεν τῶν παριόντων·
stronger they-would-engage than-the(-men) passing-by
καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐπὶ μακρὸν πορευομένοις μακραὶ καὶ αἱ 47
and for-the indeed over long(-distance) marching long also the
ἐπιβοήθειαι, τοῖς δ' ἐκ τοῦ τείχους βραχὺ πρὸς τὸ
reinforcements for-the and from the wall short to the
ἐγγὺς καὶ προσδραμεῖν καὶ πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν.
near(-point) both to-run-up and back to-go-away
ἦν δὲ μὴ μεῖον ἀπέχοντες παρίωμεν ἢ ἐφ' ὅσον καὶ 48
if but not less being-distant we-pass than over as-much-as also
νῦν ἐκτεταμένοι πορευόμεθα, τὸ μὲν πλῆθος κατόψονται
now stretched-out we-march the indeed number they-will-see
ἡμῶν· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν παρυφασμένων ὅπλων πᾶς ὄχλος
of-us through but the woven-in arms all crowd
δεινὸς φαίνεται.
terrible appears
ἂν δ' οὖν τῷ ὄντι ἐπεξίωσί πῃ, ἐκ πολλοῦ προορῶντες 49
if and then in-the reality they-come-out somewhere from far seeing-in-advance
αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἂν ἀπαράσκευοι λαμβανοίμεθα. μᾶλλον δέ, ὦ
them not — unprepared we-would-be-caught rather but O
ἄνδρες, ἔφη, οὐδ' ἐπιχειρήσουσιν, ὁπόταν πρόσω δέῃ
men he-said not-even they-will-attempt whenever far there-be-need
ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἀπιέναι, ἂν μὴ τῷ ὅλῳ ὑπολάβωσι
from the wall to-go-away if not in-the whole they-suppose
τοῦ παντὸς κρείττους εἶναι· φοβερὰ γὰρ ἡ ἀποχώρησις.
than-the whole stronger to-be fearful for the retreat
ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' εἶπεν, ἔδοξέ τε ὀρθῶς τοῖς παροῦσι λέγειν 50
when and these(-things) he-said it-seemed both rightly to-the present to-speak
καὶ ἦγεν ὁ Γωβρύας ὥσπερ ἐκέλευσε. παραμειβομένου
and led — Gobryas as he-ordered passing-by

δὲ τὴν πόλιν τοῦ στρατεύματος αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον
and the city the army always the part-left-behind
ἰσχυρότερον ποιούμενος ἀπεχώρει.
stronger making he-withdrew

51 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος οὕτως ἐν ταῖς γιγνομέναις ἡμέραις
When and marching so in the occurring days
ἀφικνεῖται εἰς τὰ μεθόρια τῶν Σύρων καὶ Μήδων,
he-arrives at the borders of-the Syrians and Medes
ἔνθενπερ ὡρμᾶτο, ἐνταῦθα δὴ τρία ὄντα τῶν Σύρων
from-where he-had-set-out there indeed three being of-the Syrians
φρούρια, ἓν μὲν αὐτὸς τὸ ἀσθενέστατον βίᾳ προσβαλὼν
forts one indeed himself the weakest by-force having-attacked
ἔλαβε, τὼ δὲ δύο φοβῶν μὲν Κῦρος, πείθων δὲ Γαδάτας
took the and two frightening indeed Cyrus persuading and Gadatas
ἀνέπεισε παραδοῦναι τοὺς φυλάττοντας.
persuaded to-hand-over the(-men) guarding(-them)

V · CYAXARES RECONCILED

Cyrus invites Cyaxares to the camp to decide about the captured forts. Cyaxares comes with a small retinue, and seeing Cyrus followed by the Medes and a great army, feels himself shamed and weeps. Cyrus takes him aside and asks, point by point, what wrong he has done him; Cyaxares answers that every benefit has only made him look smaller, like a man whose dogs, guards, or wife are won from him by kindness. Cyrus asks him to stop blaming him and they embrace; the Medes bring Cyaxares gifts and he relents. Cyrus declines to dine with him, calls a council for the morning, and charges his friends to persuade the allies to stay.

1 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα διεπέπρακτο, πέμπει πρὸς Κυαξάρην
When and these(-things) had-been-accomplished he-sends to Cyaxares
καὶ ἐπέστειλεν αὐτῷ ἥκειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
and sent-word to-him to-come to the camp

ὅπως περὶ τῶν φρουρίων ὧν εἰλήφεσαν βουλεύσαιντο
so-that about the forts which they-had-taken they-might-deliberate
ὅ τι χρήσαιντο, καὶ ὅπως θεασάμενος τὸ
what ever they-should-do-with(-them) and so-that having-viewed the
στράτευμα καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων σύμβουλος γίγνοιτο
army also about the other(-things) adviser he-might-become
ὅ τι δοκοίη ἐκ τούτου πράττειν· ἐὰν δὲ
what ever seemed(-best) from this to-do if and
κελεύῃ, εἰπέ, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγὼ ἂν ὡς ἐκεῖνον ἰοίην
he-bids say he-said that I — to him would-come
συστρατοπεδευσόμενος.
going-to-encamp-with(-him)

ὁ μὲν δὴ ἄγγελος ᾤχετο ταῦτ᾽ ἀπαγγελῶν. ὁ δὲ 2
the indeed then messenger went these(-things) going-to-report — and
Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ ἐκέλευσε τὴν τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου σκηνήν,
Cyrus in this ordered the of-the Assyrian tent
ἣν Κυαξάρῃ οἱ Μῆδοι ἐξεῖλον, ταύτην κατασκευάσαι
which for-Cyaxares the Medes had-chosen-out this to-furnish
ὡς βέλτιστα τῇ τε ἄλλῃ κατασκευῇ ἣν εἶχον καὶ
as best with-the both other furniture which they-had and
τῷ γυναῖκα εἰσαγαγεῖν εἰς τὸν γυναικῶνα τῆς σκηνῆς
with-the a-woman to-bring-in into the women's-quarters of-the tent
καὶ σὺν ταύτῃ τὰς μουσουργούς, αἵπερ ἐξῃρημέναι ἦσαν
and with her the music-girls who chosen-out were
Κυαξάρῃ.
for-Cyaxares

οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ᾽ ἔπραττον. ὁ δὲ πεμφθεὶς 3
they indeed then these(-things) did the(-man) and sent
πρὸς τὸν Κυαξάρην ἐπεὶ ἔλεξε τὰ ἐντεταλμένα,
to — Cyaxares when he-spoke the(-things) enjoined
ἀκούσας αὐτοῦ ὁ Κυαξάρης ἔγνω βέλτιον εἶναι
having-heard him — Cyaxares judged better to-be

τὸ στράτευμα μένειν ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις. καὶ
the army to-remain in the borders and
γὰρ οἱ Πέρσαι οὓς μετεπέμψατο ὁ Κῦρος
for the Persians whom sent-for — Cyrus
ἦκον· ἦσαν δὲ μυριάδες τέτταρες τοξοτῶν καὶ
had-come were and ten-thousands four of-archers and
πελταστῶν.
of-peltasts

4 ὁρῶν οὖν καὶ τούτους σινομένους πολλὰ τὴν Μηδικήν,
seeing then also these damaging much the Median(-land)
τούτων δὴ ἐδόκει ἥδιον ἀπαλλαγῆναι μᾶλλον
of-these indeed it-seemed more-pleasant to-be-rid rather
ἢ ἄλλον ὄχλον εἰσδέξασθαι. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἐκ
than another crowd to-take-in the(-man) indeed then from
Περσῶν ἄγων τὸ στράτευμα ἐρόμενος τὸν Κυαξάρην
Persians leading the army having-asked — Cyaxares
κατὰ τὴν τοῦ Κύρου ἐπιστολὴν εἴ τι δέοιτο
according-to the — of-Cyrus letter if anything he-needed
τοῦ στρατοῦ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἔφη δεῖσθαι, αὐθημερόν, ἐπεὶ
of-the army when not he-said to-need the-same-day when
ἤκουσε παρόντα Κῦρον, ᾤχετο πρὸς αὐτὸν ἄγων τὸ
he-heard present Cyrus went to him leading the
στράτευμα.
army

5 Ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ἐπορεύετο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ σὺν τοῖς
— and Cyaxares marched on-the next-day with the
παραμείνασιν Μήδων ἱππεῦσιν· ὡς δ' ᾔσθετο ὁ
having-remained of-Medes horsemen when and perceived —
Κῦρος προσιόντα αὐτόν, λαβὼν τούς τε τῶν
Cyrus approaching him having-taken the both of-the
Περσῶν ἱππέας, πολλοὺς ἤδη ὄντας, καὶ τοὺς Μήδους
Persians horsemen many already being and the Medes

πάντας καὶ τοὺς Ἀρμενίους καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους καὶ
all and the Armenians and the Hyrcanians and
τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων τοὺς εὐιπποτάτους τε καὶ
of-the other allies the best-horsed both and
εὐοπλοτάτους ἀπήντα, ἐπιδεικνὺς τῷ Κυαξάρῃ τὴν
best-armed went-to-meet(-him) displaying — to-Cyaxares the
δύναμιν.
force

ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ἐπεὶ εἶδε σὺν μὲν τῷ Κύρῳ 6
— and Cyaxares when he-saw with indeed — Cyrus
πολλούς τε καὶ καλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἑπομένους, σὺν
many both and fine and good following with
αὐτῷ δὲ ὀλίγην τε καὶ ὀλίγου ἀξίαν θεραπείαν,
himself but small both and of-small worth retinue
ἄτιμόν τι αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι καὶ ἄχος αὐτὸν
dishonorable something to-him it-seemed to-be and grief him
ἔλαβεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καταβὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὁ Κῦρος
seized when and having-got-down from the horse — Cyrus
προσῆλθεν ὡς φιλήσων αὐτὸν κατὰ νόμον, ὁ
came-up as going-to-kiss him according-to custom —
Κυαξάρης κατέβη μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ἀπεστράφη
Cyaxares got-down indeed from the horse turned-away
δέ· καὶ ἐφίλησε μὲν οὔ, δακρύων δὲ φανερὸς
but and kissed(-him) indeed not weeping and visible
ἦν.
he-was

ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους 7
from this indeed — Cyrus the indeed others
πάντας ἀποστάντας ἐκέλευσεν ἀναπαύεσθαι· αὐτὸς
all having-stood-aside ordered to-rest himself
δὲ λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς τῆς Κυαξάρου καὶ
and having-taken the right-hand the of-Cyaxares and

ἀπαγαγὼν αὐτὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἔξω ὑπὸ φοινικάς τινας,
having-led him the road out-of under palms some
τῶν τε Μηδικῶν πίλων ὑποβαλεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ
of-the both Median rugs to-spread-under ordered for-him
καὶ καθίσας αὐτὸν καὶ παρακαθισάμενος εἶπεν
and having-seated him and having-sat-down-beside(-him) said
ὧδε.
thus

8 Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ θεῖε, τί μοι
Tell me he-said by the gods O uncle why with-me
ὀργίζῃ καὶ τί χαλεπὸν ὁρῶν οὕτω χαλεπῶς
are-you-angry and what hard seeing so hard
φέρεις; ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Κυαξάρης ἀπεκρίνατο, Ὅτι,
do-you-bear(-it) then indeed — Cyaxares answered Because
ὦ Κῦρε, δοκῶν γε δὴ ἐφ' ὅσον ἀνθρώπων
O Cyrus seeming at-least indeed over as-much-as of-men
μνήμη ἐφικνεῖται καὶ τῶν πάλαι προγόνων καὶ
memory reaches both of-the long-ago ancestors and
πατρὸς βασιλέως πεφυκέναι καὶ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς
of-father of-king to-have-been-born and myself king
νομιζόμενος εἶναι, ἐμαυτὸν μὲν ὁρῶ οὕτω ταπεινῶς
being-thought to-be myself indeed I-see so humbly
καὶ ἀναξίως ἐλαύνοντα, σὲ δὲ τῇ ἐμῇ θεραπείᾳ
and unworthily riding you and with-the my retinue
καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ δυνάμει μέγαν τε καὶ μεγαλοπρεπῆ
and with-the other power great both and magnificent
παρόντα.
present

9 καὶ ταῦτα χαλεπὸν μὲν οἶμαι καὶ ὑπὸ πολεμίων παθεῖν,
and these(-things) hard indeed I-think even from enemies to-suffer
πολὺ δ', ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπώτερον ὑφ' ὧν ἥκιστα ἐχρῆν
much and O Zeus harder from whom least it-was-fitting

ταῦτα πεπονθέναι. ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ δοκῶ δεκάκις ἂν κατὰ
these(-things) to-have-suffered I indeed for think ten-times — beneath
γῆς καταδῦναι ἥδιον ἢ ὀφθῆναι οὕτω ταπεινὸς καὶ
earth to-sink more-gladly than to-be-seen so humble and
ἰδεῖν τοὺς ἐμοὺς ἐμοῦ ἀμελήσαντας καὶ ἐπεγγελῶντας
to-see the my(-men) of-me having-neglected and laughing-at
ἐμοί. οὐ γὰρ ἀγνοῶ τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ σύ μου
me not for I-am-unaware-of this he-said that not you than-me
μόνον μείζων εἶ, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ δοῦλοι ἰσχυρότεροι
only greater are but even the my slaves stronger
ἐμοῦ ὑπαντιάζουσί μοι καὶ κατεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶν ὥστε
than-me come-to-meet me and equipped are so-as
δύνασθαι ποιῆσαι μᾶλλον ἐμὲ κακῶς ἢ παθεῖν ὑπ'
to-be-able to-treat rather me badly than to-suffer from
ἐμοῦ.
me
καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον 10
and at-the-same-time these(-things) saying much still more
ἐκρατεῖτο ὑπὸ τῶν δακρύων, ὥστε καὶ τὸν Κῦρον
he-was-overcome by the tears so-that also — Cyrus
ἐπεσπάσατο ἐμπλησθῆναι δακρύων τὰ ὄμματα.
he-drew-after(-him) to-be-filled with-tears the eyes
ἐπισχὼν δὲ μικρὸν ἔλεξε τοιάδε ὁ Κῦρος. Ἀλλὰ
having-paused and a-little spoke as-follows — Cyrus But
ταῦτα μέν, ὦ Κυαξάρη, οὔτε λέγεις ἀληθῆ
these(-things) indeed O Cyaxares neither do-you-say true(-things)
οὔτε ὀρθῶς γιγνώσκεις, εἰ οἴει τῇ ἐμῇ παρουσίᾳ
nor rightly judge if you-think by-the my presence
Μήδους κατεσκευάσθαι ὥστε ἱκανοὺς εἶναι σὲ κακῶς
Medes to-have-been-equipped so-as able to-be you badly
ποιεῖν.
to-treat

11 τὸ μέντοι σε θυμοῦσθαι καὶ φοβεῖσθαι οὐ θαυμάζω· εἰ
the however you to-be-angry and to-fear not I-wonder if
μέντοι γε δικαίως ἢ ἀδίκως αὐτοῖς χαλεπαίνεις,
however at-least justly or unjustly with-them you-are-angry
παρήσω τοῦτο· οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι βαρέως ἂν
I-shall-pass-over this I-know for that heavily —
φέροις ἀκούων ἐμοῦ ἀπολογουμένου ὑπὲρ
you-would-bear(-it) hearing me defending on-behalf-of
αὐτῶν· τὸ μέντοι ἄνδρα ἄρχοντα πᾶσιν ἅμα
them the however a-man ruling with-all at-once
χαλεπαίνειν τοῖς ἀρχομένοις, τοῦτο ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ μέγα
to-be-angry the(-men) ruled this to-me seems great
ἁμάρτημα εἶναι. ἀνάγκη γὰρ διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς
error to-be necessity(-is) for because-of the many
μὲν φοβεῖν πολλοὺς ἐχθροὺς ποιεῖσθαι, διὰ δὲ
indeed to-frighten many enemies to-make because-of and
τὸ πᾶσιν ἅμα χαλεπαίνειν πᾶσιν αὐτοῖς ὁμόνοιαν
the with-all at-once to-be-angry to-all them concord
ἐμβάλλειν.
to-instill

12 ὧν ἕνεκα, εὖ ἴσθι, ἐγὼ οὐκ ἀπέπεμπον ἄνευ
of-which for-the-sake well know I not was-sending-off without
ἐμαυτοῦ τούτους, φοβούμενος μή τι γένοιτο
myself these fearing lest anything happen
διὰ τὴν σὴν ὀργὴν ὅ τι πάντας ἡμᾶς
because-of the your anger what ever all us
λυπήσοι. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐμοῦ
would-grieve these(-things) indeed then with the gods I
παρόντος ἀσφαλῶς ἔχει σοι· τὸ μέντοι σε νομίζειν
being-present safely are for-you the however you to-think
ὑπ᾽ ἐμοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, τοῦτο ἐγὼ πάνυ χαλεπῶς
by me to-be-wronged this I very hard

φέρω, εἰ ἀσκῶν ὅσον δύναμαι τοὺς φίλους ὡς
bear if practicing as-much-as I-can the friends as
πλεῖστα ἀγαθὰ ποιεῖν ἔπειτα τἀναντία τούτου δοκῶ
most good to-do then the-opposite of-this I-seem
ἐξεργάζεσθαι.
to-accomplish

ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη, μὴ οὕτως εἰκῇ ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς 13
but for he-said not so at-random us ourselves
αἰτιώμεθα· ἀλλ', εἰ δυνατόν, σαφέστατα κατίδωμεν
let-us-blame but if possible most-clearly let-us-see
ποῖόν ἐστι τὸ παρ' ἐμοῦ ἀδίκημα. καὶ τὴν ἐν
what-sort is the from me wrong and the among
φίλοις δικαιοτάτην ὑπόθεσιν ἔχω ὑποτιθέναι· ἐὰν γάρ
friends most-just principle I-have to-propose if for
τί σε φανῶ κακὸν πεποιηκώς, ὁμολογῶ ἀδικεῖν·
in-anything you I-appear harm having-done I-admit to-do-wrong
ἐὰν μέντοι μηδὲν φαίνωμαι κακὸν πεποιηκὼς μηδὲ
if however nothing I-appear harm having-done nor
βουληθείς, οὐ καὶ σὺ αὖ ὁμολογήσεις μηδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ
having-wished not also you in-turn will-admit nothing by me
ἀδικεῖσθαι;
to-be-wronged

Ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη, ἔφη. Ἐὰν δὲ δὴ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πεπραχώς 14
But necessity(-is) he-said If and indeed also good-things having-done
σοι δῆλος ὦ καὶ προθυμούμενος πρᾶξαι ὡς ἐγὼ
to-you plain I-am and eager to-do as I
πλεῖστα ἐδυνάμην, οὐκ ἂν καὶ ἐπαίνου σοι
most could not — also of-praise from-you
ἄξιος εἴην μᾶλλον ἢ μέμψεως; Δίκαιον γοῦν,
worthy would-I-be rather than of-blame Just at-any-rate
ἔφη.
he-said

15 Ἄγε τοίυυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σκοπῶμεν τὰ ἐμοὶ
Come then said — Cyrus let-us-consider the(-things) by-me
πεπραγμένα πάντα καθ᾽ ἓν ἕκαστον· οὕτω γὰρ μάλιστα
done all by one each so for most
δῆλον ἔσται ὅ τι τε αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν ἐστι καὶ ὅ τι
plain it-will-be what ever both of-them good is and what ever
κακόν.
bad

16 ἀρξώμεθα δ᾽, ἔφη, ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς ἀρχῆς, εἰ καὶ σοὶ
let-us-begin and he-said from this the beginning if also to-you
ἀρκούντως δοκεῖ ἔχειν. σὺ γὰρ δήπου ἐπεὶ ᾔσθου
sufficiently it-seems to-be you for surely when you-perceived
πολλοὺς πολεμίους ἠθροισμένους, καὶ τούτους ἐπὶ
many enemies gathered and these against
σὲ καὶ τὴν σὴν χώραν ὁρμωμένους, εὐθὺς ἔπεμπες
you and the your country setting-out at-once you-sent
πρός τε τὸ Περσῶν κοινὸν συμμάχους αἰτούμενος
to both the of-Persians commonwealth allies asking
καὶ πρὸς ἐμὲ ἰδίᾳ δεόμενος πειρᾶσθαι αὐτὸν ἐμὲ
and to me privately begging to-try myself me
ἐλθεῖν ἡγούμενον, εἴ τινες Περσῶν ἴοιεν. οὐκοῦν
to-come leading if any of-Persians should-go therefore
ἐγὼ ἐπείσθην τε ταῦτα ὑπὸ σοῦ καὶ παρεγενόμην
I was-persuaded both these(-things) by you and came
ἄνδρας ἄγων σοι ὡς ἦν δυνατὸν πλείστους τε καὶ
men bringing to-you as was possible most both and
ἀρίστους;
best

17 Ἦλθες γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη. Ἐν τούτῳ τοίυυν, ἔφη, πρῶτόν
You-came for indeed he-said In this then he-said first
μοι εἰπὲ πότερον ἀδικίαν τινά μου πρὸς σὲ κατέγνως
me tell whether wrong some of-me toward you you-judged

ἢ μᾶλλον εὐεργεσίαν; Δῆλον, ἔφη ὁ Κυαξάρης, ὅτι ἔκ
or rather benefit Clear said — Cyaxares that from
γε τούτων εὐεργεσίαν.
at-least these benefit
Τί γάρ, ἔφη, ἐπεὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἦλθον καὶ 18
What for he-said when the enemies came and
διαγωνίζεσθαι ἔδει πρὸς αὐτούς, ἐν τούτῳ
to-contend (one)-should against them in this
κατενόησάς πού με ἢ πόνου ἀποστάντα ἤ τινος
did-you-observe anywhere me either from-toil having-stood-aside or any
κινδύνου φεισάμενον; Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δί', ἔφη, οὐ μὲν
danger having-spared Not by — Zeus he-said not indeed
δή.
then
Τί γάρ, ἐπεὶ τῆς νίκης γενομένης σὺν τοῖς 19
What for when the victory having-taken-place with the
θεοῖς ἡμετέρας καὶ ἀναχωρησάντων τῶν πολεμίων
gods ours and having-withdrawn the enemies
παρεκάλουν ἐγώ σε ὅπως κοινῇ μὲν αὐτοὺς
summoned I you that in-common indeed them
διώκοιμεν, κοινῇ δὲ τιμωροίμεθα, κοινῇ
we-might-pursue in-common and we-might-punish(-them) in-common
δὲ εἴ τι καλὸν κἀγαθὸν συμβαίνοι, τοῦτο
and if anything noble and-good should-result this
καρποίμεθα, ἐν τούτοις ἔχεις τινά μου πλεονεξίαν
we-might-reap in these have-you any of-me greed
κατηγορῆσαι;
to-accuse
ὁ μὲν δὴ Κυαξάρης πρὸς τοῦτο ἐσίγα· ὁ δὲ 20
— indeed then Cyaxares to this kept-silent — and
Κῦρος πάλιν ἔλεγεν ὧδε· Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ πρὸς τοῦτο
Cyrus again spoke thus But since to this

σιωπᾶν ἥδιόν σοι ἢ ἀποκρίνασθαι, τόδε γ',
to-keep-silent more-pleasant to-you than to-answer this at-least
ἔφη, εἰπὲ εἴ τι ἀδικεῖσθαι ἐνόμισας ὅτι ἐπεί
he-said tell if in-anything to-be-wronged you-thought because when
σοι οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι τὸ διώκειν, σὲ μὲν
to-you not safe it-seemed to-be the to-pursue you indeed
αὐτὸν ἀφῆκα τοῦ κινδύνου τούτου μετέχειν, ἱππέας
yourself I-released the danger this to-share horsemen
δὲ τῶν σῶν συμπέμψαι μοι ἐδεόμην σου· εἰ γὰρ καὶ
but of-the yours to-send-with me I-begged you if for even
τοῦτο αἰτῶν ἠδίκουν, ἄλλως τε καὶ προπαρεσχηκὼς
this asking I-did-wrong especially both and having-offered-beforehand
ἐμαυτόν σοι σύμμαχον, τοῦτ' αὖ παρὰ σοῦ, ἔφη,
myself to-you as-ally this in-turn from you he-said
ἐπιδεικνύσθω.
let-it-be-shown

21 ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο ἐσίγα ὁ Κυαξάρης,
when and in-turn also to this kept-silent — Cyaxares
Ἀλλ' εἰ μηδὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, βούλει ἀποκρίνασθαι, σὺ
But if not-even this he-said you-wish to-answer you
δὲ τοὐντεῦθεν λέγε εἴ τι αὖ ἠδίκουν ὅτι σοῦ
and the-next tell if in-anything again I-did-wrong because you
ἀποκριναμένου ἐμοὶ ὡς οὐκ ἂν βούλοιο, εὐθυμουμένους
having-answered me that not — you-would-wish cheerful
ὁρῶν Μήδους, τούτου παύσας αὐτοὺς ἀναγκάζειν
seeing Medes from-this having-stopped them to-compel(-them)
κινδυνεύσοντας ἰέναι, εἴ τι αὖ σοι δοκῶ τοῦτο
going-to-run-risk to-go if in-anything again to-you I-seem this
χαλεπὸν ποιῆσαι ὅτι ἀμελήσας τοῦ ὀργίζεσθαί σοι
hard to-have-done because having-neglected the to-be-angry with-you
ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἤτουν σε οὗ ἤδη οὔτε σοὶ
at these(-things) again I-asked you for-what I-knew neither to-you

μεῖον ὂν δοῦναι οὐδὲν οὔτε ῥᾷον Μήδοις ἐπιταχθῆναι·
less being to-give nothing nor easier for-Medes to-be-commanded
τὸν γὰρ βουλόμενον δήπου ἕπεσθαι ᾔτησά σε δοῦναί
the(-man) for wishing surely to-follow I-asked you to-give
μοι.
me
οὐκοῦν τούτου τυχὼν παρὰ σοῦ οὐδὲν ἧττον, εἰ 22
therefore this having-obtained from you nothing did-I-accomplish if
μὴ τούτους πείσαιμι. ἐλθὼν οὖν ἔπειθον αὐτοὺς καὶ
not these I-persuaded having-gone then I-persuaded them and
οὓς ἔπεισα τούτους ἔχων ἐπορευόμην σοῦ ἐπιτρέψαντος.
whom I-persuaded these having I-marched you having-permitted(-it)
εἰ δὲ τοῦτο αἰτίας ἄξιον νομίζεις, οὐδ' ὅ τι
if but this of-blame worthy you-think not-even what ever
ἂν διδῷς, ὡς ἔοικε, παρὰ σοῦ δέχεσθαι ἀναίτιόν
— you-give as it-seems from you to-receive blameless
ἐστιν.
is
οὐκοῦν ἐξωρμήσαμεν οὕτως· ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐξήλθομεν, 23
therefore we-set-out so when and we-came-out
τί ἡμῖν πεπραγμένον οὐ φανερόν ἐστιν; οὐ τὸ
what by-us done not manifest is not the
στρατόπεδον ἑάλωκε τῶν πολεμίων; οὐ τεθνᾶσι
camp has-been-taken of-the enemies not are-dead
πολλοὶ τῶν ἐπὶ σὲ ἐλθόντων; ἀλλὰ μὴν τῶν
many of-the(-men) against you having-come but indeed of-the
γε ζώντων ἐχθρῶν πολλοὶ μὲν ὅπλων ἐστέρηνται,
at-least living enemies many indeed of-arms have-been-deprived
πολλοὶ δὲ ἵππων· χρήματά γε μὴν τὰ τῶν
many and of-horses property at-least indeed the(-property) of-the(-men)
φερόντων καὶ ἀγόντων τὰ σὰ πρόσθεν νῦν ὁρᾷς
carrying-off and driving-off the yours before now you-see

τοὺς σοὺς φίλους καὶ ἄγοντας καὶ ἔχοντας, τὰ
the your friends both driving and having(-it) the(-part)
μὲν σοί, τὰ δ' αὖ τοῖς ὑπὸ τὴν σὴν
indeed for-you the(-part) and in-turn for-the(-people) under the your
ἀρχήν.
rule

24 τὸ δὲ πάντων μέγιστον καὶ κάλλιστον, τὴν μὲν σὴν
the and of-all greatest and finest the indeed your
χώραν αὐξανομένην ὁρᾷς, τὴν δὲ τῶν πολεμίων μειουμένην·
country increasing you-see the and of-the enemies diminishing
καὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων φρούρια ἐχόμενα, τὰ δὲ σὰ
and the indeed of-the enemies forts held the and yours
τὰ πρότερον εἰς τὴν Σύρων ἐπικράτειαν συντελοῦντα
the(-ones) formerly into the of-Syrians power contributing
νῦν τἀναντία σοὶ προσκεχωρηκότα· τούτων δὲ εἴ τι
now the-opposite to-you having-come-over of-these and if anything
κακόν σοι ἢ εἴ τι μὴ ἀγαθόν σοι μαθεῖν μὲν
bad for-you or if anything not good for-you to-learn indeed
ἔγωγε βούλεσθαι οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἂν εἴποιμι· ἀκοῦσαι
I-at-least to-wish not I-know how — I-could-say to-hear
μέντοι γε οὐδὲν κωλύει. ἀλλὰ λέγε ὅ τι γιγνώσκεις
however at-least nothing prevents but say what ever you-judge
περὶ αὐτῶν.
about them

25 ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος οὕτως εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο· ὁ
— indeed then Cyrus so having-spoken stopped —
δὲ Κυαξάρης ἔλεξε πρὸς ταῦτα τάδε. Ἀλλ', ὦ
and Cyaxares spoke to these(-things) as-follows But O
Κῦρε, ὡς μὲν ταῦτα ἃ σὺ πεποίηκας κακά
Cyrus that indeed these(-things) which you have-done bad
ἐστιν οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως χρὴ λέγειν· εὖ γε μέντοι,
are not I-know how (one)-must to-say well at-least however

ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι ταῦτα τἀγαθὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστιν οἷα
he-said know that these the-good-things such(-things) are as
ὅσῳ πλείονα φαίνεται, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον ἐμὲ
by-as-much-as more they-appear by-so-much more me
βαρύνει.
they-weigh-down

τήν τε γὰρ χώραν, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἂν τὴν σὴν ἐβουλόμην 26
the both for country he-said I — the yours would-wish
τῇ ἐμῇ δυνάμει μείζω ποιεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ τὴν ἐμὴν ὑπὸ
with-the my power greater to-make rather than the mine by
σοῦ ὁρᾶν οὕτως αὐξανομένην· σοὶ μὲν γὰρ ταῦτα
you to-see so being-increased for-you indeed for these(-things)
ποιοῦντι καλά, ἐμοὶ δέ γέ ἐστί πῃ ταὐτὰ ἀτιμίαν
doing(-them) fine to-me but at-least are somehow the-same dishonor
φέροντα.
bringing

καὶ χρήματα οὕτως ἄν μοι δοκῶ ἥδιόν σοι 27
and money so — to-myself I-seem more-gladly to-you
δωρεῖσθαι ἢ παρὰ σοῦ οὕτω λαμβάνειν ὡς σὺ
to-give than from you so to-receive as you
νῦν ἐμοὶ δίδως· τούτοις γὰρ πλουτιζόμενος ὑπὸ σοῦ
now to-me give by-these for being-enriched by you
καὶ μᾶλλον αἰσθάνομαι οἷς πενέστερος γίγνομαι.
also more I-perceive in-what poorer I-become
καὶ τούς γ' ἐμοὺς ὑπηκόους ἰδὼν μικρά γε
and the at-least my subjects having-seen a-little at-least
ἀδικουμένους ὑπὸ σοῦ ἧττον ἂν δοκῶ λυπεῖσθαι
wronged by you less — I-seem to-be-grieved
ἢ νῦν ὁρῶν ὅτι μεγάλα ἀγαθὰ πεπόνθασιν ὑπὸ
than now seeing that great benefits they-have-received from
σοῦ.
you

28 εἰ δέ σοι, ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκῶ ἀγνωμόνως ἐνθυμεῖσθαι,
if and to-you he-said these(-things) I-seem unfeelingly to-consider
μὴ ἐν ἐμοὶ αὐτὰ ἀλλ᾽ εἰς σὲ τρέψας πάντα
not in me them but on you having-turned(-them) all
καταθέασαι οἷά σοι φαίνεται. τί γὰρ ἄν, εἴ τις
consider-closely how to-you they-appear what for — if someone
κύνας, οὓς σὺ τρέφεις φυλακῆς ἕνεκα σαυτοῦ τε
dogs which you rear of-guarding for-the-sake of-yourself both
καὶ τῶν σῶν, τούτους θεραπεύων γνωριμωτέρους ἑαυτῷ
and of-the yours these tending more-familiar to-himself
ἢ σοὶ ποιήσειεν, ἆρ᾽ ἄν σε εὐφράναι τούτῳ τῷ
than to-you should-make then — you would-please with-this the
θεραπεύματι;
tending

29 εἰ δὲ τοῦτό σοι δοκεῖ μικρὸν εἶναι, ἐκεῖνο κατανόησον·
if and this to-you seems small to-be that consider
εἴ τις τοὺς σὲ θεραπεύοντας, οὓς σὺ καὶ φρουρᾶς
if someone the(-men) you serving whom you both of-guard
καὶ στρατείας ἕνεκα κέκτησαι, τούτους οὕτω διαθείη
and of-campaign for-the-sake have-acquired these so should-dispose
ὥστ᾽ ἐκείνου μᾶλλον ἢ σοῦ βούλεσθαι εἶναι, ἆρ᾽
so-that his rather than yours to-wish to-be then
ἂν ἀντὶ ταύτης τῆς εὐεργεσίας χάριν αὐτῷ
— in-return-for this the benefit gratitude to-him
εἰδείης;
would-you-know

30 τί δέ, ὦ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἀσπάζονταί τε καὶ
what and what most men cherish both and
θεραπεύουσιν οἰκειότατα, εἴ τις τὴν γυναῖκα τὴν σὴν
tend most-intimately if someone the wife the your
οὕτω θεραπεύσειεν ὥστε φιλεῖν αὐτὴν μᾶλλον ποιήσειεν
so should-tend so-as to-love her more he-should-make

ἑαυτὸν ἢ σέ, ἆρ᾽ ἄν σε τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ ταύτῃ
himself than you then — you with-the benefit this
εὐφραίνοι; πολλοῦ γ᾽ ἂν οἶμαι καὶ δέοι· ἀλλ᾽
would-he-please far at-least — I-think and it-would-fall-short but
εὖ οἶδ᾽ ὅτι πάντων ἂν μάλιστα ἀδικοίη σε τοῦτο
well I-know that of-all — most he-would-wrong you this
ποιήσας.
having-done

ἵνα δὲ εἴπω καὶ τὸ μάλιστα τῷ ἐμῷ 31
so-that and I-may-say also the(-thing) most to-the my
πάθει ἐμφερές, εἴ τις οὓς σὺ ἤγαγες Πέρσας
suffering similar if someone whom you led Persians
οὕτω θεραπεύσειεν ὥστε αὐτῷ ἥδιον ἕπεσθαι ἢ
so should-tend so-that him more-gladly to-follow than
σοί, ἆρ᾽ ἂν φίλον αὐτὸν νομίζοις; οἶμαι μὲν
you then — friend him would-you-consider I-think indeed
οὔ, ἀλλὰ πολεμιώτερον ἂν ἢ εἰ πολλοὺς αὐτῶν
not but more-hostile — than if many of-them
κατακάνοι.
he-should-kill

τί δ᾽, εἴ τις τῶν σῶν φίλων φιλοφρόνως σου εἰπόντος 32
what and if someone of-the your friends in-a-friendly-way you having-said
λαμβάνειν ὁπόσα ἐθέλοι εἶτα τοῦτο ἀκούσας λαβὼν
to-take as-much-as he-wished then this having-heard having-taken
οἴχοιτο ἅπαντα ὁπόσα δύναιτο, καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν τοῖς
should-go-off with-all as-much-as he-could and himself indeed with-the
σοῖς γε πλουτοίη, σὺ δὲ μηδὲ μετρίοις ἔχοις
yours at-least should-be-rich you but not-even moderate(-means) should-have
χρῆσθαι, ἆρ᾽ ἂν δύναιο τὸν τοιοῦτον ἄμεμπτον φίλον
to-use then — could-you the such blameless friend
νομίζειν;
to-consider

33 νῦν μέντοι ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ἀλλὰ
now however I O Cyrus if not these(-things) but
τοιαῦτα ὑπὸ σοῦ δοκῶ πεπονθέναι. σὺ γὰρ ἀληθῆ
such(-things) by you I-seem to-have-suffered you for true
λέγεις· εἰπόντος ἐμοῦ τοὺς θέλοντας ἄγειν λαβὼν
you-say me having-said the(-men) willing to-lead having-taken
ᾤχου πᾶσάν μου τὴν δύναμιν, ἐμὲ δὲ ἔρημον
went-off-with all my the force me and deserted
κατέλιπες· καὶ νῦν ἃ ἔλαβες τῇ ἐμῇ δυνάμει
you-left and now what you-took with-the my power
ἄγεις δή μοι καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν αὔξεις τῇ
you-bring indeed to-me and the my country you-increase with-the
ἐμῇ ῥώμῃ· ἐγὼ δὲ δοκῶ οὐδὲν συναίτιος ὢν τῶν
my strength I and seem not-at-all jointly-responsible being for-the
ἀγαθῶν παρέχειν ἐμαυτὸν ὥσπερ γυνὴ εὖ ποιεῖν,
good-things to-offer myself like a-woman well to-treat
καὶ τοῖς τε ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις καὶ τοῖσδε τοῖς ἐμοῖς
and to-the both other men and to-these the my
ὑπηκόοις σὺ μὲν ἀνὴρ φαίνῃ, ἐγὼ δ' οὐκ ἄξιος
subjects you indeed a-man appear I but not worthy
ἀρχῆς.
of-rule

34 ταῦτά σοι δοκεῖ εὐεργετήματ' εἶναι, ὦ Κῦρε; εὖ
these(-things) to-you seem benefits to-be O Cyrus well
ἴσθ' ὅτι εἴ τι ἐμοῦ ἐκήδου, οὐδενὸς ἂν οὕτω με
know that if at-all of-me you-cared of-nothing — so me
ἀποστερεῖν ἐφυλάττου ὡς ἀξιώματος καὶ τιμῆς. τί
to-deprive you-would-beware as of-dignity and honor what
γὰρ ἐμοὶ πλέον τὸ τὴν γῆν πλατύνεσθαι, αὐτὸν δὲ
for to-me more the the land to-be-widened myself but
ἀτιμάζεσθαι; οὐ γάρ τοι ἐγὼ Μήδων ἦρχον διὰ τὸ
to-be-dishonored not for surely I Medes ruled because-of the

κρείττων αὐτῶν πάντων εἶναι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον διὰ τὸ
stronger than-them all to-be but rather because-of the
αὐτοὺς τούτους ἀξιοῦν ἡμᾶς ἑαυτῶν πάντα βελτίονας
themselves these to-think-right us than-themselves in-all better
εἶναι.
to-be
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔτι λέγοντος αὐτοῦ ὑπολαβὼν εἶπε, 35
and — Cyrus still speaking him interrupting said
Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ θεῖε, εἴ τι κἀγώ
By the gods he-said O uncle if in-anything I-too
σοι πρότερον ἐχαρισάμην, καὶ σὺ νῦν ἐμοὶ χάρισαι
to-you before did-a-favor also you now to-me do-a-favor
ὃ ἂν δεηθῶ σου· παῦσαι, ἔφη, τὸ νῦν εἶναι
what — I-ask you stop he-said the now to-be
μεμφόμενός μοι· ἐπειδὰν δὲ πεῖραν ἡμῶν λάβῃς
blaming me when and trial of-us you-take
πῶς ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ, ἐὰν μὲν δή σοι φαίνηται
how we-are toward you if indeed then to-you appear
τὰ ὑπ᾽ ἐμοῦ πεπραγμένα ἐπὶ τῷ σῷ ἀγαθῷ
the(-things) by me done for the your good
πεποιημένα, ἀσπαζομένου τέ μού σε ἀντασπάζου με
done embracing both me you embrace-in-return me
εὐεργέτην τε νόμιζε, ἐὰν δ᾽ ἐπὶ θάτερα, τότε μοι
benefactor and consider if but to the-other(-side) then me
μέμφου.
blame
Ἀλλ᾽ ἴσως μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Κυαξάρης, καλῶς λέγεις· 36
But perhaps however said — Cyaxares well you-speak
κἀγὼ οὕτω ποιήσω. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἦ καὶ
I-too so shall-do What then said — Cyrus truly also
φιλήσω σε; Εἰ σὺ βούλει, ἔφη. Καὶ οὐκ ἀποστρέψῃ με
shall-I-kiss you If you wish he-said And not will-you-turn-away me

ὥσπερ ἄρτι; Οὐκ ἀποστρέψομαι, ἔφη. καὶ ὃς ἐφίλησεν
as just-now Not I-shall-turn-away he-said and he kissed
αὐτόν.
him

37 Ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Μῆδοί τε καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ
When and saw the Medes both and the Persians and
οἱ ἄλλοι, πᾶσι γὰρ ἔμελεν ὅ τι ἐκ τούτων
the others to-all for it-mattered what ever from these(-things)
ἔσοιτο, εὐθὺς ἥσθησάν τε καὶ ἐφαιδρύνθησαν. καὶ
would-be at-once were-pleased both and brightened and
ὁ Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ὁ Κυαξάρης ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς
— *Cyrus and and — Cyaxares having-mounted on the*
ἵππους ἡγοῦντο, καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ Κυαξάρῃ οἱ
horses led and after indeed — Cyaxares the
Μῆδοι εἵποντο, Κῦρος γὰρ αὐτοῖς οὕτως ἐπένευσεν,
Medes followed Cyrus for to-them so nodded
ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ οἱ Πέρσαι, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπὶ
after and — Cyrus the Persians the and others after
τούτοις.
these

38 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ κατέστησαν
when and they-arrived at the camp and settled
τὸν Κυαξάρην εἰς τὴν κατεσκευασμένην σκηνήν, οἷς
— *Cyaxares in the prepared tent to-whom*
μὲν ἐτέτακτο παρεσκεύαζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τῷ
indeed it-had-been-assigned prepared the necessaries —
Κυαξάρῃ·
for-Cyaxares

39 οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι ὅσον χρόνον σχολὴν πρὸ δείπνου ἦγεν
the and Medes as-long-as time leisure before dinner had
ὁ Κυαξάρης ἦσαν πρὸς αὐτόν, οἳ μὲν καὶ αὐτοὶ καθ'
— *Cyaxares went to him some indeed also themselves by*

ἑαυτούς, οἱ δὲ πλεῖστοι ὑπὸ Κύρου ἐγκέλευστοι, δῶρα
themselves the but most by Cyrus prompted gifts
ἄγοντες, ὃ μέν τις οἰνοχόον καλόν, ὃ δ' ὀψοποιὸν
bringing one indeed some a-cupbearer fine another and a-cook
ἀγαθόν, ὃ δ' ἀρτοποιόν, ὃ δὲ μουσουργόν, ὃ
good another and a-baker another and a-musician another
δ' ἐκπώματα, ὃ δ' ἐσθῆτα καλήν· πᾶς δέ τις ὡς
and drinking-cups another and clothing fine every and one as
ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἕν γέ τι ὧν εἰλήφει ἐδωρεῖτο
for the most-part one at-least something of-what he-had-taken gave
αὐτῷ·
to-him
ὥστε τὸν Κυαξάρην μεταγιγνώσκειν ὡς οὔτε ὁ 40
so-that — Cyaxares to-change-his-mind that neither —
Κῦρος ἀφίστη αὐτοὺς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὔθ' οἱ Μῆδοι
Cyrus was-turning-away them from him nor the Medes
ἧττόν τι αὐτῷ προσεῖχον τὸν νοῦν ἢ καὶ
less at-all to-him turned the mind than also
πρόσθεν.
before
Ἐπεὶ δὲ δείπνου ὥρα ἦν, καλέσας ὁ Κυαξάρης ἠξίου 41
When and of-dinner the-hour was having-called — Cyaxares asked
τὸν Κῦρον διὰ χρόνου ἰδὼν αὐτὸν συνδειπνεῖν. ὁ
— Cyrus after time having-seen him to-dine-with(-him) —
δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη, Μὴ δὴ σὺ κέλευε, ὦ Κυαξάρη· ἢ
and Cyrus said Not then you bid(-me) O Cyaxares or
οὐχ ὁρᾷς ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ παρόντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν πάντες
not do-you-see that these the present by us all
ἐπαιρόμενοι πάρεισιν; οὔκουν καλῶς ἂν πράττοιμι εἰ
being-stirred-up are-present not-then well — I-would-do if
τούτων ἀμελῶν τὴν ἐμὴν ἡδονὴν θεραπεύειν δοκοίην.
these neglecting the my pleasure to-tend I-should-seem

ἀμελεῖσθαι δὲ δοκοῦντες στρατιῶται οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ
to-be-neglected and seeming soldiers the indeed good
πολὺ ἀθυμότεροι γίγνονται, οἱ δὲ πονηροὶ πολὺ
much more-despondent become the but bad much
ὑβριστότεροι.
more-insolent

42 ἀλλὰ σὺ μέν, ἔφη, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὁδὸν μακρὰν
but you indeed he-said especially both and road long
ἥκων δείπνει ἤδη· καὶ εἴ τινές σε τιμῶσιν,
having-come dine now and if any you honor
ἀντασπάζου καὶ εὐώχει αὐτούς, ἵνα σε καὶ
greet-in-return and feast them so-that you also
θαρρήσωσιν· ἐγὼ δ' ἀπιὼν ἐφ' ἅπερ λέγω
they-may-take-heart I and going-away to what I-say
τρέψομαι.
shall-turn

43 αὔριον δ', ἔφη, πρῲ δεῦρ' ἐπὶ τὰς σὰς θύρας
tomorrow and he-said early here at the your doors
παρέσονται οἱ ἐπικαίριοι, ὅπως βουλευσώμεθα πάντες
will-be-present the key-officers so-that we-may-deliberate all
σὺν σοὶ ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν τὸ ἐκ τοῦδε. σὺ δ'
with you what ever (one)-must to-do the from now you and
ἡμῖν ἔμβαλε βουλὴν παρὼν περὶ τούτου πότερον
to-us put-in counsel being-present about this whether
ἔτι δοκεῖ στρατεύεσθαι ἢ καιρὸς ἤδη διαλύειν τὴν
still it-seems(-best) to-campaign or the-time now to-disband the
στρατιάν.
army

44 ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Κυαξάρης ἀμφὶ δεῖπνον εἶχεν,
from this — indeed Cyaxares about dinner was(-busy)
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συλλέξας τοὺς ἱκανωτάτους τῶν φίλων
— and Cyrus having-collected the ablest of-the friends

καὶ φρονεῖν καὶ συμπράττειν, εἴ τι δέοι, ἔλεξε
both to-think and to-act-with(-him) if anything were-needful spoke
τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἃ μὲν δὴ πρῶτα ηὐξάμεθα,
as-follows Men friends what indeed then first we-prayed-for
πάρεστι σὺν θεοῖς. ὅπῃ γὰρ ἂν πορευώμεθα, κρατοῦμεν
is-here with gods wherever for — we-march we-master
τῆς χώρας· καὶ μὲν δὴ τοὺς πολεμίους ὁρῶμεν
the country and indeed then the enemies we-see
μειουμένους, ἡμᾶς δὲ αὐτοὺς πλείονάς τε καὶ ἰσχυροτέρους
diminishing us and ourselves more both and stronger
γιγνομένους.
becoming
εἰ δὲ ἡμῖν ἔτι ἐθελήσειαν οἱ νῦν προσγεγενημένοι 45
if and to-us still should-be-willing the now added
σύμμαχοι παραμεῖναι, πολλῷ ἂν μᾶλλον ἀνύσαι
allies to-stay-by much — more to-accomplish
δυναίμεθα καὶ εἴ τι βιάσασθαι καιρὸς καὶ
we-could both if anything to-force the-time and
εἴ τι πεῖσαι δέοι. ὅπως οὖν τὸ μένειν
if anything to-persuade were-needful so-that then the to-stay
ὡς πλείστοις συνδοκῇ τῶν συμμάχων, οὐδὲν
as to-the-most may-seem-good of-the allies not-at-all
μᾶλλον τοῦτο ἐμὸν ἔργον ἢ καὶ ὑμέτερον
more this my task than also yours
μηχανᾶσθαι,
to-contrive
ἀλλ’ ὥσπερ καὶ ὅταν μάχεσθαι δέῃ, ὁ 46
but just-as also when to-fight there-be-need the(-one)
πλείστους χειρωσάμενος ἀλκιμώτατος δοξάζεται εἶναι,
most having-subdued most-valiant is-reputed to-be
οὕτω καὶ ὅταν πεῖσαι δέῃ, ὁ πλείστους
so also when to-persuade there-be-need the(-one) most

ὁμογνώμονας ἡμῖν ποιήσας οὗτος δικαίως ἂν
of-one-mind with-us having-made this(-man) justly —
λεκτικώτατός τε καὶ πρακτικώτατος κρίνοιτο ἂν
most-eloquent both and most-effective would-be-judged —
εἶναι.
to-be

47 μὴ μέντοι ὡς λόγον ἡμῖν ἐπιδειξόμενοι οἷον ἂν εἴποιτε
not however as a-speech to-us going-to-display such-as — you-would-say
πρὸς ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοῦτο μελετᾶτε, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς τοὺς
to each of-them this practice but as the(-men)
πεπεισμένους ὑφ᾽ ἑκάστου δήλους ἐσομένους οἷς ἂν
persuaded by each plain going-to-be by-what —
πράττωσιν οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε.
they-do so prepare

48 καὶ ὑμεῖς μέν, ἔφη, τούτων ἐπιμελεῖσθε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως
and you indeed he-said of-these take-care I and that
ἂν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσον ἂν ἔγωγε δύνωμαι οἱ
— having the necessaries as-far-as — I-at-least can the
στρατιῶται περὶ τοῦ στρατεύεσθαι βουλεύωνται τούτου
soldiers about the to-campaign may-deliberate of-this
πειράσομαι ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.
I-shall-try to-take-care

BOOK VI

I · ARASPAS GOES OVER

At the council the Hyrcanian, the Cadusian, Artabazus, and Gobryas urge that the army stay together, and Cyrus proposes forts for the winter and engines for the siege. He builds up his cavalry and scythed chariots. Araspas, in love with Panthea, threatens her with force; she tells Cyrus, who forgives Araspas and sends him to the enemy as a pretended deserter and spy. Panthea sends for her husband Abradatas, who comes with a thousand horsemen, pledges himself to Cyrus, and builds chariots; Cyrus has wheeled towers made, each drawn by eight yokes of oxen.

Ταύτην μὲν δὴ τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτω διαγαγόντες καὶ 1
This indeed then the day so having-spent and
δειπνήσαντες ἀνεπαύοντο. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ πρῲ ἦκον
having-dined they-rested on-the and next-day early came
ἐπὶ τὰς Κυαξάρου θύρας πάντες οἱ σύμμαχοι. ἕως οὖν
to the of-Cyaxares doors all the allies while then
ὁ Κυαξάρης ἐκοσμεῖτο, ἀκούων ὅτι πολὺς ὄχλος ἐπὶ ταῖς
— *Cyaxares was-dressing hearing that great crowd at the*
θύραις εἴη, ἐν τούτῳ οἱ φίλοι τῷ Κύρῳ προσῆγον οἳ μὲν
doors was in this the friends — to-Cyrus brought some indeed
Καδουσίους δεομένους αὐτοῦ μένειν, οἳ δὲ Ὑρκανίους, ὁ
Cadusians begging him to-stay some and Hyrcanians one
δέ τις Σάκας, ὁ δέ τις καὶ Γωβρύαν· Ὑστάσπας δὲ
and a-certain Sacians one and a-certain also Gobryas Hystaspas and
Γαδάταν τὸν εὐνοῦχον προσῆγε, δεόμενον τοῦ Κύρου μένειν.
Gadatas the eunuch brought begging — Cyrus to-stay
ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Κῦρος γιγνώσκων ὅτι Γαδάτας πάλαι 2
then indeed — Cyrus knowing that Gadatas long-since
ἀπωλώλει τῷ φόβῳ μὴ λυθείη ἡ στρατιά, ἐπιγελάσας
was-undone from-the fear lest be-disbanded the army having-laughed

εἶπεν, Ὦ Γαδάτα, δῆλος εἶ, ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ Ὑστάσπου
said O Gadatas plain you-are he-said by — Hystaspas
τούτου πεπεισμένος ταῦτα γιγνώσκειν ἃ λέγεις.
this having-been-persuaded these(-things) to-think which you-say

3 καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας ἀνατείνας τὰς χεῖρας πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν
and — Gadatas having-stretched-up the hands toward the heaven
ἀπώμοσεν ἦ μὴν μὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ Ὑστάσπου πεισθεὶς
swore truly indeed not by — Hystaspas having-been-persuaded
ταῦτα γιγνώσκειν· ἀλλ᾽ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἂν ὑμεῖς
these(-things) to-think but I-know he-said that if you
ἀπέλθητε, ἔρρει τἀμὰ παντελῶς· διὰ τοῦτ᾽, ἔφη, καὶ
go-away is-ruined my(-estate) utterly because-of this he-said also
τούτῳ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς διελεγόμην, ἐρωτῶν εἰ εἰδείη τί
with-this(-man) I myself conversed asking if he-knew what
ἐν νῷ ἔχεις ποιεῖν.
in mind you-have to-do

4 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀδίκως ἄρα ἐγὼ Ὑστάσπαν τόνδε
and — Cyrus said Unjustly then I Hystaspas this-one-here
καταιτιῶμαι. Ἀδίκως μέντοι νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας, ὦ
accuse Unjustly indeed by Zeus said — Hystaspas O
Κῦρε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἔλεγον τῷ Γαδάτᾳ τῷδε τοσοῦτον μόνον
Cyrus I for said — to-Gadatas this-one so-much only
ὡς οὐχ οἷόν τέ σοι εἴη στρατεύεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ὁ
that not possible — for-you it-was to-campaign saying that the
πατήρ σε μεταπέμπεται.
father you sends-for

5 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, Τί λέγεις; ἔφη· καὶ σὺ τοῦτο ἐτόλμησας
and — Cyrus What say-you he-said also you this dared
ἐξενεγκεῖν, εἴτ᾽ ἐγὼ ἐβουλόμην εἴτε καὶ μή; Ναὶ μὰ
to-publish whether I wished or also not Yes by
Δί᾽, ἔφη· ὁρῶ γάρ σε ὑπερεπιθυμοῦντα ἐν Πέρσαις
Zeus he-said I-see for you over-desiring among Persians

περίβλεπτον περιελθεῖν καὶ τῷ πατρὶ ἐπιδείξασθαι ᾗ
admired to-go-about and to-the father to-display how
ἕκαστα διεπράξω. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη, Σὺ δ' οὐκ ἐπιθυμεῖς
each-thing you-accomplished — and Cyrus said You and not desire
οἴκαδε ἀπελθεῖν; Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὁ Ὑστάσπας, οὐδ'
home to-go-away Not by Zeus said — Hystaspas nor
ἄπειμί γε, ἀλλὰ μένων στρατηγήσω, ἕως ἂν ποιήσω
shall-I-go-away at-least but staying I-shall-command until — I-make
Γαδάταν τουτονὶ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου δεσπότην.
Gadatas this-one-here of-the Assyrian master
Οἷ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτ' ἔπαιζον σπουδῇ πρὸς ἀλλήλους. ἐν 6
They indeed then such(-things) jested earnestly toward one-another in
δὲ τούτῳ Κυαξάρης σεμνῶς κεκοσμημένος ἐξῆλθε καὶ ἐπὶ
and this Cyaxares solemnly adorned came-out and on
θρόνου Μηδικοῦ ἐκαθέζετο. ὡς δὲ πάντες συνῆλθον οὓς
a-throne Median sat when and all had-come-together whom
ἔδει καὶ σιωπὴ ἐγένετο, ὁ Κυαξάρης ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες
it-was-needful and silence was-made — Cyaxares spoke thus Men
σύμμαχοι, ἴσως, ἐπειδὴ παρὼν τυγχάνω καὶ πρεσβύτερός
allies perhaps since present I-happen-to-be and older
εἰμι Κύρου, εἰκὸς ἄρχειν με λόγου. νῦν οὖν δοκεῖ
I-am than-Cyrus reasonable(-it-is) to-begin me the-speech now then it-seems
μοι εἶναι καιρὸς περὶ τούτου πρῶτον διαλέγεσθαι πότερον
to-me to-be the-time about this first to-discuss whether
στρατεύεσθαι ἔτι δοκεῖ ἢ διαλύειν ἤδη τὴν στρατιάν·
to-campaign still it-seems(-best) or to-disband now the army
λεγέτω οὖν τις, ἔφη, περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου ᾗ γιγνώσκει.
let-speak then someone he-said about very this how he-judges
ἐκ τούτου πρῶτος μὲν εἶπεν ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, 7
from this first indeed spoke the Hyrcanian Men allies
οὐκ οἶδα μὲν ἔγωγε εἴ τι δεῖ λόγων ὅπου αὐτὰ τὰ ἔργα
not know indeed I-at-least if any there-is-need of-words where very the deeds

δεικνύει τὸ κράτιστον. πάντες γὰρ ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι ὁμοῦ μὲν
show the best all for we-know that together indeed
ὄντες πλείω κακὰ τοὺς πολεμίους ποιοῦμεν ἢ πάσχομεν·
being more harm to-the enemies we-do than we-suffer
ὅτε δὲ χωρὶς ἦμεν ἀλλήλων, ἐκεῖνοι ἡμῖν ἐχρῶντο ὡς
when but apart we-were from-one-another they us treated as
ἐκείνοις ἦν ἥδιστον, ἡμῖν γε μὴν ὡς χαλεπώτατον.
to-them was pleasantest to-us at-least indeed as hardest

8 ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ Καδούσιος εἶπεν, Ἡμεῖς δὲ τί ἂν λέγοιμεν,
upon this the Cadusian said We and what — would-we-say
ἔφη, περὶ τοῦ οἴκαδε ἀπελθόντες ἕκαστοι χωρὶς εἶναι, ὁπότε
he-said about the home having-gone-away each apart to-be when
γε οὐδὲ στρατευομένοις, ὡς ἔοικε, χωρίζεσθαι συμφέρει;
at-least not-even campaigning as it-seems to-be-separated is-advantageous
ἡμεῖς γοῦν οὐ πολὺν χρόνον δίχα τοῦ ὑμετέρου πλήθους
we at-any-rate not long time apart from-the your multitude
στρατευσάμενοι δίκην ἔδομεν ὡς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε.
having-campaigned penalty paid as also you know

9 ἐπὶ τούτῳ Ἀρτάβαζος ὅ ποτε φήσας εἶναι Κύρου
upon this Artabazus who once having-said to-be of-Cyrus
συγγενὴς ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κυαξάρη,
kinsman spoke as-follows I and he-said O Cyaxares
τοσοῦτον διαφέρομαι τοῖς πρόσθεν λέγουσιν· οὗτοι
in-so-much differ from-the(-men) before speaking these
μὲν γάρ φασιν ὅτι δεῖ μένοντας στρατεύεσθαι, ἐγὼ
indeed for say that (one)-must staying to-campaign I
δὲ λέγω ὅτι ὅτε μὲν οἴκοι ἦν, ἐστρατευόμην·
but say that when indeed at-home I-was I-was-campaigning

10 καὶ γὰρ ἐβοήθουν πολλάκις τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀγομένων
and for I-went-to-help often the our(-things) being-carried-off
καὶ περὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων φρουρίων ὡς ἐπιβουλευσομένων
and about the our forts as going-to-be-plotted-against

πολλάκις πράγματα εἶχον φοβούμενός τε καὶ φρουρῶν· καὶ
often troubles I-had fearing both and keeping-guard and
ταῦτ᾽ ἔπραττον τὰ οἰκεῖα δαπανῶν. νῦν δ᾽ ἔχω μὲν
these(-things) I-did the(-means) of-my-own spending now but I-hold indeed
τὰ ἐκείνων φρούρια, οὐ φοβοῦμαι δ᾽ ἐκείνους, εὐωχοῦμαι
the their forts not I-fear but them I-feast(-on)
δὲ τὰ ἐκείνων καὶ πίνω τὰ τῶν πολεμίων. ὡς
and the(-things) of-them and drink the(-things) of-the enemies as
οὖν τὰ μὲν οἴκοι στρατείαν οὖσαν, τάδε δὲ ἑορτήν,
then the(-life) indeed at-home a-campaign being these(-things) but a-festival
ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ δοκεῖ, ἔφη, διαλύειν τήνδε τὴν πανήγυριν.
to-me indeed not it-seems he-said to-disband this the festival-gathering
ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ δ᾽, ὦ ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, 11
upon this — Gobryas said I and O men allies
μέχρι μὲν τοῦδε ἐπαινῶ τὴν Κύρου δεξιάν· οὐδὲν γὰρ
up-to indeed now praise the of-Cyrus right-hand nothing for
ψεύδεται ὧν ὑπέσχετο· εἰ δ᾽ ἄπεισιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας, δῆλον
he-belies of-what he-promised if but he-goes-away from the country clear
ὅτι ὁ μὲν Ἀσσύριος ἀναπνεύσεται, οὐ τίνων ποινὰς ὧν τε
that the indeed Assyrian will-breathe-again not paying penalties for-what both
ὑμᾶς ἐπεχείρησεν ἀδικεῖν καὶ ὧν ἐμὲ ἐποίησεν· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν
you he-tried to-wrong and for-what me he-did I and in
τῷ μέρει ἐκείνῳ πάλιν δώσω δίκην ὅτι ὑμῖν φίλος ἐγενόμην.
the turn to-him again shall-pay penalty because to-you friend I-became
Ἐπὶ τούτοις πᾶσι Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδ᾽ ἐμὲ 12
Upon these all Cyrus said O men not-even me
λανθάνει ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν διαλύωμεν τὸ στράτευμα, τὰ μὲν
escapes that if indeed we-disband the army the(-things) indeed
ἡμέτερα ἀσθενέστερα γίγνοιτ᾽ ἄν, τὰ δὲ τῶν πολεμίων
our weaker would-become — the(-things) and of-the enemies
πάλιν αὐξήσεται. ὅσοι τε γὰρ αὐτῶν ὅπλα ἀφῄρηνται,
again will-increase as-many-as both for of-them arms have-been-deprived

ταχὺ ἄλλα ποιήσονται· ὅσοι τε ἵππους ἀπεστέρηνται,
quickly others will-make as-many-as and horses have-been-robbed-of
ταχὺ πάλιν ἄλλους ἵππους κτήσονται· ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν
quickly again other horses will-acquire instead and of-the(-men)
ἀποθανόντων ἕτεροι ἐφηβήσουσιν· ὥστε οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν εἰ
killed others will-come-of-age so-that nothing surprising if
πάνυ ἐν τάχει πάλιν ἡμῖν πράγματα παρέχειν δυνήσονται.
very in quickness again to-us troubles to-cause they-will-be-able

13 τί δῆτα ἐγὼ Κυαξάρην ἐκέλευσα λόγον ἐμβαλεῖν περὶ
why then I Cyaxares bade a-proposal to-throw-in about
καταλύσεως τῆς στρατιᾶς; εὖ ἴστε ὅτι φοβούμενος τὸ
disbanding of-the army well know that fearing the
μέλλον. ὁρῶ γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀντιπάλους προσιόντας οἷς
future I-see for to-us opponents approaching with-whom
ἡμεῖς, εἰ ὧδε στρατευσόμεθα, οὐ δυνησόμεθα μάχεσθαι.
we if thus we-shall-campaign not we-shall-be-able to-fight

14 προσέρχεται μὲν γὰρ δήπου χειμών, στέγαι δὲ εἰ
is-coming indeed for surely winter roofs and if
καὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί', οὐχ ἵπποις οὐδὲ
even for-us ourselves there-are but no-by Zeus not for-horses nor
θεράπουσιν οὐδὲ τῷ δήμῳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὧν ἄνευ
for-servants nor for-the commons of-the soldiers whom without
ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα στρατεύεσθαι· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια
we not — could to-campaign the and necessaries
ὅπου μὲν ἡμεῖς ἐληλύθαμεν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀνήλωται· ὅποι δὲ
where indeed we have-come by us have-been-used-up where and
μὴ ἀφίγμεθα, διὰ τὸ ἡμᾶς φοβεῖσθαι ἀνακεκομισμένοι
not we-have-arrived because-of the us to-fear having-carried-up(-them)
εἰσὶν εἰς ἐρύματα, ὥστε αὐτοὶ μὲν ἔχειν, ἡμᾶς δὲ
they-are into strongholds so-that themselves indeed to-have(-them) us and
ταῦτα μὴ δύνασθαι λαμβάνειν.
these(-things) not to-be-able to-take

τίς οὖν οὕτως ἀγαθὸς ἢ τίς οὕτως ἰσχυρὸς ὃς λιμῷ 15
who then so brave or who so strong who with-hunger
καὶ ῥίγει δύναιτ' ἂν μαχόμενος στρατεύεσθαι; εἰ μὲν οὖν
and cold could — fighting to-campaign if indeed then
οὕτω στρατευσόμεθα, ἐγὼ μέν φημι χρῆναι ἑκόντας ἡμᾶς
so we-shall-campaign I indeed say must willingly us
καταλῦσαι τὴν στρατιὰν μᾶλλον ἢ ἄκοντας ὑπ' ἀμηχανίας
to-disband the army rather than unwillingly through helplessness
ἐξελαθῆναι. εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ἔτι στρατεύεσθαι, τόδ' ἐγώ φημι
to-be-driven-out if but we-wish still to-campaign this I say
χρῆναι ποιεῖν, ὡς τάχιστα πειρᾶσθαι τῶν μὲν ἐκείνων
(one)-must to-do as quickly-as-possible to-try of-the indeed their
ὀχυρῶν ὡς πλεῖστα παραιρεῖν, ἡμῖν δ' αὐτοῖς ὡς πλεῖστα
strongholds as most to-take-away for-us and ourselves as most
ὀχυρὰ ποιεῖσθαι· ἐὰν γὰρ ταῦτα γένηται, τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια
strongholds to-make if for these(-things) happen the indeed necessaries
πλείω ἕξουσιν ὁπότεροι ἂν πλείω δύνωνται λαβόντες
more will-have whichever — more can having-taken
ἀποτίθεσθαι, πολιορκήσονται δὲ ὁπότεροι ἂν ἧττους ὦσι.
to-store-away will-be-besieged and whichever — weaker are
νῦν δ' οὐδὲν διαφέρομεν τῶν ἐν πελάγει πλεόντων· 16
now but nothing do-we-differ from-the(-men) on sea sailing
καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι πλέουσι μὲν ἀεί, τὸ δὲ πεπλευσμένον οὐδὲν
and for they sail indeed always the but sailed(-sea) no
οἰκειότερον τοῦ ἀπλεύστου καταλείπουσιν. ἐὰν δὲ φρούρια
more-their-own than-the unsailed they-leave if but forts
ἡμῖν γένηται, ταῦτα δὴ τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις ἀλλοτριώσει
for-us there-be these indeed for-the indeed enemies will-alienate
τὴν χώραν, ἡμῖν δ' ὑπ' εὐδίᾳ μᾶλλον πάντ' ἔσται.
the country for-us but under fair-weather more all-things will-be

17 ὃ δ' ἴσως ἄν τινες ὑμῶν φοβηθεῖεν, εἰ δεήσει
what and perhaps — some of-you might-fear if it-will-be-necessary
πόρρω τῆς ἑαυτῶν φρουρεῖν, μηδὲν τοῦτο ὀκνήσητε.
far from-the their-own(-land) to-keep-garrison not-at-all this shrink-from
ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ ἐπείπερ καὶ ὡς οἴκοθεν ἀποδημοῦμεν,
we indeed for since even so from-home we-are-abroad
φρουρήσειν ὑμῖν ἀναδεχόμεθα τὰ ἐγγύτατα χωρία τῶν
to-garrison for-you we-undertake the nearest places of-the
πολεμίων, ὑμεῖς δὲ τὰ πρόσορα ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς τῆς
enemies you and the bordering(-places) to-you yourselves —
Ἀσσυρίας ἐκεῖνα κτᾶσθε καὶ ἐργάζεσθε.
of-Assyria those acquire and work
18 ἐὰν γὰρ ἡμεῖς τὰ πλησίον αὐτῶν φρουροῦντες
if for we the(-places) near them garrisoning
δυνώμεθα σῴζεσθαι, ἐν πολλῇ ὑμεῖς εἰρήνῃ ἔσεσθε οἱ
can be-safe in much you peace will-be the(-ones)
τὰ πρόσω αὐτῶν ἔχοντες· οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι δυνήσονται τῶν
the far-off from-them holding not for I-think they-will-be-able the(-places)
ἐγγὺς ἑαυτῶν ἀμελοῦντες τοῖς πρόσω ὑμῖν ἐπιβουλεύειν.
near themselves neglecting the far-off you to-plot-against
19 Ὡς δὲ ταῦτ' ἐρρήθη, οἵ τε ἄλλοι πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι
When and these(-things) were-said the both others all standing-up
συμπροθυμήσεσθαι ταῦτ' ἔφασαν καὶ Κυαξάρης. Γαδάτας
to-help-eagerly these(-things) said and Cyaxares Gadatas
δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας καὶ τεῖχος, ἢν ἐπιτρέψωσιν οἱ σύμμαχοι,
and and Gobryas also a-wall if allow the allies
τειχιεῖσθαι ἔφασαν, ὥστε καὶ ταῦτα φίλια τοῖς συμμάχοις
would-fortify they-said so-that also these friendly to-the allies
ὑπάρχειν.
to-be

ὁ οὖν Κῦρος ἐπεὶ ἑώρα προθύμους πάντας ὄντας πράττειν 20
— then Cyrus when he-saw eager all being to-do
ὅσα ἔλεξε, τέλος εἶπεν, Εἰ τοίνυν περαίνειν βουλόμεθα
as-much-as he-had-said at-last said If then to-accomplish we-wish
ὅσα φαμὲν χρῆναι ποιεῖν, ὡς τάχιστ᾽ ἂν δέοι
as-much-as we-say (one)-must to-do as quickly-as-possible — would-be-needed
γενέσθαι μηχανὰς μὲν εἰς τὸ καθαιρεῖν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων
to-be-had engines indeed for the to-pull-down the of-the enemies
τείχη, τέκτονας δὲ εἰς τὸ ἡμῖν ὀχυρὰ πυργοῦσθαι.
walls carpenters and for the for-us strongholds to-be-towered
ἐκ τούτου ὑπέσχετο ὁ μὲν Κυαξάρης μηχανὴν αὐτὸς 21
from this promised — indeed Cyaxares an-engine himself
ποιησάμενος παρέξειν, ἄλλην δὲ Γαδάτας καὶ Γωβρύας,
having-made to-provide another and Gadatas and Gobryas
ἄλλην δὲ Τιγράνης· αὐτὸς δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη δύο πειράσεσθαι
another and Tigranes himself and Cyrus said two he-would-try
ποιήσασθαι.
to-make
ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτ᾽ ἔδοξεν, ἐπορίζοντο μὲν μηχανοποιούς, 22
when and this was-resolved they-procured indeed engine-makers
παρεσκευάζοντο δ᾽ ἕκαστοι εἰς τὰς μηχανὰς ὧν ἔδει·
prepared and each for the engines what was-needed
ἄνδρας δ᾽ ἐπέστησαν οἳ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι
men and they-put-in-charge who seemed most-suitable to-be
ἀμφὶ ταῦτ᾽ ἔχειν.
about these(-things) to-be(-busy)
Κῦρος δ᾽ ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι διατριβὴ ἔσται ἀμφὶ ταῦτα, 23
Cyrus and when he-knew that a-delay there-would-be about these(-things)
ἐκάθισε τὸ στράτευμα ἔνθα ᾤετο ὑγιεινότατον εἶναι καὶ
settled the army where he-thought healthiest to-be and
εὐπροσοδώτατον ὅσα ἔδει προσκομίζεσθαι· ὅσα
most-accessible as-many-as it-was-needful to-be-brought-in as-many-as

τε ἐρυμνότητος προσεδεῖτο, ἐποιήσατο, ὡς ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ
and of-strength it-needed-besides he-made so-that in safety
οἱ αἰεὶ μένοντες εἶεν, εἴ ποτε καὶ πρόσω τῇ
the(-men) always staying might-be if ever even far-off with-the
ἰσχύι ἀποστρατοπεδεύοιτο.
strength he-encamped-away

24 πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐρωτῶν οὓς ᾤετο μάλιστα εἰδέναι
besides and these asking whom he-thought most to-know
τὴν χώραν ὁπόθεν ἂν ὡς πλεῖστα ὠφελοῖτο τὸ
the country from-where — as most it-might-be-benefited the
στράτευμα, ἐξῆγεν ἀεὶ εἰς προνομάς, ἅμα μὲν
army he-led-out always for foraging at-the-same-time indeed
ὅπως ὅτι πλεῖστα λαμβάνοι τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
so-that as most he-might-get for-the army the necessaries
ἅμα δ' ὅπως μᾶλλον ὑγιαίνοιεν καὶ ἰσχύοιεν
at-the-same-time and so-that more they-might-be-healthy and be-strong
διαπονούμενοι ταῖς πορείαις, ἅμα δ' ὅπως ἐν ταῖς
toiling in-the marches at-the-same-time and so-that in the
ἀγωγαῖς τὰς τάξεις ὑπομιμνήσκοιντο.
leadings the ranks they-might-be-reminded-of

25 ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν τούτοις ἦν. Ἐκ δὲ Βαβυλῶνος
— indeed then Cyrus in these was From and Babylon
αὐτόμολοι καὶ ἁλισκόμενοι ταὔτ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ὁ Ἀσσύριος
deserters and (men)-being-captured the-same said that the Assyrian
οἴχοιτο ἐπὶ Λυδίας, πολλὰ τάλαντα χρυσίου καὶ ἀργυρίου
had-gone to Lydia many talents of-gold and of-silver
ἄγων καὶ ἄλλα κτήματα καὶ κόσμον παντοδαπόν.
taking and other possessions and adornment of-every-kind

26 ὁ μὲν οὖν ὄχλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔλεγεν ὡς
the indeed then crowd of-the soldiers said that
ὑπεκτίθοιτο ἤδη τὰ χρήματα φοβούμενος· ὁ
he-was-putting-out-of-the-way already the property being-afraid —

δὲ Κῦρος γιγνώσκων ὅτι οἴχοιτο συστήσων εἴ τι
but Cyrus knowing that he-had-gone going-to-unite if anything
δύναιτο ἀντίπαλον ἑαυτῷ, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο ἐρρωμένως,
he-could opponent to-himself counter-prepared vigorously
ὡς μάχης ἔτι δεῆσον· ὥστ' ἐξεπίμπλη μὲν τὸ τῶν
as battle still going-to-be-needed so-that he-filled-up indeed the of-the
Περσῶν ἱππικόν, τοὺς μὲν ἐκ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων, τοὺς
Persians cavalry the(-ones) indeed from the captives the(-ones)
δέ τινας καὶ παρὰ τῶν φίλων λαμβάνων ἵππους· ταῦτα
and some also from the friends taking horses these(-things)
γὰρ παρὰ πάντων ἐδέχετο καὶ ἀπεωθεῖτο οὐδέν, οὔτε εἴ
for from all he-accepted and pushed-away nothing neither if
τις ὅπλον διδοίη καλὸν οὔτ' εἴ τις ἵππον·
anyone a-weapon gave fine nor if anyone a-horse
κατεσκευάζετο δὲ καὶ ἅρματα ἔκ τε τῶν αἰχμαλώτων 27
he-equipped and also chariots from both the captured
ἁρμάτων καὶ ἄλλοθεν ὁπόθεν ἐδύνατο. καὶ τὴν μὲν
chariots and from-elsewhere from-wherever he-could and the indeed
Τρωικὴν διφρείαν πρόσθεν οὖσαν καὶ τὴν Κυρηναίων ἔτι
Trojan chariot-driving formerly being and the of-Cyrenaeans still
καὶ νῦν ἁρματηλασίαν κατέλυσε· τὸν γὰρ πρόσθεν χρόνον
even now charioteering he-abolished the for former time
καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ Μηδίᾳ καὶ Συρίᾳ καὶ Ἀραβίᾳ καὶ
both the(-people) in — Media and Syria and Arabia and
πάντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ τοῖς ἅρμασιν οὕτως ἐχρῶντο
all the(-people) in — Asia the chariots so used
ὥσπερ νῦν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι.
as now the Cyrenaeans
ἔδοξε δ' αὐτῷ, ὃ κράτιστον εἰκὸς ἦν εἶναι τῆς 28
it-seemed and to-him what best likely was to-be of-the
δυνάμεως, ὄντων τῶν βελτίστων ἐπὶ τοῖς ἅρμασι, τοῦτο
force being the best on the chariots this

ἐν ἀκροβολιστῶν μέρει εἶναι καὶ εἰς τὸ κρατεῖν οὐδὲν μέγα
in skirmishers' part to-be and to the to-prevail nothing great
συμβάλλεσθαι. ἅρματα γὰρ τριακόσια τοὺς μὲν μαχομένους
to-contribute chariots for three-hundred the indeed fighting(-men)
παρέχεται τριακοσίους, ἵπποις δ' οὗτοι χρῶνται διακοσίοις
provide three-hundred horses and these use two-hundred
καὶ χιλίοις· ἡνίοχοι δ' αὐτοῖς εἰσὶ μὲν ὡς εἰκὸς οἷς μάλιστα
and a-thousand drivers and for-them are indeed as likely whom most
πιστεύουσιν, οἱ βέλτιστοι· εἰς τριακοσίους δὲ διάδοχοί
they-trust the best to three-hundred and replacements
εἰσιν, οἳ οὐδ' ὁτιοῦν τοὺς πολεμίους βλάπτουσι.
are who not-even anything-whatever the enemies harm
29 ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν διφρείαν κατέλυσεν· ἀντὶ δὲ τούτου
this indeed then the chariot-driving he-abolished instead and of-this
πολεμιστήρια κατεσκευάσατο ἅρματα τροχοῖς τε ἰσχυροῖς,
war he-equipped chariots with-wheels both strong
ὡς μὴ ῥᾳδίως συντρίβηται, ἄξοσί τε μακροῖς· ἧττον
so-that not easily they-may-be-shattered with-axles and long less
γὰρ ἀνατρέπεται πάντα τὰ πλατέα· τὸν δὲ δίφρον τοῖς
for are-overturned all the broad(-things) the and box for-the
ἡνιόχοις ἐποίησεν ὥσπερ πύργον ἰσχυρῶν ξύλων· ὕψος
drivers he-made like a-tower of-strong timbers height
δὲ τούτων ἐστὶ μέχρι τῶν ἀγκώνων, ὡς δύνωνται
and of-these is up-to the elbows so-that can
ἡνιοχεῖσθαι οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὲρ τῶν δίφρων· τοὺς δ' ἡνιόχους
to-be-driven the horses over the boxes the and drivers
ἐθωράκισε πάντα πλὴν τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν.
he-armored all except the eyes
30 προσέθηκε δὲ καὶ δρέπανα σιδηρᾶ ὡς διπήχη πρὸς
he-added and also scythes of-iron about two-cubits-long to
τοὺς ἄξονας ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῶν τροχῶν καὶ ἄλλα
the axles on-this-side and on-that-side of-the wheels and others

κάτω ὑπὸ τῷ ἄξονι εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς ἐμβαλούντων
below under the axle toward ground looking as going-to-charge
εἰς τοὺς ἐναντίους τοῖς ἅρμασιν. ὡς δὲ τότε Κῦρος
into the opponents with-the chariots as and then Cyrus
ταῦτα κατεσκεύασεν, οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοῖς ἅρμασι
these(-things) equipped so still also now the chariots
χρῶνται οἱ ἐν τῇ βασιλέως χώρᾳ. ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ
use the(-people) in the king's country were and for-him
καὶ κάμηλοι πολλαὶ παρά τε τῶν φίλων συνειλεγμέναι
also camels many from both the friends collected
καὶ αἱ αἰχμάλωτοι πᾶσαι συνηθροισμέναι.
and the captured all gathered-together
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω συνεπεραίνετο. Βουλόμενος δὲ 31
and these(-things) indeed so were-being-accomplished Wishing and
κατάσκοπόν τινα πέμψαι ἐπὶ Λυδίας καὶ μαθεῖν ὅ
a-spy some to-send to Lydia and to-learn what
τι πράττοι ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἐπιτήδειος εἶναι
ever was-doing the Assyrian it-seemed to-him suitable to-be
Ἀράσπας ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦτο ὁ φυλάττων τὴν καλὴν
Araspas to-go for this the(-man) guarding the beautiful
γυναῖκα. συνεβεβήκει γὰρ τῷ Ἀράσπᾳ τοιάδε. ληφθεὶς
woman had-befallen for — Araspas as-follows having-been-caught
ἔρωτι τῆς γυναικὸς ἠναγκάσθη προσενεγκεῖν λόγους αὐτῇ
by-love of-the woman he-was-compelled to-bring words to-her
περὶ συνηθείας.
about intimacy
ἡ δὲ ἀπέφησε μὲν καὶ ἦν πιστὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ καίπερ ἀπόντι· 32
she and refused indeed and was faithful to-the husband although absent
ἐφίλει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἰσχυρῶς· οὐ μέντοι κατηγόρησε τοῦ
she-loved for him strongly not however she-accused —
Ἀράσπου πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, ὀκνοῦσα συμβαλεῖν φίλους ἄνδρας.
Araspas to — Cyrus shrinking to-set-at-odds friends men

33 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας δοκῶν ὑπηρετήσειν τῷ τυχεῖν ἃ
when and — Araspas thinking to-serve the to-obtain what
ἐβούλετο ἠπείλησε τῇ γυναικὶ ὅτι εἰ μὴ βούλοιτο ἑκοῦσα,
he-wished threatened the woman that if not she-were-willing willingly
ἄκουσα ποιήσοι ταῦτα, ἐκ τούτου ἡ γυνή, ὡς ἔδεισε
unwillingly she-would-do these(-things) from this the woman when she-feared
τὴν βίαν, οὐκέτι κρύπτει, ἀλλὰ πέμπει τὸν εὐνοῦχον πρὸς
the force no-longer conceals(-it) but sends the eunuch to
τὸν Κῦρον καὶ κελεύει λέξαι πάντα.
— Cyrus and bids(-him) to-tell everything

34 ὃ δ' ὡς ἤκουσεν, ἀναγελάσας ἐπὶ τῷ κρείττονι
he and when he-heard having-laughed-out at the(-man) stronger
τοῦ ἔρωτος φάσκοντι εἶναι, πέμπει Ἀρτάβαζον σὺν
than-the love claiming to-be sends Artabazus with
τῷ εὐνούχῳ καὶ κελεύει αὐτῷ εἰπεῖν βιάζεσθαι μὲν μὴ
the eunuch and bids him to-say to-force indeed not
τοιαύτην γυναῖκα, πείθειν δὲ εἰ δύναιτο, οὐκ ἔφη κωλύειν.
such a-woman to-persuade but if he-could not he-said to-prevent

35 ἐλθὼν δ' Ἀρτάβαζος πρὸς τὸν Ἀράσπαν ἐλοιδόρησεν
having-come and Artabazus to — Araspas reviled
αὐτόν, παρακαταθήκην ὀνομάζων τὴν γυναῖκα, ἀσέβειάν
him a-trust calling the woman impiety
τε αὐτοῦ ψέγων ἀδικίαν τε καὶ ἀκράτειαν, ὥστε τὸν
both his blaming injustice both and incontinence so-that —
Ἀράσπαν πολλὰ μὲν δακρύειν ὑπὸ λύπης, καταδύεσθαι
Araspas much indeed to-weep from grief to-sink
δ' ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσχύνης, ἀπολωλέναι δὲ τῷ φόβῳ μή
and from the shame to-be-dying and from-the fear lest
τι καὶ πάθοι ὑπὸ Κύρου.
anything also he-suffer from Cyrus

Ὁ οὖν Κῦρος καταμαθὼν ταῦτα ἐκάλεσεν αὐτὸν 36
— then Cyrus having-learned these(-things) called him
καὶ μόνος μόνῳ ἔλεξεν, Ὁρῶ σε, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα,
and alone to-him-alone spoke I-see you he-said O Araspas
φοβούμενόν τε ἐμὲ καὶ ἐν αἰσχύνῃ δεινῶς ἔχοντα. παῦσαι
fearing both me and in shame terribly being stop
οὖν τούτων· ἐγὼ γὰρ θεούς τε ἀκούω ἔρωτος ἡττᾶσθαι,
then these(-things) I for gods both hear by-love to-be-overcome
ἀνθρώπους τε οἶδα καὶ μάλα δοκοῦντας φρονίμους
men both I-know even very seeming sensible
εἶναι οἷα πεπόνθασιν ὑπ᾽ ἔρωτος· καὶ αὐτὸς δ᾽ ἐμαυτοῦ
to-be what they-have-suffered from love and myself and of-myself
κατέγνων μὴ ἂν καρτερῆσαι ὥστε συνὼν καλοῖς ἀμελεῖν
I-judged not — to-hold-out so-as being-with beautiful(-ones) to-neglect
αὐτῶν. καὶ σοὶ δὲ τούτου τοῦ πράγματος ἐγὼ αἴτιός
them and to-you and of-this the matter I responsible
εἰμι· ἐγὼ γάρ σε συγκαθεῖρξα τούτῳ τῷ ἀμάχῳ πράγματι.
am I for you shut-up-with this the irresistible thing
καὶ ὁ Ἀράσπας ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ σὺ μέν, ὦ Κῦρε, 37
and — Araspas taking-up(-the-word) said But you indeed O Cyrus
καὶ ταῦτα ὅμοιος εἶ οἷόσπερ καὶ τἆλλα, πρᾷός τε καὶ
also in-these(-things) like are as also in-the-rest gentle both and
συγγνώμων τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἁμαρτημάτων· ἐμὲ δ᾽, ἔφη, καὶ
forgiving of-the human errors me and he-said also
οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι καταδύουσι τῷ ἄχει. ὡς γὰρ ὁ θροῦς
the other men sink with-the grief when for the rumor
διῆλθε τῆς ἐμῆς συμφορᾶς, οἱ μὲν ἐχθροὶ ἐφήδονταί μοι, οἱ
went-through of-the my misfortune the indeed enemies rejoice-over me the
δὲ φίλοι προσιόντες συμβουλεύουσιν ἐκποδὼν ἔχειν ἐμαυτόν,
and friends coming-up advise out-of-the-way to-keep myself
μή τι καὶ πάθω ὑπὸ σοῦ, ὡς ἠδικηκότος ἐμοῦ μεγάλα.
lest something also I-suffer from you as having-wronged me greatly

38 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Εὖ τοίνυν ἴσθι, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ὅτι ταύτῃ
and — Cyrus said Well then know O Araspas that by-this
τῇ δόξῃ οἷός τ' εἶ ἐμοί τε ἰσχυρῶς χαρίσασθαι καὶ
the opinion able — you-are to-me both strongly to-do-a-favor and
τοὺς συμμάχους μεγάλα ὠφελῆσαι. Εἰ γὰρ γένοιτο, ἔφη
the allies greatly to-benefit If only it-might-be said
ὁ Ἀράσπας, ὅ τι ἐγώ σοι ἐν καιρῷ ἂν γενοίμην.
— Araspas in-what ever I to-you in season — might-be
39 Εἰ τοίνυν, ἔφη, προσποιησάμενος ἐμὲ φεύγειν ἐθέλοις εἰς
If then he-said pretending me to-flee you-were-willing to
τοὺς πολεμίους ἐλθεῖν, οἴομαι ἄν σε πιστευθῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν
the enemies to-go I-think — you to-be-trusted by the
πολεμίων. Ἔγωγε ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, καὶ ὑπὸ
enemies I-at-least yes by Zeus said — Araspas and by
τῶν φίλων οἶδα ὅτι ὡς σὲ πεφευγὼς λόγον ἂν ἔχοιμι.
the friends I-know that as you having-fled-from talk — I-would-have
40 Ἔλθοις ἂν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἡμῖν πάντα εἰδὼς τὰ τῶν
You-would-come — then he-said to-us all-things knowing the(-things) of-the
πολεμίων· οἶμαι δὲ καὶ λόγων καὶ βουλευμάτων κοινωνὸν
enemies I-think and both of-words and of-plans sharer
ἄν σε ποιοῖντο διὰ τὸ πιστεύειν, ὥστε μηδὲ ἕν
— you they-would-make because-of the to-trust so-that not-even one(-thing)
σε λεληθέναι ὧν βουλόμεθα εἰδέναι. Ὡς πορευσομένου,
you to-have-escaped of-what we-wish to-know As going-to-march
ἔφη, ἤδη νυνί· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ἴσως ἓν τῶν πιστῶν ἔσται τὸ
he-said already now and for this perhaps one of-the pledges will-be the
δοκεῖν με ὑπὸ σοῦ μελλήσαντά τι παθεῖν ἐκπεφευγέναι.
to-seem me by you being-about something to-suffer to-have-escaped
41 Ἦ καὶ δυνήσῃ ἀπολιπεῖν, ἔφη, τὴν καλὴν Πάνθειαν;
Truly also will-you-be-able to-leave he-said the beautiful Panthea
Δύο γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, σαφῶς ἔχω ψυχάς· νῦν τοῦτο
Two for he-said O Cyrus clearly I-have souls now this

πεφιλοσόφηκα μετὰ τοῦ ἀδίκου σοφιστοῦ τοῦ Ἔρωτος. οὐ
I-have-philosophized with the unjust sophist — Love not
γὰρ δὴ μία γε οὖσα ἅμα ἀγαθή τέ ἐστι καὶ
for indeed one at-least being at-the-same-time good both is and
κακή, οὐδ' ἅμα καλῶν τε καὶ αἰσχρῶν ἔργων ἐρᾷ
bad nor at-the-same-time noble both and shameful deeds loves
καὶ ταὐτὰ ἅμα βούλεταί τε καὶ οὐ βούλεται
and the-same-things at-the-same-time wishes both and not wishes
πράττειν, ἀλλὰ δῆλον ὅτι δύο ἐστὸν ψυχά, καὶ ὅταν
to-do but clear that two are souls and when
μὲν ἡ ἀγαθὴ κρατῇ, τὰ καλὰ πράττεται, ὅταν δὲ
indeed the good prevails the fine(-things) are-done when but
ἡ πονηρά, τὰ αἰσχρὰ ἐπιχειρεῖται. νῦν δὲ ὡς σὲ
the wicked the shameful(-things) are-attempted now and since you
σύμμαχον ἔλαβε, κρατεῖ ἡ ἀγαθὴ καὶ πάνυ πολύ.
as-ally it-took prevails the good and very much
Εἰ τοίνυν καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ πορεύεσθαι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὧδε 42
If then also to-you it-seems-good to-go said — Cyrus thus
χρὴ ποιεῖν, ἵνα κἀκείνοις πιστότερος ᾖς· ἐξάγγελλέ
(one)-must to-do so-that to-them-too more-trustworthy you-may-be report
τε αὐτοῖς τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, οὕτω τε ἐξάγγελλε ὡς ἂν
both to-them the(-things) from us so both report that —
αὐτοῖς τὰ παρὰ σοῦ λεγόμενα ἐμποδὼν μάλιστ' ἂν
to-them the(-things) by you being-said in-the-way most —
εἴη ὧν βούλονται πράττειν. εἴη δ' ἂν ἐμποδών, εἰ
would-be of-what they-wish to-do would-be and — in-the-way if
ἡμᾶς φαίης παρασκευάζεσθαι ἐμβαλεῖν ποι τῆς ἐκείνων
us you-should-say to-be-preparing to-invade somewhere the their
χώρας· ταῦτα γὰρ ἀκούοντες ἧττον ἂν παντὶ σθένει
country these(-things) for hearing less — with-all strength
ἀθροίζοιντο, ἕκαστός τις φοβούμενος καὶ περὶ τῶν οἴκοι.
they-would-gather each one fearing also about the(-things) at-home

43 καὶ μένε, ἔφη, παρ᾽ ἐκείνοις ὅτι πλεῖστον χρόνον· ἃ γὰρ ἂν
and stay he-said with them as longest time what for —
ποιῶσιν ὅταν ἐγγύτατα ἡμῶν ὦσι, ταῦτα μάλιστα καιρὸς
they-do when nearest us they-are these(-things) most the-time
ἡμῖν εἰδέναι ἔσται. συμβούλευε δ᾽ αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐκτάττεσθαι
for-us to-know will-be advise and them also to-be-drawn-up
ὅπῃ ἂν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι· ὅταν γὰρ σὺ ἀπέλθῃς εἰδέναι
where — it-seems best to-be when for you go-away to-know
δοκῶν τὴν τάξιν αὐτῶν, ἀναγκαῖον οὕτω τετάχθαι
seeming the formation of-them necessary so to-be-drawn-up
αὐτοῖς· μετατάττεσθαι γὰρ ὀκνήσουσι, καὶ ἤν πῃ ἄλλῃ
for-them to-change-formation for they-will-shrink and if anywhere else
μετατάττωνται, ἐξ ὑπογύου ταράξονται.
they-change-formation from short-notice they-will-be-thrown-into-confusion

44 Ἀράσπας μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξελθὼν καὶ συλλαβὼν τοὺς
Araspas indeed then so having-gone-out and having-collected the
πιστοτάτους θεράποντας καὶ εἰπὼν πρός τινας ἃ
most-trusty servants and having-said to some what
ᾤετο συμφέρειν τῷ πράγματι ᾤχετο.
he-thought to-be-advantageous for-the matter went-off

45 Ἡ δὲ Πάνθεια ὡς ᾔσθετο οἰχόμενον τὸν Ἀράσπαν,
— and Panthea when she-perceived gone — Araspas
πέμψασα πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον εἶπε, Μὴ λυποῦ, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι
having-sent to — Cyrus said Not be-grieved O Cyrus that
Ἀράσπας οἴχεται εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· ἢν γὰρ ἐμὲ ἐάσῃς
Araspas has-gone to the enemies if for me you-allow
πέμψαι πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν ἄνδρα, ἐγώ σοι ἀναδέχομαι ἥξειν
to-send to the my husband I to-you undertake will-come
πολὺ Ἀράσπου πιστότερον φίλον· καὶ δύναμιν δὲ οἶδ᾽
much than-Araspas more-faithful friend and force and I-know
ὅτι ὁπόσην ἂν δύνηται ἔχων παρέσται σοι. καὶ γὰρ ὁ
that as-much-as — he-can having will-be-present for-you and for the

μὲν πατὴρ τοῦ νῦν βασιλεύοντος φίλος ἦν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ
indeed father of-the now reigning(-king) friend was to-him the and
νῦν βασιλεύων καὶ ἐπεχείρησέ ποτε ἐμὲ καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα
now reigning(-one) even attempted once me and the husband
διασπάσαι ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων· ὑβριστὴν οὖν νομίζων αὐτὸν εὖ
to-tear-apart from one-another insolent then considering him well
οἶδ᾽ ὅτι ἄσμενος ἂν πρὸς ἄνδρα οἷος σὺ εἶ ἀπαλλαγείη.
I-know that gladly — to a-man such-as you are he-would-go-over
ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευε πέμπειν πρὸς τὸν 46
having-heard these(-things) — Cyrus bade(-her) to-send to the
ἄνδρα· ἣ δ᾽ ἔπεμψεν. ὡς δ᾽ ἔγνω ὁ Ἀβραδάτας τὰ
husband she and sent when and recognized — Abradatas the
παρὰ τῆς γυναικὸς σύμβολα, καὶ τἆλλα δὲ ᾔσθετο ὡς
from the wife tokens and the-other-things and perceived how
εἶχεν, ἄσμενος πορεύεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἵππους ἔχων
they-were gladly he-marches to — Cyrus horses having
ἀμφὶ τοὺς χιλίους. ὡς δ᾽ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς τῶν Περσῶν
about the thousand when and he-was at the of-the Persians
σκοποῖς, πέμπει πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον εἰπὼν ὃς ἦν. ὁ δὲ
outposts he-sends to — Cyrus saying who he-was — and
Κῦρος εὐθὺς ἄγειν κελεύει αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν γυναῖκα.
Cyrus at-once to-bring bids him to the wife
ὡς δ᾽ εἰδέτην ἀλλήλους ἡ γυνὴ καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας, 47
when and saw one-another the woman and — Abradatas
ἠσπάζοντο ἀλλήλους ὡς εἰκὸς ἐκ δυσελπίστων. ἐκ
they-embraced one-another as likely from despair from
τούτου δὴ λέγει ἡ Πάνθεια τοῦ Κύρου τὴν ὁσιότητα
this indeed tells — Panthea — of-Cyrus the piety
καὶ τὴν σωφροσύνην καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὑτὴν κατοίκτισιν.
and the self-control and the toward herself compassion
ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀκούσας εἶπε, Τί ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ποιῶν,
— and Abradatas having-heard said What — then I doing

ὦ Πάνθεια, χάριν Κύρῳ ὑπέρ τε σοῦ καὶ ἐμαυτοῦ
O Panthea gratitude to-Cyrus on-behalf-of both you and myself
ἀποδοίην; Τί δὲ ἄλλο, ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, ἢ πειρώμενος
could-repay What and else said — Panthea than trying
εἶναι περὶ ἐκεῖνον οἷόσπερ ἐκεῖνος περὶ σέ;
to-be toward him such-as he toward you
48 Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀβραδάτας·
From this indeed comes to — Cyrus — Abradatas
καὶ ὡς εἶδεν αὐτόν, λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς εἶπεν, Ἀνθ᾽
and when he-saw him having-taken the right-hand said In-return-for
ὧν σὺ εὖ πεποίηκας ἡμᾶς, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐκ ἔχω τί μεῖζον
what you well have-treated us O Cyrus not I-have what greater
εἴπω ἢ ὅτι φίλον σοι ἐμαυτὸν δίδωμι καὶ θεράποντα
I-may-say than that friend to-you myself I-give and servant
καὶ σύμμαχον· καὶ ὅσα ἂν ὁρῶ σε σπουδάζοντα,
and ally and in-whatever — I-see you eager
συνεργὸς πειράσομαι γίγνεσθαι ὡς ἂν δύνωμαι κράτιστος.
fellow-worker I-shall-try to-be as — I-can best
49 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ δὲ δέχομαι· καὶ νῦν μέν σε
and — Cyrus said I and accept and now indeed you
ἀφίημι, ἔφη, σὺν τῇ γυναικὶ δειπνεῖν· αὖθις δὲ καὶ παρ᾽ ἐμοὶ
I-let-go he-said with the wife to-dine again and also with me
δεήσει σε σκηνοῦν σὺν τοῖς σοῖς τε καὶ ἐμοῖς φίλοις.
it-will-be-necessary you to-tent with the your both and my friends
50 Ἐκ τούτου ὁρῶν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας σπουδάζοντα τὸν Κῦρον περὶ
From this seeing — Abradatas eager — Cyrus about
τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα καὶ περὶ τοὺς τεθωρακισμένους
the scythe-bearing chariots and about the armored
ἵππους τε καὶ ἱππέας, ἐπειρᾶτο συντελεῖν αὐτῷ εἰς τὰ ἑκατὸν
horses both and horsemen tried to-contribute to-him to the hundred

ἅρματα ἐκ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ὅμοια ἐκείνοις· αὐτὸς
chariots from the cavalry the his-own like to-those himself
δὲ ὡς ἡγησόμενος αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος παρεσκευάζετο.
and as going-to-lead them on the chariot prepared
συνεζεύξατο δὲ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἅρμα τετράρρυμόν τε καὶ 51
he-yoked and the his-own chariot four-poled both and
ἵππων ὀκτώ· τοὺς δὲ ἵππους τοῦ ἅρματος χαλκοῖς πᾶσι
of-horses eight the and horses of-the chariot with-bronze all
προβλήμασι κατεσκευάσατο.
coverings he-equipped
Ἀβραδάτας μὲν ταῦτα ἔπραττε· Κῦρος δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ 52
Abradatas indeed these(-things) did Cyrus and having-seen the
τετράρρυμον αὐτοῦ ἅρμα κατενόησεν ὅτι οἷόν τε εἴη
four-poled his chariot perceived that possible — it-was
καὶ ὀκτάρρυμον ποιήσασθαι, ὥστε ὀκτὼ ζεύγεσι βοῶν
also eight-poled to-make so-as with-eight yokes of-oxen
ἄγειν *** τῶν μηχανῶν τὸ κατώτατον οἴκημα· ἦν δὲ
to-draw (lacuna) of-the engines the lowest story was and
τοῦτο τριώρυγον μάλιστα ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς σὺν τοῖς τροχοῖς.
this three-fathoms about from the ground with the wheels
τοιοῦτοι δὲ πύργοι σὺν τάξει ἀκολουθοῦντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ 53
such and towers with order following seemed to-him
μεγάλη μὲν ἐπικουρία γενήσεσθαι τῇ ἑαυτῶν φάλαγγι,
great indeed help to-become to-the their-own phalanx
μεγάλη δὲ βλάβη τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. ἐποίησε
great and harm to-the of-the enemies line he-made
δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν οἰκημάτων καὶ περιδρόμους καὶ ἐπάλξεις·
and on the stories both galleries and battlements
ἀνεβίβαζε δ' ἐπὶ τὸν πύργον ἕκαστον ἄνδρας εἴκοσιν.
he-put-up and on the tower each men twenty

54 ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα συνειστήκει αὐτῷ τὰ περὶ τοὺς πύργους,
when and all-things had-been-completed for-him the(-things) about the towers
ἐλάμβανε τοῦ ἀγωγίου πεῖραν· καὶ πολὺ ῥᾷον ἦγε τὰ
he-took of-the draft a-trial and much more-easily drew the
ὀκτὼ ζεύγη τὸν πύργον καὶ τοὺς ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ ἄνδρας ἢ τὸ
eight yokes the tower and the on it men than the
σκευοφορικὸν βάρος ἕκαστον τὸ ζεῦγος. σκευῶν μὲν γὰρ
baggage weight each the yoke of-baggage indeed for
βάρος ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι τάλαντα ἦν ζεύγει· τοῦ δὲ
weight about the five and twenty talents was for-a-yoke of-the but
πύργου, ὥσπερ τραγικῆς σκηνῆς τῶν ξύλων πάχος ἐχόντων,
tower like of-a-tragic stage the timbers thickness having
καὶ εἴκοσιν ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὅπλων, τούτων ἐγένετο ἔλαττον
and twenty men and arms of-these became less
ἢ πεντεκαίδεκα τάλαντα ἑκάστῳ ζεύγει τὸ ἀγώγιον.
than fifteen talents for-each yoke the draft
55 ὡς δ᾽ ἔγνω εὔπορον οὖσαν τὴν ἀγωγήν, παρεσκευάζετο
when and he-knew easy being the drawing he-prepared
ὡς ἄξων τοὺς πύργους σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι, νομίζων
as going-to-lead the towers with the army thinking
τὴν ἐν πολέμῳ πλεονεξίαν ἅμα σωτηρίαν τε καὶ
the in war advantage at-the-same-time safety both and
δικαιοσύνην εἶναι καὶ εὐδαιμονίαν.
justice to-be and happiness

II · CROESUS' COALITION

The Indian king sends money and offers friendship, and Cyrus sends the envoys to spy on the enemy. He keeps the army in training with hunts and contests. The spies report that Croesus has been chosen to command, with Egyptians, Thracians, Cyprians, and Cilicians, and that the army is gathering on the Pactolus to advance to Thymbrara. The soldiers are downcast; Cyrus shows them their own advantages,

and Chrysantas says the men were only vexed that a task remained before they could enjoy their gains. Cyrus decides to march at once and gives orders for the journey: water to replace wine by degrees, provisions, tools, craftsmen, and a market.

ἦλθον δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ 1
Came and in this the time also from the Indian
χρήματα ἄγοντές τινες καὶ ἀπήγγελλον αὐτῷ ὅτι ὁ Ἰνδὸς
money bringing some and reported to-him that the Indian
ἐπιστέλλει τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἥδομαι ὅτι μοι ἐπήγγειλας
sends-word as-follows I O Cyrus am-pleased that to-me you-announced
ὧν ἐδέου, καὶ βούλομαί σοι ξένος εἶναι καὶ πέμπω
what you-needed and I-wish to-you guest-friend to-be and I-send
σοι χρήματα· κἂν ἄλλων δέῃ, μεταπέμπου. ἐπέσταλται
to-you money and-if of-others you-need send-for(-them) it-has-been-enjoined
δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν σὺ κελεύῃς.
and on-the(-men) from me to-do what ever — you bid
ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε, Κελεύω τοίνυν ὑμᾶς τοὺς 2
having-heard and — Cyrus said I-bid then you the
μὲν ἄλλους μένοντας ἔνθα κατεσκηνώκατε φυλάττειν τὰ
indeed others staying where you-have-encamped to-guard the
χρήματα καὶ ζῆν ὅπως ὑμῖν ἥδιστον· τρεῖς δέ μοι
money and to-live as for-you pleasantest three but for-me
ἐλθόντες ὑμῶν ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους ὡς παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
having-gone of-you to the enemies as from the Indian
περὶ συμμαχίας, καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖ μαθόντες ὅ τι ἂν
about an-alliance and the(-things) there having-learned what ever —
λέγωσί τε καὶ ποιῶσιν, ὡς τάχιστα ἀπαγγείλατε ἐμοί
they-say both and do as quickly-as-possible report to-me
τε καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ· κἂν ταῦτά μοι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσητε,
both and to-the Indian and-if these(-things) for-me well you-serve
ἔτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσομαι τούτου ἢ ὅτι χρήματα
still more to-you gratitude I-shall-know for-this than because money

πάρεστε ἄγοντες. καὶ γὰρ οἱ μὲν δούλοις ἐοικότες
you-are-here bringing and for the(-ones) indeed to-slaves resembling
κατάσκοποι οὐδὲν ἄλλο δύνανται εἰδότες ἀπαγγέλλειν ἢ
spies nothing else can knowing to-report than
ὅσα πάντες ἴσασιν· οἱ δὲ οἷοίπερ ὑμεῖς ἄνδρες
as-much-as all know the(-men) but such-as you men
πολλάκις καὶ τὰ βουλευόμενα καταμανθάνουσιν.
often even the(-things) being-planned find-out

3 οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἰνδοὶ ἡδέως ἀκούσαντες καὶ ξενισθέντες τότε
the indeed then Indians gladly having-heard and having-been-entertained then
παρὰ Κύρῳ, συσκευασάμενοι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο,
by Cyrus having-packed-up on-the next-day marched
ὑποσχόμενοι ἦ μὴν μαθόντες ὅσα ἂν δύνωνται
having-promised truly indeed having-learned as-much-as — they-could
πλεῖστα ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων ἥξειν ὡς δυνατὸν τάχιστα.
most from the enemies to-come as possible most-quickly

4 Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τά τε ἄλλα εἰς τὸν πόλεμον παρεσκευάζετο
— and Cyrus the both other(-things) for the war prepared
μεγαλοπρεπῶς, ὡς δὴ ἀνὴρ οὐδὲν μικρὸν ἐπινοῶν
magnificently as indeed a-man nothing small intending
πράττειν, ἐπεμελεῖτο δὲ οὐ μόνον ὧν ἔδοξε τοῖς
to-do he-took-care and not only of-what seemed-good to-the
συμμάχοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔριν ἐνέβαλλε πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὅπως
allies but also rivalry he-threw-in toward one-another so-that
αὐτοὶ ἕκαστοι φανοῦνται καὶ εὐοπλότατοι καὶ ἱππικώτατοι
themselves each would-appear both best-armed and best-horsemen
καὶ ἀκοντιστικώτατοι καὶ τοξικώτατοι καὶ φιλοπονώτατοι.
and best-javelin-throwers and best-archers and most-toil-loving

5 ταῦτα δὲ ἐξειργάζετο ἐπὶ τὰς θήρας ἐξάγων καὶ
these(-things) and he-accomplished to the hunts leading-out(-them) and
τιμῶν τοὺς κρατίστους ἕκαστα· καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας δὲ
honoring the best in-each and the commanders and

οὓς ἑώρα ἐπιμελομένους τούτου ὅπως οἱ αὐτῶν
whom he-saw taking-care of-this that the(-men) of-themselves
κράτιστοι ἔσονται στρατιῶται, καὶ τούτους ἐπαινῶν τε
best would-be soldiers also these praising both
παρώξυνε καὶ χαριζόμενος αὐτοῖς ὅ τι δύναιτο.
he-spurred-on and gratifying them in-what ever he-could
εἰ δέ ποτε θυσίαν ποιοῖτο καὶ ἑορτὴν ἄγοι, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ 6
if and ever a-sacrifice he-made and a-festival held and in this
ὅσα πολέμου ἕνεκα μελετῶσιν ἄνθρωποι πάντων
as-many-things-as war for-the-sake practice men of-all
τούτων ἀγῶνας ἐποίει καὶ ἆθλα τοῖς νικῶσι μεγαλοπρεπῶς
these contests he-made and prizes to-the winners magnificently
ἐδίδου, καὶ ἦν πολλὴ εὐθυμία ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.
gave and there-was much cheer in the army
Τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ σχεδόν τι ἤδη ἀποτετελεσμένα 7
To-the and Cyrus nearly somewhat already completed
ἦν ὅσα ἐβούλετο ἔχων στρατεύεσθαι πλὴν τῶν
were as-many-things-as he-wished having to-campaign except the
μηχανῶν. καὶ γὰρ οἱ Πέρσαι ἱππεῖς ἔκπλεῳ ἤδη ἦσαν
engines and for the Persian horsemen complete already were
εἰς τοὺς μυρίους, καὶ τὰ ἅρματα τὰ δρεπανηφόρα, ἅ
to the ten-thousand and the chariots the scythe-bearing which
τε αὐτὸς κατεσκεύαζεν, ἔκπλεω ἤδη ἦν εἰς τὰ ἑκατόν,
both himself equipped complete already were to the hundred
ἅ τε Ἀβραδάτας ὁ Σούσιος ἐπεχείρησε κατασκευάζειν
which and Abradatas the Susian attempted to-equip
ὅμοια τοῖς Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα ἔκπλεω ἦν εἰς ἄλλα ἑκατόν.
like to-the of-Cyrus also these complete were to other hundred
καὶ τὰ Μηδικὰ δὲ ἅρματα ἐπεπείκει Κῦρος Κυαξάρην εἰς 8
and the Median and chariots had-persuaded Cyrus Cyaxares into
τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον τοῦτον μετασκευάσαι ἐκ τῆς Τρωικῆς
the same manner this to-remodel from the Trojan

καὶ Λιβυκῆς διφρείας· καὶ ἔκπλεω καὶ ταῦτα ἦν εἰς
and Libyan chariot-driving and complete also these were to
ἄλλα ἑκατόν. καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς καμήλους δὲ τεταγμένοι ἦσαν
other hundred and on the camels and posted were
δύο ἐφ' ἑκάστην τοξόται. καὶ ὁ μὴν πλεῖστος στρατὸς
two on each archers and the indeed most army
οὕτως εἶχε τὴν γνώμην ὡς ἤδη παντελῶς κεκρατηκὼς
so had the mind as already utterly having-prevailed
καὶ οὐδὲν ὄντα τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.
and nothing being the(-things) of-the enemies

9 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτω διακειμένων ἦλθον οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων
When and so being-disposed came the Indians from the enemies
οὓς ἐπεπόμφει Κῦρος ἐπὶ κατασκοπήν, καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι
whom had-sent Cyrus for spying and they-said that
Κροῖσος μὲν ἡγεμὼν καὶ στρατηγὸς πάντων ᾑρημένος
Croesus indeed leader and general of-all having-been-chosen
εἴη τῶν πολεμίων, δεδογμένον δ' εἴη πᾶσι τοῖς συμμάχοις
was of-the enemies resolved and it-was by-all the allied
βασιλεῦσι πάσῃ τῇ δυνάμει ἕκαστον παρεῖναι, χρήματα δὲ
kings with-all the force each to-be-present money and
εἰσφέρειν πάμπολλα, ταῦτα δὲ τελεῖν καὶ μισθουμένους
to-contribute very-much these(-things) and to-spend both hiring
οὓς δύναιντο καὶ δωρουμένους οἷς δέοι,
whom they-could and giving-gifts to-whom it-was-needful
10 ἤδη δὲ καὶ μεμισθωμένους εἶναι πολλοὺς μὲν Θρᾳκῶν
already and also having-been-hired to-be many indeed of-Thracians
μαχαιροφόρους, Αἰγυπτίους δὲ προσπλεῖν, καὶ ἀριθμὸν
sword-bearers Egyptians and to-be-sailing-up and number
ἔλεγον εἰς δώδεκα μυριάδας σὺν ἀσπίσι ποδήρεσι καὶ
they-said about twelve ten-thousands with shields foot-length and
δόρασι μεγάλοις, οἷάπερ καὶ νῦν ἔχουσι, καὶ κοπίσι·
spears great such-as also now they-have and sabers

προσέτι δὲ καὶ Κυπρίων στράτευμα· παρεῖναι δ' ἤδη
besides and also of-Cyprians an-army to-be-present and already
Κίλικας πάντας καὶ Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους καὶ Λυκάονας καὶ
Cilicians all and Phrygians both and Lycaonians and
Παφλαγόνας καὶ Καππαδόκας καὶ Ἀραβίους καὶ Φοίνικας
Paphlagonians and Cappadocians and Arabians and Phoenicians
καὶ σὺν τῷ Βαβυλῶνος ἄρχοντι τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, καὶ Ἴωνας
and with the of-Babylon ruler the Assyrians and Ionians
δὲ καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ σχεδὸν πάντας τοὺς Ἕλληνας τοὺς ἐν
and and Aeolians and nearly all the Greeks the(-ones) in
τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἐποικοῦντας σὺν Κροίσῳ ἠναγκάσθαι ἕπεσθαι,
— Asia dwelling-in with Croesus to-have-been-compelled to-follow
πεπομφέναι δὲ Κροῖσον καὶ εἰς Λακεδαίμονα περὶ συμμαχίας·
to-have-sent and Croesus also to Lacedaemon about an-alliance
συλλέγεσθαι δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἀμφὶ τὸν Πακτωλὸν 11
to-be-gathering and the army about the Pactolus
ποταμόν, προϊέναι δὲ μέλλειν αὐτοὺς εἰς Θύμβραρα, ἔνθα
river to-advance and to-be-about them to Thymbrara where
καὶ νῦν ὁ σύλλογος τῶν ὑπὸ βασιλέα βαρβάρων τῶν
also now the assembly of-the under the-king barbarians of-the
κάτω, καὶ ἀγορὰν πᾶσι παρηγγέλθαι ἐνταῦθα κομίζειν·
lower(-country) and a-market to-all to-have-been-ordered there to-bring
σχεδὸν δὲ τούτοις ταὐτὰ ἔλεγον καὶ οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι·
nearly and to-these the-same-things said also the captives
ἐπεμελεῖτο γὰρ καὶ τούτου ὁ Κῦρος ὅπως ἁλίσκοιντο
took-care for also of-this — Cyrus that they-might-be-captured
παρ' ὧν ἔμελλε πεύσεσθαί τι· ἔπεμπε δὲ καὶ δούλοις
from whom he-was-likely to-learn something he-sent and also to-slaves
ἐοικότας κατασκόπους·
resembling spies

12 ὡς οὖν ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ στρατὸς τοῦ Κύρου, ἐν
when then these(-things) heard the army — of-Cyrus in
φροντίδι τε ἐγένετο, ὥσπερ εἰκός, ἡσυχαίτεροί τε ἦ ὡς
anxiety both it-was as likely quieter both than as
εἰώθεσαν διεφοίτων, φαιδροί τε οὐ πάνυ ἐφαίνοντο,
they-were-accustomed they-went-about cheerful and not very appeared
ἐκυκλοῦντό τε καὶ μεστὰ ἦν πάντα ἀλλήλους ἐρωτώντων
they-formed-circles both and full were all-places one-another asking
περὶ τούτων καὶ διαλεγομένων.
about these(-things) and discussing

13 Ὡς δὲ ᾔσθετο ὁ Κῦρος φόβον διαθέοντα ἐν τῇ
When and perceived — Cyrus fear running-through in the
στρατιᾷ, συγκαλεῖ τούς τε ἄρχοντας τῶν στρατευμάτων
army he-calls-together the both commanders of-the armies
καὶ πάντας ὁπόσων ἀθυμούντων ἐδόκει βλάβη τις
and all whose being-dispirited seemed harm some
γίγνεσθαι καὶ προθυμουμένων ὠφέλεια. προεῖπε δὲ τοῖς
to-arise and being-eager benefit he-told-beforehand and to-the
ὑπηρέταις, καὶ ἄλλος εἴ τις βούλοιτο τῶν ὁπλοφόρων
attendants and another if anyone wished of-the arms-bearers
προσίστασθαι ἀκουσόμενος τῶν λόγων, μὴ κωλύειν. ἐπεὶ
to-stand-by going-to-hear the words not to-prevent when
δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
and they-had-come-together he-spoke as-follows

14 Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ἐγὼ τοίνυν ὑμᾶς συνεκάλεσα ἰδών
Men allies I then you called-together having-seen
τινας ὑμῶν, ἐπεὶ αἱ ἀγγελίαι ἦλθον ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων,
some of-you when the reports came from the enemies
πάνυ ἐοικότας πεφοβημένοις ἀνθρώποις. δοκεῖ γάρ μοι
very resembling frightened men it-seems for to-me
θαυμαστὸν εἶναι εἴ τις ὑμῶν ὅτι μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι
surprising to-be if anyone of-you that indeed the enemies

συλλέγονται δέδοικεν, ὅτι δὲ ἡμεῖς πολὺ μὲν πλείους
are-gathering fears that but we much indeed more
συνειλέγμεθα νῦν ἢ ὅτε ἐνικῶμεν ἐκείνους, πολὺ
have-gathered now than when we-were-conquering them much
δὲ ἄμεινον σὺν θεοῖς παρεσκευάσμεθα νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν,
and better with gods have-been-prepared now than before
ταῦτα δὲ ὁρῶντες οὐ θαρρεῖτε.
these(-things) but seeing not you-are-confident
ὦ πρὸς θεῶν, ἔφη, τί δῆτα ἂν ἐποιήσατε οἱ 15
O by gods he-said what then — would-you-have-done the(-men)
νῦν δεδοικότες, εἰ ἤγγελλόν τινες τὰ παρ᾽ ἡμῖν
now fearing if reported some the(-things) with us
νῦν ὄντα ταῦτα ἀντίπαλα ἡμῖν προσιόντα, καὶ πρῶτον
now being these opposing us approaching and first
μὲν ἠκούετε, ἔφη, ὅτι οἱ πρότερον νικήσαντες ἡμᾶς
indeed you-heard he-said that the(-men) formerly having-conquered us
οὗτοι πάλιν ἔρχονται ἔχοντες ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἣν τότε
these again are-coming having in the souls which then
νίκην ἐκτήσαντο· ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τότε ἐκκόψαντες τῶν
victory they-won then and the(-men) then having-cut-off of-the
τοξοτῶν καὶ ἀκοντιστῶν τὰς ἀκροβολίσεις νῦν οὗτοι
archers and javelin-men the skirmishes now these
ἔρχονται καὶ ἄλλοι ὅμοιοι τούτοις πολλαπλάσιοι·
are-coming and others like to-these many-times-as-many
ἔπειτα δὲ ὥσπερ οὗτοι ὁπλισάμενοι τοὺς πεζοὺς τότ᾽ 16
then and as these having-armed-themselves the foot-soldiers then
ἐνίκων, νῦν οὕτω καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς αὐτῶν παρεσκευασμένοι
conquered now so also the horsemen of-them prepared
πρὸς τοὺς ἱππέας προσέρχονται, καὶ τὰ μὲν τόξα καὶ
against the horsemen are-coming and the indeed bows and
ἀκόντια ἀποδεδοκιμάκασι, παλτὸν δὲ ἓν ἰσχυρὸν ἕκαστος
darts they-have-rejected a-javelin and one strong each

λαβὼν προσελαύνειν διανενόηται ὡς ἐκ χειρὸς τὴν
having-taken to-ride-up has-intended as from hand the
μάχην ποιησόμενος·
battle going-to-make

17 ἔτι δὲ ἅρματα ἔρχεται, ἃ οὐχ οὕτως ἑστήξει ὥσπερ
still and chariots are-coming which not so will-stand as
πρόσθεν ἀπεστραμμένα ὡς εἰς φυγήν, ἀλλ' οἵ τε ἵπποι
before turned-away as for flight but the both horses
εἰσὶ κατατεθωρακισμένοι οἱ ἐν τοῖς ἅρμασιν, οἵ τε
are armored the(-ones) in the chariots the both
ἡνίοχοι ὥσπερ ἐν πύργοις ἑστῶσι ξυλίνοις τὰ ὑπερέχοντα
drivers as-if in towers stand wooden the projecting(-parts)
ἅπαντα συνεστεγασμένοι θώραξι καὶ κράνεσι, δρέπανά
all covered with-breastplates and helmets scythes
τε σιδηρᾶ περὶ τοῖς ἄξοσι προσήρμοσται, ὡς ἐλῶντες
and of-iron about the axles have-been-fitted as going-to-drive
καὶ οὗτοι εὐθὺς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν ἐναντίων·
also these straight into the ranks of-the opponents

18 πρὸς δ' ἔτι κάμηλοι εἰσὶν αὐτοῖς ἐφ' ὧν προσελῶσιν,
besides and still camels are for-them on which they-will-ride-up
ὧν μίαν ἑκάστην ἑκατὸν ἵπποι οὐκ ἂν ἀνάσχοιντο
of-which one each a-hundred horses not — would-endure
ἰδόντες· ἔτι δὲ πύργους προσίασιν ἔχοντες ἀφ' ὧν τοῖς
having-seen still and towers they-advance having from which the
μὲν ἑαυτῶν ἀρήξουσιν, ὑμᾶς δὲ βάλλοντες κωλύσουσι
indeed their-own they-will-help you and pelting will-prevent
τοῖς ἐν τῷ ἰσοπέδῳ μάχεσθαι·
with-the(-ones) on the level to-fight

19 εἰ δὴ ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλέ τις ὑμῖν ἐν τοῖς πολεμίοις
if indeed these(-things) reported someone to-you among the enemies
ὄντα, οἱ νῦν φοβούμενοι τί ἂν ἐποιήσατε; ὁπότε
being the(-men) now fearing what — would-you-have-done when

ἀπαγγελλομένων ὑμῖν ὅτι Κροῖσος μὲν ᾕρηται τῶν
it-being-reported to-you that Croesus indeed has-been-chosen of-the
πολεμίων στρατηγός, ὃς τοσούτῳ Σύρων κακίων ἐγένετο
enemies general who by-so-much than-Syrians worse proved
ὅσῳ Σύροι μὲν μάχῃ ἡττηθέντες ἔφυγον, Κροῖσος
by-as-much-as Syrians indeed in-battle having-been-defeated fled Croesus
δὲ ἰδὼν ἡττημένους ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀρήγειν τοῖς
but having-seen(-them) defeated instead-of the to-help the
συμμάχοις φεύγων ᾤχετο·
allies fleeing went-off
ἔπειτα δὲ διαγγέλλεται δήπου ὅτι αὐτοὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι 20
then and is-announced surely that themselves indeed the enemies
οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἡγοῦνται ὑμῖν εἶναι μάχεσθαι, ἄλλους δὲ
not able think for-you to-be to-fight others but
μισθοῦνται, ὡς ἄμεινον μαχουμένους ὑπὲρ σφῶν ἢ
they-hire as better going-to-fight for themselves than
αὐτοί. εἰ μέντοι τισὶ ταῦτα μὲν τοιαῦτα ὄντα δεινὰ
themselves if however to-some these(-things) indeed such being terrible
δοκεῖ εἶναι, τὰ δὲ ἡμέτερα φαῦλα, τούτους ἐγώ φημι
seems to-be the(-things) but our poor these I say
χρῆναι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀφεῖναι εἰς τοὺς ἐναντίους· πολὺ γὰρ
(one)-must O men to-let-go to the opponents much for
ἐκεῖ ὄντες πλείω ἂν ἡμᾶς ἢ παρόντες ὠφελοῖεν.
there being more — us than present they-would-benefit
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀνέστη Χρυσάντας 21
When and these(-things) said — Cyrus stood-up Chrysantas
ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ὦ Κῦρε, μὴ θαύμαζε εἴ
the Persian and spoke thus O Cyrus not wonder if
τινες ἐσκυθρώπασαν ἀκούσαντες τῶν ἀγγελλομένων·
some looked-glum having-heard the(-things) being-reported
οὐ γὰρ φοβηθέντες οὕτω διετέθησαν ἀλλ᾽ ἀχθεσθέντες·
not for having-been-frightened so they-were-disposed but having-been-vexed

ὥσπερ γε, ἔφη, εἴ τινων βουλομένων τε καὶ οἰομένων
as at-least he-said if some wishing both and thinking
ἤδη ἀριστήσειν ἐξαγγελθείη τι ἔργον ὃ ἀνάγκη
already to-breakfast should-be-announced some task which necessity
εἴη πρὸ τοῦ ἀρίστου ἐξεργάσασθαι, οὐδεὶς ἂν οἶμαι
were before the breakfast to-accomplish no-one — I-think
ἡσθείη ἀκούσας· οὕτω τοίνυν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἤδη οἰόμενοι
would-be-pleased having-heard(-it) so then also we already thinking
πλουτήσειν, ἐπεὶ ἠκούσαμεν ὅτι ἐστὶ περίλοιπον ἔργον ὃ
to-be-rich when we-heard that there-is a-remaining task which
δεῖ ἐξεργάσασθαι, συνεσκυθρωπάσαμεν, οὐ φοβούμενοι,
(one)-must to-accomplish looked-glum not fearing
ἀλλὰ πεποιῆσθαι ἂν ἤδη καὶ τοῦτο βουλόμενοι.
but to-have-been-done — already also this wishing
22 ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπειδὴ οὐ περὶ Συρίας μόνον ἀγωνιούμεθα, ὅπου
but for since not about Syria only we-shall-contend where
σῖτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατά ἐστι καὶ φοίνικες οἱ καρποφόροι,
grain much and sheep are and palms the fruit-bearing
ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ Λυδίας, ἔνθα πολὺς μὲν οἶνος, πολλὰ δὲ
but also about Lydia where much indeed wine many and
σῦκα, πολὺ δὲ ἔλαιον, θάλαττα δὲ προσκλύζει καθ' ἣν
figs much and olive-oil sea and washes-against by which
πλείω ἔρχεται ἢ ὅσα τις ἑόρακεν ἀγαθά, ταῦτα,
more comes than as-many-as anyone has-seen good-things these(-things)
ἔφη, ἐννοούμενοι οὐκέτι ἀχθόμεθα, ἀλλὰ θαρροῦμεν ὡς
he-said considering no-longer we-are-vexed but are-confident as
μάλιστα, ἵνα θᾶττον καὶ τούτων τῶν Λυδίων ἀγαθῶν
most so-that sooner also of-these the Lydian good-things
ἀπολαύωμεν. ὃ μὲν οὕτω εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ σύμμαχοι πάντες
we-may-enjoy he indeed so spoke the and allies all
ἥσθησάν τε τῷ λόγῳ καὶ ἐπῄνεσαν.
were-pleased both with-the speech and praised(-it)

Καὶ μὲν δή, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ μοι ἰέναι 23
And indeed then said — Cyrus O men it-seems-best to-me to-go
ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα πρῶτον μὲν αὐτοὺς
against them as quickly-as-possible so-that first indeed them
φθάσωμεν ἀφικόμενοι, ἢν δυνώμεθα, ὅπου τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
we-may-anticipate arriving if we-can where the necessaries
αὐτοῖς συλλέγεται· ἔπειτα δὲ ὅσῳ ἂν θᾶττον ἴωμεν,
for-them are-collected then and by-as-much-as — sooner we-go
τοσούτῳ μείω μὲν τὰ παρόντα εὑρήσομεν αὐτοῖς,
by-so-much less indeed the(-things) present we-shall-find for-them
πλείω δὲ τὰ ἀπόντα.
more and the(-things) absent
ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγω· εἰ δέ τις ἄλλῃ πῃ 24
I indeed then so say if but anyone otherwise in-any-way
γιγνώσκει ἢ ἀσφαλέστερον εἶναι ἢ ῥᾷον ἡμῖν, διδασκέτω.
judges either safer to-be or easier for-us let-him-teach(-us)
ἐπεὶ δὲ συνηγόρευον μὲν πολλοὶ ὡς χρεὼν εἴη ὅτι
when and spoke-in-favor indeed many that needful it-was as
τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀντέλεγε δὲ
quickly-as-possible to-march against the enemies spoke-against and
οὐδείς, ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἤρχετο λόγου τοιοῦδε.
no-one from this indeed — Cyrus began a-speech of-this-sort
Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, αἱ μὲν ψυχαὶ καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ 25
Men allies the indeed souls and the bodies and
τὰ ὅπλα οἷς δεήσει χρῆσθαι ἐκ πολλοῦ ἡμῖν
the arms which it-will-be-necessary to-use from long-ago for-us
σὺν θεῷ παρεσκεύασται· νῦν δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια δεῖ
with god have-been-prepared now and the necessaries (one)-must
εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν συσκευάζεσθαι αὐτοῖς τε ἡμῖν καὶ ὁπόσοις
for the road to-pack ourselves both for-us and for-as-many
τετράποσι χρώμεθα μὴ μεῖον ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμερῶν. ἐγὼ
four-footed(-beasts) we-use not less than twenty days I

γὰρ λογιζόμενος εὑρίσκω πλέον ἢ πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμερῶν
for reckoning find more than fifteen days
ἐσομένην ὁδόν, ἐν ᾗ οὐδὲν εὑρήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων·
going-to-be road in which nothing we-shall-find of-the necessaries
ἀνεσκεύασται γὰρ τὰ μὲν ὑφ' ἡμῶν, τὰ δ' ὑπὸ
has-been-cleared-away for the(-part) indeed by us the(-part) and by
τῶν πολεμίων ὅσα ἐδύναντο.
the enemies as-much-as they-could

26 συσκευάζεσθαι οὖν χρὴ σῖτον μὲν ἱκανόν· ἄνευ γὰρ
to-pack then (one)-must grain indeed sufficient without for
τούτου οὔτε μάχεσθαι οὔτε ζῆν δυναίμεθ' ἄν· οἶνον δὲ
this neither to-fight nor to-live we-could — wine and
τοσοῦτον ἕκαστον ἔχειν χρὴ ὅσος ἱκανὸς ἔσται ἐθίσαι
so-much each to-have must as-much-as sufficient will-be to-accustom
ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ὑδροποτεῖν· πολλὴ γὰρ ἔσται τῆς ὁδοῦ ἄοινος,
us ourselves to-drink-water much for will-be of-the road wineless
εἰς ἣν οὐδ' ἂν πάνυ πολὺν οἶνον συσκευασώμεθα, διαρκέσει.
for which not-even if very much wine we-pack it-will-suffice

27 ὡς οὖν μὴ ἐξαπίνης ἄοινοι γενόμενοι νοσήμασι
so-that then not suddenly wineless having-become into-diseases
περιπίπτωμεν, ὧδε χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ σίτῳ εὐθὺς
we-may-fall thus (one)-must to-do with indeed the food at-once
ἀρχώμεθα πίνειν ὕδωρ· τοῦτο γὰρ ἤδη ποιοῦντες οὐ
let-us-begin to-drink water this for already doing not
πολὺ μεταβαλοῦμεν.
much we-shall-change

28 καὶ γὰρ ὅστις ἀλφιτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι μεμαγμένην ἀεὶ τὴν
and for whoever eats-barley-bread with-water kneaded always the
μᾶζαν ἐσθίει, καὶ ὅστις ἀρτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι δεδευμένον
barley-cake eats and whoever eats-wheat-bread with-water moistened
τὸν ἄρτον, καὶ τὰ ἑφθὰ δὲ πάντα μεθ' ὕδατος
the bread and the boiled(-foods) and all with water

τοῦ πλείστου ἐσκεύασται. μετὰ δὲ τὸν σῖτον ἐὰν οἶνον
the most is-prepared after and the food if wine
ἐπιπίνωμεν, οὐδὲν μεῖον ἔχουσα ἡ ψυχὴ ἀναπαύσεται.
we-drink-after nothing less having the soul will-rest
ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τοῦ μετὰ δεῖπνον ὑφαιρεῖν χρή, ἕως 29
then and also of-the after dinner to-take-away (one)-must until
ἂν λάθωμεν ὑδροπόται γενόμενοι. ἡ γὰρ κατὰ μικρὸν
— we-escape-notice water-drinkers having-become the for by little
παράλλαξις πᾶσαν ποιεῖ φύσιν ὑποφέρειν τὰς μεταβολάς·
change every makes nature to-endure the changes
διδάσκει δὲ καὶ ὁ θεός, ἀπάγων ἡμᾶς κατὰ μικρὸν ἔκ τε
teaches and also the god leading-away us by little from both
τοῦ χειμῶνος εἰς τὸ ἀνέχεσθαι ἰσχυρὰ θάλπη ἔκ τε τοῦ
the winter to the to-endure strong heats from both the
θάλπους εἰς τὸν ἰσχυρὸν χειμῶνα· ὃν χρὴ μιμουμένους εἰς
heat into the strong winter whom must imitating to
ὃ δεῖ ἐλθεῖν προειθισμένους ἡμᾶς ἀφικνεῖσθαι.
where (one)-must to-come having-been-accustomed-beforehand us to-arrive
καὶ τὸ τῶν στρωμάτων δὲ βάρος εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια 30
and the of-the bedding and weight into the necessaries
καταδαπανᾶτε· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια περιττεύοντα οὐκ
spend the indeed for necessaries being-in-excess not
ἄχρηστα ἔσται· στρωμάτων δὲ ἐνδεηθέντες μὴ δείσητε
useless will-be of-bedding but lacking not fear
ὡς οὐχ ἡδέως καθευδήσετε· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐμὲ αἰτιᾶσθε. ἐσθῆς
that not pleasantly you-will-sleep if but not me blame clothing
μέντοι ὅτῳ ἐστὶν ἀφθονωτέρα παροῦσα, πολλὰ καὶ
however to-whom is more-abundant being-there much both
ὑγιαίοντι καὶ κάμνοντι ἐπικουρεῖ.
the(-man)-in-health and the(-man)-ill helps

31 ὄψα δὲ χρὴ συνεσκευάσθαι ὅσα ἐστὶν ὀξέα καὶ
relishes and (one)-must to-have-packed as-many-as are sharp and
δριμέα καὶ ἁλμυρά· ταῦτα γὰρ ἐπὶ σῖτόν τε ἄγει καὶ
pungent and salty these for to food both lead and
ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἀρκεῖ. ὅταν δ' ἐκβαίνωμεν εἰς ἀκέραια,
for longest suffice when and we-come-out into untouched(-land)
ὅπου ἤδη εἰκὸς ἡμᾶς σῖτον λαμβάνειν, χειρομύλας χρὴ
where already likely us grain to-take hand-mills (one)-must
αὐτόθεν παρασκευάσασθαι αἷς σιτοποιησόμεθα· τοῦτο
from-here to-prepare with-which we-shall-make-bread this
γὰρ κουφότατον τῶν σιτοποικῶν ὀργάνων.
for lightest of-the bread-making implements
32 συνεσκευάσθαι δὲ χρὴ καὶ ὧν ἀσθενοῦντες δέονται
to-have-packed and (one)-must also what being-ill need
ἄνθρωποι· τούτων γὰρ ὁ μὲν ὄγκος μικρότατος, ἢν δὲ τύχη
men of-these for the indeed bulk smallest if and fortune
τοιαύτη γένηται, μάλιστα δεήσει. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ
such happens most it-will-be-necessary to-have and (one)-must also
ἱμάντας· τὰ γὰρ πλεῖστα καὶ ἀνθρώποις καὶ ἵπποις ἱμᾶσιν
straps the for most-things both for-men and for-horses on-straps
ἤρτηται· ὧν κατατριβομένων καὶ ῥηγνυμένων ἀνάγκη
hang which wearing-out and breaking necessity(-is)
ἀργεῖν, ἢν μή τις ἔχῃ περίζυγα. ὅστις δὲ πεπαίδευται
to-be-idle if not anyone has spare(-ones) whoever and has-been-taught
καὶ παλτὸν ξύσασθαι, ἀγαθὸν καὶ ξυήλης μὴ ἐπιλαθέσθαι.
also a-javelin to-shave good also of-a-plane not to-forget
33 ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ ῥίνην φέρεσθαι· ὁ γὰρ λόγχην ἀκονῶν
good and also a-file to-carry the(-man) for a-spear-point sharpening
ἐκεῖνος καὶ τὴν ψυχήν τι παρακονᾷ. ἔπεστι γάρ τις
he also the soul somewhat sharpens is-upon(-him) for some
αἰσχύνη λόγχην ἀκονῶντα κακὸν εἶναι. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ
shame a-spear-point sharpening a-coward to-be to-have and (one)-must

καὶ ξύλα περίπλεω καὶ ἅρμασι καὶ ἁμάξαις· ἐν γὰρ πολλαῖς
also timbers spare both for-chariots and for-wagons in for many
πράξεσι πολλὰ ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰ ἀπαγορεύοντα εἶναι.
actions many necessity(-is) also the(-things) failing to-be
ἔχειν δὲ δεῖ καὶ τὰ ἀναγκαιότατα ὄργανα ἐπὶ ταῦτα 34
to-have and (one)-must also the most-necessary tools for these
πάντα· οὐ γὰρ πανταχοῦ χειροτέχναι παραγίγνονται·
all not for everywhere craftsmen are-at-hand
τὸ δ' ἐφ' ἡμέραν ἀρκέσον ὀλίγοι τινὲς οἳ οὐχ ἱκανοὶ
the and for a-day sufficing few some who not able
ποιῆσαι. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ ἄμην καὶ σμινύην κατὰ
to-make to-have and (one)-must also a-shovel and a-mattock by
ἅμαξαν ἑκάστην, καὶ κατὰ τὸν νωτοφόρον δὲ ἀξίνην
wagon each and by the pack-beast and an-axe
καὶ δρέπανον· ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἑκάστῳ χρήσιμα καὶ
and a-sickle these for both privately for-each useful and
ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ πολλάκις ὠφέλιμα γίγνεται.
for the common often beneficial become
τὰ μὲν οὖν εἰς τροφὴν δέοντα οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν 35
the(-things) indeed then for food needed the leaders of-the
ὁπλοφόρων ἐξετάζετε τοὺς ὑφ' ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς· οὐ γὰρ
arms-bearers examine the(-men) under you yourselves not for
δεῖ παριέναι ὅτου ἄν τις τούτων ἐνδέηται· ἡμεῖς γὰρ
(one)-must to-overlook whatever — anyone of-these lacks we for
τούτων ἐνδεεῖς ἐσόμεθα. ἃ δὲ κατὰ τὰ ὑποζύγια κελεύω
of-these lacking shall-be what and by the pack-animals I-bid
ἔχειν, ὑμεῖς οἱ τῶν σκευοφόρων ἄρχοντες ἐξετάζετε, καὶ
to-have you the of-the baggage-carriers commanders examine and
τὸν μὴ ἔχοντα κατασκευάζεσθαι ἀναγκάζετε.
the(-man) not having to-equip-himself compel

36 ὑμεῖς δ᾽ αὖ οἱ τῶν ὁδοποιῶν ἄρχοντες ἔχετε μὲν
you and in-turn the of-the road-makers commanders have indeed
ἀπογεγραμμένους παρ᾽ ἐμοῦ τοὺς ἀποδεδοκιμασμένους καὶ
listed by me the(-men) rejected both
τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν τοξοτῶν καὶ
the(-ones) from the javelin-men and the(-ones) from the archers and
τοὺς ἐκ τῶν σφενδονητῶν· τούτων δὲ χρὴ τοὺς μὲν
the(-ones) from the slingers of-these and (one)-must the(-ones) indeed
ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν πέλεκυν ἔχοντας ξυλοκόπον ἀναγκάζειν
from the javelin-men an-axe having wood-cutting to-compel
στρατεύεσθαι, τοὺς δ᾽ ἀπὸ τῶν τοξοτῶν σμινύην, τοὺς
to-campaign the(-ones) and from the archers a-mattock the(-ones)
δ᾽ ἀπὸ τῶν σφενδονητῶν ἄμην· τούτους δὲ ἔχοντας ταῦτα
and from the slingers a-shovel these and having these(-things)
πρὸ τῶν ἁμαξῶν κατ᾽ ἴλας πορεύεσθαι, ὅπως ἤν τι δέῃ
before the wagons by squads to-march so-that if any be-needed
ὁδοποιίας, εὐθὺς ἐνεργοὶ ἦτε, καὶ ἐγὼ ἤν τι δέωμαι,
of-road-making at-once active you-may-be and I if anything I-need
ὅπως εἰδῶ ὅθεν δεῖ λαβόντα τούτοις χρῆσθαι.
that I-may-know from-where (one)-must having-taken these to-use
37 ἄξω δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ στρατιωτικῇ ἡλικίᾳ σὺν τοῖς
I-shall-lead and also the(-men) in the military age with the
ὀργάνοις χαλκέας τε καὶ τέκτονας καὶ σκυτοτόμους, ὅπως
tools smiths both and carpenters and leather-cutters so-that
ἄν τι δέῃ καὶ τοιούτων τεχνῶν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ,
if anything be-needed also of-such crafts in the army
μηδὲν ἐλλείπηται. οὗτοι δὲ ὁπλοφόρου μὲν τάξεως
nothing be-lacking these and arms-bearing indeed rank
ἀπολελύσονται, ἃ δὲ ἐπίστανται, τῷ βουλομένῳ
will-be-released what and they-know for-the(-man) wishing
μισθοῦ ὑπηρετοῦντες ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἔσονται.
for-pay serving in the appointed(-place) they-will-be

ἢν δέ τις καὶ ἔμπορος βούληται ἕπεσθαι πωλεῖν τι 38
if and any also merchant wishes to-follow to-sell something
βουλόμενος, τῶν μὲν προειρημένων ἡμερῶν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
wishing of-the indeed foretold days the necessaries
ἔχειν ἤν τι πωλῶν ἁλίσκηται, πάντων στερήσεται·
to-have if anything selling he-be-caught of-all he-will-be-deprived
ἐπειδὰν δ' αὗται παρέλθωσιν αἱ ἡμέραι, πωλήσει ὅπως
when and these pass-by the days he-will-sell as
ἂν βούληται. ὅστις δ' ἂν τῶν ἐμπόρων πλείστην ἀγορὰν
— he-wishes whoever and — of-the merchants most market
παρέχων φαίνηται, οὗτος καὶ παρὰ τῶν συμμάχων καὶ
providing appears this(-man) both from the allies and
παρ' ἐμοῦ δώρων καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεται.
from me of-gifts and honor will-obtain
εἰ δέ τις χρημάτων προσδεῖσθαι νομίζει εἰς ἐμπολήν, 39
if and anyone money to-need-besides thinks for trade
γνωστῆρας ἐμοὶ προσαγαγὼν καὶ ἐγγυητὰς ἢ μὴν
sureties to-me having-brought and guarantors truly indeed
πορεύσεσθαι σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ, λαμβανέτω ὧν ἡμεῖς
to-march with the army let-him-take of-what we
ἔχομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα προαγορεύω· εἰ δέ τίς
have I indeed then these(-things) proclaim if and anyone
τι καὶ ἄλλο δέον ἐνορᾷ, πρὸς ἐμὲ σημαινέτω.
anything also else needful sees-in(-it) to me let-him-signal
καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν ἀπιόντες συσκευάζεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ θύσομαι ἐπὶ τῇ 40
and you indeed going-away pack-up I and shall-sacrifice for the
ὁρμῇ· ὅταν δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς ἔχῃ, σημανοῦμεν.
setting-out when and the(-things) of-the gods well be we-shall-signal
παρεῖναι δὲ χρὴ ἅπαντας τὰ προειρημένα ἔχοντας
to-be-present and must all the(-things) foretold having
εἰς τὴν τεταγμένην ὥραν πρὸς τοὺς ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν.
at the appointed hour to the leaders of-them

41 ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος τάξιν
you and the leaders the of-himself each company
εὐτρεπισάμενος πρὸς ἐμὲ πάντες συμβάλλετε, ἵνα τὰς
having-put-in-order to me all assemble so-that the
ἑαυτῶν ἕκαστοι χώρας καταμάθητε.
their-own each places you-may-learn

III · THE ORDER OF BATTLE

Cyrus marches with Cyaxares guarding Media behind him. Captured foragers tell him the enemy is two parasangs away. Araspas returns from the enemy and is honored; he reports that the enemy is drawn up thirty deep across forty stades, the Egyptians a hundred deep, and that they mean to outflank him. Cyrus draws up his line twelve deep, with javelin men and archers behind the breastplated front and picked men at the rear, sets the towers, baggage, and wagons behind, and stations the reserves. Abradatas volunteers for the place facing the Egyptians, and when the Persian chariot leaders will not yield it, he wins it by lot.

1 ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ μὲν συνεσκευάζοντο, ὁ δὲ
having-heard and these(-things) they indeed packed-up — and
Κῦρος ἐθύετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν, ὡρμᾶτο
Cyrus sacrificed when and favorable the sacrifices were he-set-out
σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
with the army and on-the indeed first day
ἐξεστρατοπεδεύσατο ὡς δυνατὸν ἐγγύτατα, ὅπως εἴ τίς
encamped as possible nearest so-that if anyone
τι ἐπιλελησμένος εἴη, μετέλθοι, καὶ εἴ τίς
anything having-forgotten were he-might-go-back-for(-it) and if anyone
τι ἐνδεόμενος γνοίη, τοῦτο ἐπιπαρασκευάσαιτο.
anything lacking should-recognize this he-might-provide-besides

Κυαξάρης μὲν οὖν τῶν Μήδων ἔχων τὸ τρίτον μέρος 2
Cyaxares indeed then of-the Medes having the third part
κατέμενεν, ὡς μηδὲ τὰ οἴκοι ἔρημα εἴη. ὁ δὲ
stayed-behind so-that not-even the(-things) at-home deserted might-be — and
Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, τοὺς ἱππέας μὲν
Cyrus marched as he-could quickest the horsemen indeed
πρώτους ἔχων, καὶ πρὸ τούτων διερευνητὰς καὶ σκοποὺς
first having and before these scouts and lookouts
αἰεὶ ἀναβιβάζων ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσθεν εὐσκοπώτατα· μετὰ
always sending-up to the(-places) in-front with-best-view after
δὲ τούτους ἦγε τὰ σκευοφόρα, ὅπου μὲν πεδινὸν εἴη,
and these he-led the baggage where indeed level it-was
πολλοὺς ὁρμαθοὺς ποιούμενος τῶν ἁμαξῶν καὶ τῶν
many strings making of-the wagons and of-the
σκευοφόρων· ὄπισθεν δὲ ἡ φάλαγξ ἐφεπομένη, εἴ τι
baggage-animals behind and the phalanx following if anything
τῶν σκευοφόρων ὑπολείποιτο, οἱ προστυγχάνοντες
of-the baggage were-left-behind the(-ones) meeting(-it)
τῶν ἀρχόντων ἐπεμέλοντο ὡς μὴ κωλύοιντο πορεύεσθαι.
of-the commanders took-care that not they-be-hindered to-march
ὅπου δὲ στενοτέρα εἴη ἡ ὁδός, διὰ μέσου ποιούμενοι τὰ 3
where and narrower was the road through middle making the
σκευοφόρα ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ὁπλοφόροι·
baggage on-this-side and on-that-side marched the arms-bearers
καὶ εἴ τι ἐμποδίζοι, οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα ἀεὶ
and if anything hindered the(-men) at these(-points) always
γιγνόμενοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπεμέλοντο. ἐπορεύοντο δὲ ὡς
being of-the soldiers took-care marched and as
τὰ πολλὰ αἱ τάξεις παρ᾽ ἑαυταῖς ἔχουσαι τὰ σκευοφόρα·
the most(-part) the companies beside themselves having the baggage

ἐπετέτακτο γὰρ πᾶσι τοῖς σκευοφόροις κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτῶν
it-had-been-ordered for to-all the baggage-carriers by the their-own
ἑκάστους τάξιν ἰέναι, εἰ μή τι ἀναγκαῖον ἀποκωλύοι.
each company to-go if not anything necessary should-prevent
4 καὶ σημεῖον δὲ ἔχων ὁ τοῦ ταξιάρχου σκευοφόρος ἡγεῖτο
and a-standard and having the of-the taxiarch baggage-carrier led
γνωστὸν τοῖς τῆς ἑαυτοῦ τάξεως· ὥσθ' ἁθρόοι τε
known to-the(-men) of-the his-own company so-that in-a-body both
ἐπορεύοντο ἐπεμελοῦντό τε ἰσχυρῶς ἕκαστος τῶν
they-marched took-care and strongly each of-the(-things)
ἑαυτοῦ ὡς μὴ ὑπολείποιντο. καὶ οὕτω ποιούντων οὔτε ζητεῖν
his-own that not they-be-left-behind and so doing neither to-seek
ἔδει ἀλλήλους ἅμα τε παρόντα ἅπαντα καὶ
it-was-needful one-another at-the-same-time and present all and
σωότερα ἦν καὶ θᾶττον τὰ δέοντα εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται.
safer were and sooner the needful(-things) had the soldiers
5 Ὡς δὲ οἱ προϊόντες σκοποὶ ἔδοξαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὁρᾶν
When and the advancing lookouts seemed in the plain to-see
ἀνθρώπους λαμβάνοντας καὶ χιλὸν καὶ ξύλα, καὶ ὑποζύγια
men taking both fodder and wood and pack-animals
δὲ ἑώρων ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ἄγοντα, τὰ δὲ καὶ νεμόμενα,
and they-saw other such(-things) carrying the(-ones) and also grazing
καὶ τὰ πρόσω αὖ ἀφορῶντες ἐδόκουν καταμανθάνειν
and the(-things) beyond again looking-at they-seemed to-make-out
μετεωριζόμενον καπνὸν ἢ κονιορτόν, ἐκ τούτων πάντων
rising smoke or dust from these all
σχεδὸν ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι εἴη που πλησίον τὸ στράτευμα
nearly they-recognized that was somewhere near the army
τῶν πολεμίων.
of-the enemies

εὐθὺς οὖν πέμπει τινὰ ὁ σκόπαρχος ἀγγελοῦντα ταῦτα 6
at-once then sends someone the chief-of-lookouts going-to-report these(-things)
τῷ Κύρῳ. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐκείνους μὲν ἐκέλευσε
— to-Cyrus he and having-heard these(-things) them indeed ordered
μένοντας ἐπὶ ταύταις ταῖς σκοπαῖς ὅ τι ἂν ἀεὶ καινὸν
staying on these the lookouts what ever — always new
ὁρῶσιν ἐξαγγέλλειν· τάξιν δ' ἔπεμψεν ἱππέων εἰς τὸ
they-see to-report a-company and he-sent of-horsemen to the
πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκέλευσε πειραθῆναι συλλαβεῖν τινας τῶν ἀνὰ τὸ
front and ordered to-try to-seize some of-the over the
πεδίον ἀνθρώπων, ὅπως σαφέστερον μάθοιεν τὸ ὄν.
plain men so-that more-clearly they-might-learn the being(-fact)
οἱ μὲν δὴ ταχθέντες τοῦτο ἔπραττον. αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ 7
the(-ones) indeed then having-been-posted this did himself and the
ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτοῦ κατεχώριζεν, ὅπως παρασκευάσαιντο
other army there stationed so-that they-might-prepare
ὅσα ᾤετο χρῆναι πρὶν πάνυ ὁμοῦ εἶναι. καὶ πρῶτον
what he-thought (one)-must before quite together to-be and first
μὲν ἀριστᾶν παρηγγύησεν, ἔπειτα δὲ μένοντας ἐν ταῖς
indeed to-breakfast he-passed-the-word then and staying in the
τάξεσι τὸ παραγγελλόμενον περιμένειν·
ranks the(-thing) being-ordered to-await
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠρίστησαν, συνεκάλεσε καὶ ἱππέων καὶ πεζῶν 8
when and they-had-breakfasted he-called-together both of-horsemen and of-foot-soldiers
καὶ ἁρμάτων τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, καὶ τῶν μηχανῶν δὲ καὶ
and of-chariots the leaders and of-the engines and and
τῶν σκευοφόρων τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ τῶν ἁρμαμαξῶν· καὶ
of-the baggage the commanders and of-the carriages and
οὗτοι μὲν συνῆσαν.
these indeed came-together

9 οἱ δὲ καταδραμόντες εἰς τὸ πεδίον συλλαβόντες
the(-men) and having-raided into the plain having-seized
ἀνθρώπους ἤγαγον· οἱ δὲ ληφθέντες ἀνερωτώμενοι
men brought(-them) the(-men) and captured being-questioned
ὑπὸ τοῦ Κύρου ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἶεν,
by — Cyrus said that from the camp they-were
προεληλυθότες ἐπὶ χιλόν, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ ξύλα, παρελθόντες
having-come-out for fodder others and for wood having-passed
τὰς προφυλακάς· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ
the outposts because-of for the multitude of-the army
σπάνια πάντ' εἶναι.
scarce all-things to-be

10 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἀκούσας, Πόσον, ἔφη, ἄπεστιν
and — Cyrus these(-things) having-heard How-far he-said is-distant
ἐνθένδε τὸ στράτευμα; οἱ δ' ἔλεγον, Ὡς δύο παρασάγγας.
from-here the army they and said About two parasangs
ἐπὶ τούτοις ἤρετο ὁ Κῦρος, Ἡμῶν δ', ἔφη, λόγος τις
upon these asked — Cyrus Of-us and he-said talk some
ἦν παρ' αὐτοῖς; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφασαν, καὶ πολύς γε
was among them Yes by Zeus they-said and much at-least
ὡς ἐγγὺς ἤδη εἶτε προσιόντες. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,
that near already you-were approaching What then said — Cyrus
ἦ καὶ ἔχαιρον ἀκούοντες; τοῦτο δὲ ἐπήρετο τῶν
truly also were-they-glad hearing(-it) this and he-asked of-the(-men)
παρόντων ἕνεκα. Οὐ μὰ Δί', εἶπον ἐκεῖνοι, οὐ μὲν δὴ
present for-the-sake Not by Zeus said they not indeed then
ἔχαιρον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάλα ἠνιῶντο.
they-were-glad but even very were-grieved

11 Νῦν δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τί ποιοῦσιν; Ἐκτάττονται, ἔφασαν·
Now and said — Cyrus what are-they-doing They-are-drawing-up they-said
καὶ ἐχθὲς δὲ καὶ τρίτην ἡμέραν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔπραττον.
and yesterday and and the-third day the same this they-did

Ὁ δὲ τάττων, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τίς ἐστιν; οἳ δὲ
The(-man) and drawing(-them)-up said — Cyrus who is they and
ἔφασαν, Αὐτός τε Κροῖσος καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἕλλην τις
said Himself both Croesus and with him Greek some
ἀνήρ, καὶ ἄλλος δέ τις Μῆδος· οὗτος μέντοι ἐλέγετο
a-man and another and some Mede this(-one) however was-said
φυγὰς εἶναι παρ' ὑμῶν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ
an-exile to-be from you and — Cyrus said But O Zeus
μέγιστε, λαβεῖν μοι γένοιτο αὐτὸν ὡς ἐγὼ βούλομαι.
greatest to-take to-me may-it-be-granted him as I wish
Ἐκ τούτου τοὺς μὲν αἰχμαλώτους ἀπάγειν ἐκέλευσεν, 12
From this the indeed captives to-lead-away he-ordered
εἰς δὲ τοὺς παρόντας ὡς λέξων τι ἀνήγετο. ἐν
to and the(-men) present as going-to-say something he-was-rising in
τούτῳ δὲ παρῆν ἄλλος αὖ ἀπὸ τοῦ σκοπάρχου, λέγων
this and was-present another again from the chief-of-lookouts saying
ὅτι ἱππέων τάξις μεγάλη ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ προφαίνοιτο· καὶ
that of-horsemen a-company great in the plain was-appearing and
ἡμεῖς μέν, ἔφη, εἰκάζομεν ἐλαύνειν αὐτοὺς βουλομένους
we indeed he-said guess to-ride them wishing
ἰδεῖν τόδε τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ γὰρ πρὸ τῆς τάξεως ταύτης
to-see this the army and for before the company this
ἄλλοι ὡς τριάκοντα ἱππεῖς συχνὸν προελαύνουσι, καὶ
others about thirty horsemen far ride-ahead and
μέντοι, ἔφη, κατ' αὐτοὺς ἡμᾶς, ἴσως βουλόμενοι λαβεῖν,
however he-said against very us perhaps wishing to-take
ἢν δύνωνται, τὴν σκοπήν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐσμὲν μία δεκὰς
if they-can the lookout we and are one ten
οἱ ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς σκοπῆς.
the(-men) on this the lookout

13 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσε τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἀεὶ ὄντων
and — Cyrus ordered of-the(-men) about him always being
ἱππέων ἐλάσαντας ὑπὸ τὴν σκοπὴν ἀδήλους τοῖς πολεμίοις
horsemen having-ridden under the lookout unseen by-the enemies
ἀτρεμίαν ἔχειν. Ὅταν δ', ἔφη, ἡ δεκὰς ἡ ἡμετέρα λείπῃ
stillness to-keep When and he-said the ten the our leaves
τὴν σκοπήν, ἐξαναστάντες ἐπίθεσθε τοῖς ἀναβαίνουσιν
the lookout having-sprung-up attack the(-men) climbing
ἐπὶ τὴν σκοπήν. ὡς δὲ ὑμᾶς μὴ λυπῶσιν οἱ ἀπὸ
onto the lookout so-that and you not may-harm the(-men) from
τῆς μεγάλης τάξεως, ἀντέξελθε σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑστάσπα,
the great company go-out-against(-them) you he-said O Hystaspas
τὴν χιλιοστὺν τῶν ἱππέων λαβὼν καὶ ἐπιφάνηθι ἐναντίος
the thousand of-the horsemen having-taken and show-yourself opposite
τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. διώξῃς δὲ μηδαμῇ εἰς ἀφανές,
to-the of-the enemies company pursue but nowhere into unseen(-ground)
ἀλλ' ὅπως αἱ σκοπαί σοι διαμένωσιν ἐπιμεληθεὶς πάριθι.
but so-that the lookouts for-you remain having-taken-care come-back
ἢν δ' ἄρα ἀνατείναντές τινες τὰς δεξιὰς προσελαύνωσιν
if and after-all having-raised some the right-hands ride-up
ὑμῖν, δέχεσθε φιλίως τοὺς ἄνδρας.
to-you receive in-a-friendly-way the men

14 Ὁ μὲν δὴ Ὑστάσπας ἀπιὼν ὡπλίζετο· οἱ δ' ὑπηρέται
— indeed then Hystaspas going-away armed-himself the and attendants
ἤλαυνον εὐθὺς ὡς ἐκέλευσεν. ἀπαντᾷ δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ δὴ
rode at-once as he-ordered meets and them and indeed
ἐντὸς τῶν σκοπῶν σὺν τοῖς θεράπουσιν ὁ πεμφθεὶς
within the lookouts with the servants the(-man) sent
πάλαι κατάσκοπος, ὁ φύλαξ τῆς Σουσίδος γυναικός.
long-ago as-spy the guardian of-the Susian woman

ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος ὡς ἤκουσεν, ἀναπηδήσας ἐκ τῆς ἕδρας 15
— *indeed then Cyrus when he-heard having-leapt-up from the seat*
ὑπήντα τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἐδεξιοῦτο· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ὥσπερ εἰκὸς
met both him and greeted(-him) the and others as likely
μηδὲν εἰδότας ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν τῷ πράγματι, ἕως
nothing knowing astonished were at-the matter until
Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἥκει ἡμῖν ἀνὴρ ἄριστος. νῦν
Cyrus said Men friends has-come to-us a-man most-excellent now
γὰρ ἤδη πάντας ἀνθρώπους δεῖ εἰδέναι τὰ τούτου ἔργα.
for already all men must to-know the of-this(-man) deeds
οὗτος οὔτε αἰσχροῦ ἡττηθεὶς οὐδενὸς ᾤχετο οὔτ᾽
this(-man) neither by-shameful(-thing) having-been-overcome by-any went nor
ἐμὲ φοβηθείς, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπ᾽ ἐμοῦ πεμφθεὶς ὅπως ἡμῖν μαθὼν
me fearing but by me having-been-sent so-that to-us having-learned
τὰ τῶν πολεμίων σαφῶς τὰ ὄντα ἐξαγγείλειεν.
the(-things) of-the enemies clearly the facts he-might-report
ἃ μὲν οὖν ἐγώ σοι ὑπεσχόμην, ὦ Ἀράσπα, μέμνημαί 16
what indeed then I to-you promised O Araspas I-remember
τε καὶ ἀποδώσω σὺν τούτοις πᾶσι. δίκαιον δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς
both and I-shall-repay with these all just(-it-is) and also you
ἅπαντας, ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτον τιμᾶν ὡς ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα·
all O men this(-man) to-honor as a-good man
ἐπὶ γὰρ τῷ ἡμετέρῳ ἀγαθῷ καὶ ἐκινδύνευσε καὶ
on-behalf-of for the our good both he-ran-risk and
αἰτίαν ὑπέσχεν, ᾗ ἐβαρύνετο.
blame he-endured by-which he-was-burdened
ἐκ τούτου δὴ πάντες ἠσπάζοντο τὸν Ἀράσπαν καὶ 17
from this indeed all greeted — Araspas and
ἐδεξιοῦντο. εἰπόντος δὲ Κύρου ὅτι τούτων μὲν τοίνυν
gave-him-their-right-hands having-said and Cyrus that of-these indeed then
εἴη ἅλις, Ἃ δὲ καιρὸς ἡμῖν εἰδέναι, ταῦτ᾽, ἔφη,
there-was enough What and the-time for-us to-know these(-things) he-said

διηγοῦ, ὦ Ἀράσπα· καὶ μηδὲν ἐλάττου τοῦ ἀληθοῦς μηδὲ
relate O Araspas and nothing lessen of-the truth nor
μείου τὰ τῶν πολεμίων. κρεῖττον γὰρ μείζω οἰηθέντας
diminish the(-things) of-the enemies better for greater having-thought
μείονα ἰδεῖν ἢ μείω ἀκούσαντας ἰσχυρότερα εὑρίσκειν.
smaller to-see than smaller having-heard stronger to-find
18 Καὶ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, ὡς ἂν ἀσφαλέστατά
And truly said — Araspas that — most-safely
γε εἰδείην ὁπόσον τὸ στράτευμά ἐστιν ἐποίουν·
at-least I-might-know how-great the army is I-acted
συνεξέταττον γὰρ παρὼν αὐτός. Σὺ μὲν ἄρα, ἔφη
I-helped-draw-up(-them) for being-present myself You indeed then said
ὁ Κῦρος, οὐ τὸ πλῆθος μόνον οἶσθα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν
— Cyrus not the number only know but also the
τάξιν αὐτῶν. Ἐγὼ μὲν ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας,
order of-them I indeed yes by Zeus said — Araspas
καὶ ὡς διανοοῦνται τὴν μάχην ποιεῖσθαι. Ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως, ἔφη
and how they-intend the battle to-make But yet said
ὁ Κῦρος, τὸ πλῆθος ἡμῖν πρῶτον εἰπὲ ἐν κεφαλαίῳ.
— Cyrus the number to-us first tell in sum
19 Ἐκεῖνοι τοίνυν, ἔφη, πάντες τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τριάκοντα
They then he-said all drawn-up at thirty
τὸ βάθος καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἱππεῖς πλὴν τῶν Αἰγυπτίων
the depth both foot and horse except the Egyptians
ἐπέχουσιν ἀμφὶ τὰ τετταράκοντα στάδια· πάνυ γάρ μοι,
extend about the forty stades very for to-me
ἔφη, ἐμέλησεν ὥστε εἰδέναι ὁπόσον κατεῖχον χωρίον.
he-said it-was-a-concern so-as to-know how-much they-held ground
20 Οἱ δ᾽ Αἰγύπτιοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, πῶς εἰσι τεταγμένοι;
The and Egyptians said — Cyrus how are-they drawn-up
ὅτι εἶπας Πλὴν τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. Τούτους δὲ οἱ μυρίαρχοι
since you-said Except the Egyptians These and the myriarchs

ἔταττον εἰς ἑκατὸν πανταχῇ τὴν μυριοστὺν ἑκάστην·
drew-up at a-hundred every-way the ten-thousand each
τοῦτον γὰρ σφίσι καὶ οἴκοι νόμον ἔφασιν εἶναι τῶν
this for for-them also at-home custom they-say to-be of-the
τάξεων. καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος μέντοι μάλα ἄκων συνεχώρησεν
formations and — Croesus however very unwillingly allowed
αὐτοῖς οὕτω τάττεσθαι· ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὅτι πλεῖστον
them so to-be-drawn-up he-wished for as most
ὑπερφαλαγγῆσαι τοῦ σοῦ στρατεύματος. Πρὸς τί δή,
to-outflank the your army For what then
ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τοῦτο ἐπιθυμῶν; Ὡς ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη,
said — Cyrus this desiring So-that yes by Zeus he-said
τῷ περιττῷ κυκλωσόμενος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ᾽
with-the excess going-to-encircle(-you) and — Cyrus said But
οὔτοι ἂν εἰδεῖεν εἰ οἱ κυκλούμενοι κυκλωθεῖεν.
surely-not — they-would-know if the encirclers should-be-encircled
ἀλλ᾽ ἃ μὲν καιρὸς παρὰ σοῦ μαθεῖν, ἀκηκόαμεν· ὑμᾶς 21
but what indeed the-time from you to-learn we-have-heard you
δὲ χρή, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὕτω ποιεῖν· νῦν μὲν ἐπειδὰν ἐνθένδε
and must O men so to-do now indeed when from-here
ἀπέλθητε, ἐπισκέψασθε καὶ τὰ τῶν ἵππων καὶ τὰ ὑμῶν
you-go-away look-over both the(-things) of-the horses and the of-you
αὐτῶν ὅπλα· πολλάκις γὰρ μικροῦ ἐνδείᾳ καὶ ἀνὴρ καὶ
yourselves arms often for of-small(-thing) by-lack both man and
ἵππος καὶ ἅρμα ἀχρεῖον γίγνεται· αὔριον δὲ πρῴ, ἕως ἂν
horse and chariot useless becomes tomorrow and early while —
ἐγὼ θύωμαι, πρῶτον μὲν χρὴ ἀριστῆσαι καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ
I am-sacrificing first indeed must to-breakfast both men and
ἵππους, ὅπως ὅ τι ἂν πράττειν ἀεὶ καιρὸς ᾖ μὴ τούτου
horses so-that what ever — to-do always the-time be not this
ἡμῖν ἐνδέῃ· ἔπειτα δὲ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρσάμα, ***, τὸ δεξιὸν
for-us be-lacking then and you he-said O Arsamas (lacuna) the right

κέρας ἔχε ὥσπερ καὶ ἔχεις, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι μυρίαρχοι ἧπερ
wing hold as also you-hold and the other myriarchs where
νῦν ἔχετε· ὁμοῦ δὲ τοῦ ἀγῶνος ὄντος οὐδενὶ ἅρματι καιρὸς
now you-hold together and the contest being for-no chariot the-time
ἵππους μεταζευγνύναι. παραγγείλατε δὲ τοῖς ταξιάρχοις
horses to-change pass-the-word and to-the taxiarchs
καὶ λοχαγοῖς ἐπὶ φάλαγγος καθίστασθαι εἰς δύο ἔχοντας
and captains in line to-be-stationed by two having
ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον. ὁ δὲ λόχος ἦν ἕκαστος εἴκοσι τέτταρες.
each the unit the and unit was each twenty four

22 Καί τις εἶπε τῶν μυριάρχων, Καὶ δοκοῦμέν σοι, ἔφη, ὦ
And someone said of-the myriarchs And do-we-seem to-you he-said O
Κῦρε, ἱκανῶς ἔξειν εἰς τοσούτους τεταγμένοι πρὸς οὕτω
Cyrus sufficiently to-fare at so-many drawn-up against so
βαθεῖαν φάλαγγα; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Αἱ δὲ βαθύτεραι
deep a-phalanx and — Cyrus said The and deeper
φάλαγγες ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τοῖς ὅπλοις τῶν ἐναντίων
phalanxes than so-as to-reach with-the arms of-the opponents
τί σοι, ἔφη, δοκοῦσιν ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους βλάπτειν ἢ
what to-you he-said do-they-seem either the enemies to-harm or
τοὺς συμμάχους ὠφελεῖν;
the allies to-benefit

23 ἐγὼ μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, τοὺς εἰς ἑκατὸν τούτους ὁπλίτας
I indeed for he-said the(-men) at a-hundred these hoplites
εἰς μυρίους ἂν μᾶλλον βουλοίμην τετάχθαι· οὕτω γὰρ
at ten-thousand — rather would-wish to-be-drawn-up so for
ἂν ἐλαχίστοις μαχοίμεθα. ἐξ ὅσων μέντοι ἐγὼ τὴν
— with-fewest we-would-fight from as-many(-ranks) however I the
φάλαγγα βαθυνῶ οἴομαι ὅλην ἐνεργὸν καὶ σύμμαχον
phalanx shall-deepen I-think whole active and allied
ποιήσειν αὐτὴν ἑαυτῇ.
to-make it to-itself

ἀκοντιστὰς μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς θωρακοφόροις τάξω, ἐπὶ δὲ 24
javelin-men indeed behind the breastplate-wearers I-shall-station behind and
τοῖς ἀκοντισταῖς τοξότας. τούτους γὰρ πρωτοστάτας μὲν
the javelin-men archers these for front-rankers indeed
πῶς ἄν τις τάττοι, οἳ καὶ αὐτοὶ ὁμολογοῦσι μηδεμίαν
how — anyone could-station who even themselves admit no
μάχην ἂν ὑπομεῖναι ἐκ χειρός; προβεβλημένοι δὲ τοὺς
fight — to-sustain at hand having-in-front but the
θωρακοφόρους μενοῦσί τε, καὶ οἳ μὲν ἀκοντίζοντες, οἳ
breastplate-wearers they-will-stand both and some indeed hurling-javelins some
δὲ τοξεύοντες, ὑπὲρ τῶν πρόσθεν πάντως λυμανοῦνται
and shooting over the(-men) in-front by-all-means will-harm
τοὺς πολεμίους. ὅ τι δ' ἂν κακουργῇ τις τοὺς
the enemies what ever and — harms anyone the
ἐναντίους, δῆλον ὅτι παντὶ τούτῳ τοὺς συμμάχους κουφίζει.
opponents clear that by-all this the allies it-relieves
τελευταίους μέντοι στήσω τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι καλουμένους. 25
last however I-shall-station the(-men) behind all called
ὥσπερ γὰρ οἰκίας οὔτε ἄνευ λιθολογήματος ὀχυροῦ
as for of-a-house neither without stone-foundation strong
οὔτε ἄνευ τῶν στέγην ποιούντων ὄφελος οὐδέν, οὕτως
nor without the roof making use any so
οὐδὲ φάλαγγος οὔτ' ἄνευ τῶν πρώτων οὔτ' ἄνευ τῶν
not-even of-a-phalanx neither without the first nor without the
τελευταίων, εἰ μὴ ἀγαθοὶ ἔσονται, ὄφελος οὐδέν.
last if not good they-will-be use any
ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς τ', ἔφη, ὡς παραγγέλλω τάττεσθε, καὶ ὑμεῖς 26
but you both he-said as I-order draw-up and you
οἱ τῶν πελταστῶν ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ὡσαύτως τοὺς
the of-the peltasts commanders behind these likewise the

λόχους καθίστατε, καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ τῶν τοξοτῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς
units station and you the of-the archers behind the
πελτασταῖς ὡσαύτως.
peltasts likewise

27 σὺ δέ, ὃς τῶν ἐπὶ πᾶσιν ἄρχεις, τελευταίους ἔχων τοὺς
you and who of-the(-men) behind all command last having the
ἄνδρας παράγγελλε τοῖς σαυτοῦ ἐφορᾶν τε ἑκάστῳ τοὺς
men order the of-yourself to-watch both each the(-men)
καθ' αὑτὸν καὶ τοῖς μὲν τὸ δέον ποιοῦσιν ἐπικελεύειν,
by himself and to-the(-ones) indeed the needful doing to-urge-on
τοῖς δὲ μαλακυνομένοις ἀπειλεῖν ἰσχυρῶς· ἢν δέ τις
to-the(-ones) and slacking to-threaten strongly if and anyone
στρέφηται προδιδόναι θέλων, θανάτῳ ζημιοῦν. ἔργον γάρ
turns to-betray wishing with-death to-punish(-him) task for
ἐστι τοῖς μὲν πρωτοστάταις θαρρύνειν τοὺς ἑπομένους καὶ
it-is for-the indeed front-rankers to-encourage the following both
λόγῳ καὶ ἔργῳ· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι τεταγμένους
by-word and by-deed you and must the(-men) behind all posted
πλείω φόβον παρέχειν τοῖς κακοῖς τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
more fear to-give to-the cowards than-that from the enemies

28 καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν ταῦτα ποιεῖτε. σὺ δέ, ὦ Εὐφράτα, ὃς ἄρχεις
and you indeed these(-things) do you and O Euphratas who command
τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς μηχαναῖς, οὕτω ποίει ὅπως τὰ ζεύγη τὰ
the(-men) at the engines so act that the teams the(-ones)
τοὺς πύργους ἄγοντα ἕψεται ὡς ἐγγύτατα τῆς φάλαγγος.
the towers drawing will-follow as nearest the phalanx

29 σὺ δ', ὦ Δαοῦχε, ὃς ἄρχεις τῶν σκευοφόρων, ἐπὶ τοῖς
you and O Dauchus who command the baggage behind the
πύργοις ἄγε πάντα τὸν τοιοῦτον στρατόν· οἱ δὲ ὑπηρέται
towers lead all the such host the and attendants

σου ἰσχυρῶς κολαζόντων τοὺς προσωτέρω προϊόντας
of-you strongly let-punish the(-men) further going-forward
τοῦ καιροῦ ἢ λειπομένους.
than-the proper or falling-behind
σὺ δέ, ὦ Καρδοῦχε, ὃς ἄρχεις τῶν ἁρμαμαξῶν αἳ 30
you and O Carduchus who command the carriages which
ἄγουσι τὰς γυναῖκας, κατάστησον αὐτὰς τελευταίας
carry the women station them last
ἐπὶ τοῖς σκευοφόροις. ἑπόμενα γὰρ ταῦτα πάντα
behind the baggage following for these(-things) all
καὶ πλήθους δόξαν παρέξει, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἢν
both of-multitude impression will-give and the enemies if
κυκλοῦσθαι πειρῶνται, μείζω τὴν περιβολὴν ἀναγκάσει
to-encircle they-try greater the circuit will-compel
ποιεῖσθαι· ὅσῳ δ' ἂν μεῖζον χωρίον περιβάλλωνται,
to-make by-as-much-as and — greater ground they-encompass
τοσούτῳ ἀνάγκη αὐτοὺς ἀσθενεστέρους γίγνεσθαι.
by-so-much necessity(-is) them weaker to-become
καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν οὕτω ποιεῖτε· σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἀρτάοζε καὶ 31
and you indeed so do you and O Artaozus and
Ἀρταγέρσα, χιλιοστὺν ἑκάτερος τῶν σὺν ὑμῖν πεζῶν
Artagersas a-thousand each of-the(-men) with you foot-soldiers
ἐπὶ τούτοις ἔχετε.
behind these hold
καὶ σύ, ὦ Φαρνοῦχε καὶ Ἀσιαδάτα, τὴν τῶν ἱππέων 32
and you O Pharnuchus and Asiadatas the of-the horsemen
χιλιοστὺν ἧς ἑκάτερος ἄρχει ὑμῶν μὴ συγκατατάττετε εἰς
thousand which each commands of-you not station-along into
τὴν φάλαγγα, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν τῶν ἁρμαμαξῶν ἐξοπλίσθητε
the phalanx but behind the carriages arm-yourselves
καθ' ὑμᾶς αὐτούς· ἔπειτα πρὸς ἐμὲ ἥκετε σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις
by you yourselves then to me come with the other

ἡγεμόσιν. οὕτω δὲ δεῖ ὑμᾶς παρεσκευάσθαι ὡς πρώτους
leaders so and must you to-be-prepared as first
δεῆσον ἀγωνίζεσθαι.
going-to-have-to contend

33 καὶ σὺ δὲ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς καμήλοις ἀνδρῶν,
and you and the commander of-the(-men) on the camels men
ὄπισθεν τῶν ἁρμαμαξῶν ἐκτάττου· ποίει δ' ὅ τι ἄν
behind the carriages draw-up do and what ever —
σοι παραγγέλλῃ Ἀρταγέρσης.
to-you orders Artagersas

34 ὑμεῖς δ' οἱ τῶν ἁρμάτων ἡγεμόνες διακληρωσάμενοι, ὁ
you and the of-the chariots leaders having-cast-lots the(-one)
μὲν λαχὼν ὑμῶν πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος τὰ μεθ'
indeed having-drawn-the-lot of-you before the phalanx the(-ones) with
ἑαυτοῦ ἑκατὸν ἔχων ἅρματα καταστησάτω· αἱ δ' ἕτεραι
himself hundred having chariots let-him-station the and other
ἑκατοστύες τῶν ἁρμάτων, ἡ μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν πλευρὸν
hundreds of-the chariots the(-one) indeed along the right flank
τῆς στρατιᾶς στοιχοῦσα ἑπέσθω τῇ φάλαγγι ἐπὶ κέρως,
of-the army in-file let-it-follow the phalanx in column
ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον. Κῦρος μὲν οὕτω διέταττεν.
the(-one) and along the left Cyrus indeed so arranged(-them)

35 Ἀβραδάτας δὲ ὁ Σούσων βασιλεὺς εἶπεν, Ἐγώ σοι,
Abradatas and the of-Susians king said I to-you
ὦ Κῦρε, ἐθελούσιος ὑφίσταμαι τὴν κατὰ πρόσωπον τῆς
O Cyrus voluntarily undertake the toward face of-the
ἀντίας φάλαγγος τάξιν ἔχειν, εἰ μή τί σοι ἄλλο δοκεῖ.
opposing phalanx position to-hold if not anything to-you else seems-best

36 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀγασθεὶς αὐτὸν καὶ δεξιωσάμενος ἐπήρετο
and — Cyrus having-admired him and having-greeted(-him) asked
τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅρμασι Πέρσας, Ἦ καὶ ὑμεῖς,
the(-men) on the other chariots Persians Truly also you

ἔφη, ταῦτα συγχωρεῖτε; ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκεῖνοι ἀπεκρίναντο
he-said these(-things) agree when and they answered
ὅτι οὐ καλὸν εἴη ταῦτα ὑφίεσθαι, διεκλήρωσεν αὐτούς,
that not honorable it-was these(-things) to-concede he-cast-lots-for them
καὶ ἔλαχεν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἥπερ ὑφίστατο, καὶ ἐγένετο
and drew — Abradatas where he-undertook and he-was
κατὰ τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους.
opposite the Egyptians
τότε μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες καὶ ἐπιμεληθέντες ὧν προεῖπεν 37
then indeed then going-away and having-taken-care-of what he-had-told-beforehand
ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι ἐκοιμήθησαν.
they-made-dinner and guards having-posted they-slept

IV · PANTHEA ARMS ABRADATAS

At dawn the army arms. Panthea brings Abradatas a golden breastplate, helmet, and bracelets made from her own jewels, tells him she would rather share a grave with a brave man than live with a coward, and reminds him of what they owe to Cyrus. Abradatas prays to be worthy of her and of Cyrus, and she kisses the chariot as it moves off. Cyrus tells his officers that the gods have given good omens, that his men are better trained and armed, and that the Egyptians' great shields and depth will hinder them.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ πρῲ Κῦρος μὲν ἐθύετο, ὁ δ' ἄλλος 1
On-the and next-day early Cyrus indeed sacrificed the and other
στρατὸς ἀριστήσας καὶ σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος ἐξωπλίζετο
army having-breakfasted and libations having-made armed-itself
πολλοῖς μὲν καὶ καλοῖς χιτῶσι, πολλοῖς δὲ καὶ καλοῖς
with-many indeed and fine tunics with-many and and fine
θώραξι καὶ κράνεσιν· ὥπλιζον δὲ καὶ ἵππους προμετωπιδίοις
breastplates and helmets they-armed and also horses with-frontlets

καὶ προστερνιδίοις· καὶ τοὺς μὲν μονίππους παραμηριδίοις,
and with-chest-pieces and the(-ones) indeed single-horses with-thigh-pieces
τοὺς δ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ἅρμασιν ὄντας παραπλευριδίοις· ὥστε
the(-ones) and under the chariots being with-side-pieces so-that
ἤστραπτε μὲν χαλκῷ, ἤνθει δὲ φοινικίσι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιά.
flashed indeed with-bronze bloomed and with-purple all the army

2 Καὶ τῷ Ἀβραδάτᾳ δὲ τὸ τετράρρυμον ἅρμα καὶ ἵππων
And — for-Abradatas and the four-poled chariot and of-horses
ὀκτὼ παγκάλως ἐκεκόσμητο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμελλε τὸν λινοῦν
eight most-beautifully had-been-adorned when and be-was-about the linen
θώρακα, ὃς ἐπιχώριος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ἐνδύεσθαι, προσφέρει
breastplate which native was for-them to-put-on brings
αὐτῷ ἡ Πάνθεια χρυσοῦν καὶ χρυσοῦν κράνος καὶ
to-him — Panthea a-golden(-one) and golden helmet and
περιβραχιόνια καὶ ψέλια πλατέα περὶ τοὺς καρποὺς τῶν
armlets and bracelets broad around the wrists of-the
χειρῶν καὶ χιτῶνα πορφυροῦν ποδήρη στολιδωτὸν τὰ
hands and a-tunic purple foot-long pleated the
κάτω καὶ λόφον ὑακινθινοβαφῆ. ταῦτα δ' ἐποιήσατο
below and a-crest hyacinth-dyed these(-things) and she-had-made
λάθρᾳ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκμετρησαμένη τὰ ἐκείνου ὅπλα.
secretly from-the husband having-measured the his arms

3 ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν ἐθαύμασέ τε καὶ ἐπήρετο τὴν Πάνθειαν, Οὐ
he and having-seen wondered both and asked — Panthea Not
δήπου, ὦ γύναι, συγκόψασα τὸν σαυτῆς κόσμον τὰ ὅπλα μοι
surely O wife having-broken-up the your-own ornament the arms for-me
ἐποιήσω; Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, οὔκουν τόν γε πλείστου
you-made No-by Zeus said — Panthea not-then the at-least most
ἄξιον· σὺ γὰρ ἔμοιγε, ἢν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φανῇς οἷόσπερ
worth you for to-me-at-least if also to-the others you-appear such-as
ἐμοὶ δοκεῖς εἶναι, μέγιστος κόσμος ἔσῃ. ταῦτα δὲ
to-me you-seem to-be greatest ornament you-will-be these(-things) and

λέγουσα ἅμα ἐνέδυε τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ λανθάνειν μὲν
saying at-the-same-time she-put-on(-him) the arms and to-escape-notice indeed
ἐπειρᾶτο, ἐλείβετο δὲ αὐτῇ τὰ δάκρυα κατὰ τῶν παρειῶν.
she-tried poured-down but for-her the tears down the cheeks
Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ πρόσθεν ὢν ἀξιοθέατος ὁ Ἀβραδάτας 4
When and even before being worth-seeing — Abradatas
ὡπλίσθη τοῖς ὅπλοις τούτοις, ἐφάνη μὲν κάλλιστος
was-armed with-the arms these he-appeared indeed most-handsome
καὶ ἐλευθεριώτατος, ἅτε καὶ τῆς φύσεως ὑπαρχούσης·
and most-noble inasmuch-as also the nature being-present
λαβὼν δὲ παρὰ τοῦ ὑφηνιόχου τὰς ἡνίας παρεσκευάζετο
having-taken and from the charioteer the reins he-prepared
ὡς ἀναβησόμενος ἤδη ἐπὶ τὸ ἅρμα.
as going-to-mount already onto the chariot
ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἡ Πάνθεια ἀποχωρῆσαι κελεύσασα τοὺς 5
in and this — Panthea to-withdraw having-bidden the
παρόντας πάντας ἔλεξεν, Ἀλλ' ὅτι μέν, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, εἴ
present all said But that indeed O Abradatas if
τις καὶ ἄλλη πώποτε γυνὴ τὸν ἑαυτῆς ἄνδρα μεῖζον τῆς
any also other ever woman the her-own husband more than-the
ἑαυτῆς ψυχῆς ἐτίμησεν, οἶμαί σε γιγνώσκειν ὅτι καὶ ἐγὼ
her-own soul honored I-think you know that also I
μία τούτων εἰμί. τί οὖν ἐμὲ δεῖ καθ' ἓν ἕκαστον λέγειν;
one of-these am why then me must by one each say
τὰ γὰρ ἔργα οἶμαί σοι πιθανώτερα παρεσχῆσθαι
the(-things) for deeds I-think to-you more-convincing to-have-been-presented
τῶν νῦν ἂν λεχθέντων λόγων.
than-the now — spoken words
ὅμως δὲ οὕτως ἔχουσα πρὸς σὲ ὥσπερ σὺ οἶσθα, ἐπομνύω 6
yet and so being toward you as you know I-swear
σοι τὴν ἐμὴν καὶ σὴν φιλίαν ἦ μὴν ἐγὼ βούλεσθαι ἂν
to-you by-the my and your love truly indeed I would-wish —

μετὰ σοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ γενομένου κοινῇ γῆν ἐπιέσασθαι
with you a-man good having-become in-common earth to-put-on
μᾶλλον ἢ ζῆν μετ᾽ αἰσχυνομένου αἰσχυνομένη· οὕτως
rather than to-live with one-ashamed ashamed so
ἐγὼ καὶ σὲ τῶν καλλίστων καὶ ἐμαυτὴν ἠξίωκα.
I both you of-the finest and myself have-thought-worthy

7 Κύρῳ δὲ δοκῶ μεγάλην τινὰ ἡμᾶς χάριν ὀφείλειν ὅτι
To-Cyrus and I-think great some us gratitude to-owe because
με αἰχμάλωτον γενομένην καὶ ἐξαιρεθεῖσαν αὐτῷ οὔτε
me captive having-become and chosen-out for-him neither
με ὡς δούλην ἠξίωσε κεκτῆσθαι οὔτε ὡς ἐλευθέραν
me as slave he-thought-fit to-possess nor as free
ἐν ἀτίμῳ ὀνόματι, διεφύλαξε δὲ σοὶ ὥσπερ ἀδελφοῦ
in dishonored name he-kept(-me) but for-you as-if of-a-brother
γυναῖκα λαβών.
wife having-taken(-me)

8 πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὅτε Ἀράσπας ἀπέστη αὐτοῦ ὁ ἐμὲ
besides and also when Araspas revolted from-him the(-man) me
φυλάττων, ὑπεσχόμην αὐτῷ, εἴ με ἐάσειε πρὸς σὲ πέμψαι,
guarding I-promised him if me he-allowed to you to-send
ἥξειν αὐτῷ σὲ πολὺ Ἀράσπου ἄνδρα καὶ πιστότερον καὶ
to-come to-him you much than-Araspas a-man both more-faithful and
ἀμείνονα.
better

9 Ἡ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀγασθεὶς τοῖς
She indeed these(-things) said — and Abradatas having-admired the
λόγοις καὶ θιγὼν αὐτῆς τῆς κεφαλῆς ἀναβλέψας εἰς
words and having-touched her the head having-looked-up to
τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐπηύξατο, Ἀλλ᾽ ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, δός μοι
the heaven prayed But O Zeus greatest grant me
φανῆναι ἀξίῳ μὲν Πανθείας ἀνδρί, ἀξίῳ δὲ Κύρου φίλῳ
to-appear worthy indeed of-Panthea husband worthy and of-Cyrus friend

τοῦ ἡμᾶς τετιμηκότος. ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν κατὰ τὰς θύρας
the(-one) us having-honored these(-things) having-said by the doors
τοῦ ἁρματείου δίφρου ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἅρμα.
of-the chariot box he-mounted onto the chariot
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀναβάντος αὐτοῦ κατέκλεισε τὸν δίφρον ὁ 10
when and having-mounted him shut the box the
ὑφηνίοχος, οὐκ ἔχουσα ἡ Πάνθεια πῶς ἂν ἔτι ἄλλως
charioteer not having — Panthea how — any-longer otherwise
ἀσπάσαιτο αὐτόν, κατεφίλησε τὸν δίφρον· καὶ τῷ μὲν
she-might-embrace him kissed the box and for-him indeed
προήει ἤδη τὸ ἅρμα, ἡ δὲ λαθοῦσα αὐτὸν συνεφείπετο,
was-advancing already the chariot she and unnoticed-by him followed
ἕως ἐπιστραφεὶς καὶ ἰδὼν αὐτὴν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας εἶπε,
until having-turned and having-seen her — Abradatas said
Θάρρει, Πάνθεια, καὶ χαῖρε καὶ ἄπιθι ἤδη.
Take-heart Panthea and farewell and go-away now
ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ εὐνοῦχοι καὶ αἱ θεράπαιναι λαβοῦσαι 11
from this indeed the eunuchs and the handmaids having-taken
ἀπῆγον αὐτὴν εἰς τὴν ἁρμάμαξαν καὶ κατακλίναντες
led-away her to the carriage and having-laid(-her)-down
κατεκάλυψαν τῇ σκηνῇ. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι, καλοῦ ὄντος τοῦ
covered(-her) with-the tent the and men fine being the
θεάματος τοῦ τε Ἀβραδάτου καὶ τοῦ ἅρματος, οὐ πρόσθεν
sight — both of-Abradatas and of-the chariot not before
ἐδύναντο θεάσασθαι αὐτὸν πρὶν ἡ Πάνθεια ἀπῆλθεν.
could to-look-at him until — Panthea went-away
Ὡς δ᾽ ἐκεκαλλιερήκει μὲν ὁ Κῦρος, ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ 12
When and had-obtained-good-omens indeed — Cyrus the and army
παρετέτακτο αὐτῷ ὥσπερ παρήγγειλε, κατέχων σκοπὰς
was-drawn-up for-him as he-ordered holding lookouts
ἄλλας πρὸ ἄλλων συνεκάλεσε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
others before others he-called-together the leaders and spoke thus

13 Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τὰ μὲν ἱερὰ οἱ θεοὶ ἡμῖν
Men friends and allies the indeed sacrifices the gods to-us
φαίνουσιν οἷάπερ ὅτε τὴν πρόσθεν νίκην ἔδοσαν· ὑμᾶς
show such-as when the former victory they-gave you
δ᾽ ἐγὼ βούλομαι ἀναμνῆσαι ὧν μοι δοκεῖτε μεμνημένοι
and I wish to-remind of-what to-me you-seem remembering
πολὺ ἂν εὐθυμότεροι εἰς τὸν ἀγῶνα ἰέναι.
much — more-cheerful to the contest to-go

14 ἠσκήκατε μὲν γὰρ τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον πολὺ μᾶλλον
you-have-practiced indeed for the(-things) for the war much more
τῶν πολεμίων, συντέτραφθε δὲ καὶ συντέταχθε
than-the enemies you-have-been-reared-together and also drawn-up-together
ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ πολὺ πλείω ἤδη χρόνον ἢ οἱ πολέμιοι
in the same(-place) much more already time than the enemies
καὶ συννενικήκατε μετ᾽ ἀλλήλων· τῶν δὲ πολεμίων
and you-have-conquered-together with one-another of-the and enemies
οἱ πολλοὶ συνήττηνται μεθ᾽ αὑτῶν. οἱ δὲ ἀμάχητοι
the many have-been-defeated-together with themselves the and unfought
ἑκατέρων οἳ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων ἴσασιν ὅτι προδότας
of-both the(-ones) indeed of-the enemies know that traitors
τοὺς παραστάτας ἔχουσιν, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν ἴστε
the comrades they-have you and the(-ones) with us know
ὅτι μετὰ θελόντων τοῖς συμμάχοις ἀρήγειν μαχεῖσθε.
that with(-men) willing the allies to-help you-will-fight

15 εἰκὸς δὲ τοὺς μὲν πιστεύοντας ἀλλήλοις ὁμόνως
reasonable and the(-men) indeed trusting one-another with-one-mind
μάχεσθαι μένοντας, τοὺς δὲ ἀπιστοῦντας ἀναγκαῖον
to-fight staying the(-men) and distrusting necessary(-it-is)
βουλεύεσθαι πῶς ἂν ἕκαστοι τάχιστα ἐκποδὼν γένοιντο.
to-deliberate how — each quickest out-of-the-way might-be

ἴωμεν δή, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἅρματα μὲν 16
let-us-go then O men against the enemies chariots indeed
ἔχοντες ὡπλισμένα πρὸς ἄοπλα τὰ τῶν πολεμίων,
having armed against unarmed the(-ones) of-the enemies
ὡς δ' αὖτως καὶ ἱππέας καὶ ἵππους ὡπλισμένους πρὸς
as and likewise also horsemen and horses armed against
ἀόπλους, ὡς ἐκ χειρὸς μάχεσθαι.
unarmed as at hand to-fight
πεζοῖς δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις οἷς καὶ πρόσθεν μαχεῖσθε, 17
foot-soldiers and the indeed others whom also before you-will-fight
Αἰγύπτιοι δὲ ὁμοίως μὲν ὡπλισμένοι εἰσίν, ὁμοίως δὲ
Egyptians and alike indeed armed are alike and
τεταγμένοι· τάς τε γὰρ ἀσπίδας μείζους ἔχουσιν ἢ ὡς
drawn-up the both for shields larger they-have than so-as
ποιεῖν τι καὶ ὁρᾶν, τεταγμένοι τε εἰς ἑκατὸν δῆλον
to-do anything and to-see drawn-up both at a-hundred clear
ὅτι κωλύσουσιν ἀλλήλους μάχεσθαι πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγων.
that they-will-hinder one-another to-fight except very few
εἰ δὲ ὠθοῦντες ἐξώσειν πιστεύουσιν, ἵπποις αὐτοὺς 18
if and pushing to-push-out(-us) they-trust horses them
πρῶτον δεήσει ἀντέχειν καὶ σιδήρῳ ὑφ' ἵππων
first it-will-be-necessary to-withstand and iron by horses
ἰσχυριζομένῳ· ἢν δέ τις αὐτῶν καὶ ὑπομείνῃ, πῶς
strengthened if and anyone of-them even holds-out how
ἅμα δυνήσεται ἱππομαχεῖν τε καὶ φαλαγγομαχεῖν
at-the-same-time will-be-be-able to-fight-horses both and to-fight-a-phalanx
καὶ πυργομαχεῖν; καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων ἡμῖν
and to-fight-towers and for the(-men) from the towers us
μὲν ἐπαρήξουσι, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους παίοντες ἀμηχανεῖν
indeed will-help the and enemies striking to-be-helpless
ἀντὶ τοῦ μάχεσθαι ποιήσουσιν.
instead-of the to-fight will-make

19 εἰ δέ τινος ἔτι ἐνδεῖσθαι δοκεῖτε, πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγετε· σὺν
if and of-anything still to-be-in-need you-think to me tell with
γὰρ θεοῖς οὐδενὸς ἀπορήσομεν. καὶ εἴ μέν τις εἰπεῖν
for gods of-nothing we-shall-be-at-a-loss and if indeed anyone to-say
τι βούλεται, λεξάτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐλθόντες πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ
something wishes let-him-speak if but not having-gone to the sacrifices
καὶ προσευξάμενοι οἷς ἐθύσαμεν θεοῖς ἴτε ἐπὶ τὰς τάξεις·
and having-prayed to-whom we-sacrificed gods go to the ranks
20 καὶ ἕκαστος ὑμῶν ὑπομιμνῃσκέτω τοὺς μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ
and each of-you let-remind the(-men) with himself
ἅπερ ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἐπιδεικνύτω τις τοῖς ἀρχομένοις
what I you and let-show one to-the(-men) ruled
ἑαυτὸν ἄξιον ἀρχῆς, ἄφοβον δεικνὺς καὶ σχῆμα καὶ
himself worthy of-rule fearless showing both posture and
πρόσωπον καὶ λόγους.
face and words

BOOK VII

I · THYMBRARA

Cyrus gives the watchword Zeus Savior and Leader and rides along the line, encouraging each part. The enemy bends its wings to encircle him; Cyrus strikes the wing facing his right in the flank, and Artagersas sends the camels against the wing on the left, whose horses bolt. Abradatas charges the Egyptians and is cut down, and the Egyptians drive the Persians back to the towers until Cyrus rides around to their rear; he is unhorsed and remounted. Admiring the surrounded Egyptians, he offers them terms; they come over, excused from fighting Croesus, and are later given cities. Cyrus camps at Thymbrara, and his cavalry armor and scythed chariots become Persian custom.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ εὐξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀπῆσαν πρὸς τὰς τάξεις· 1
They indeed then having-prayed to-the gods went-away to the companies
τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν προσήνεγκαν
— and to-Cyrus and to-the(-men) about him brought
οἱ θεράποντες ἐμφαγεῖν καὶ πιεῖν ἔτι οὖσιν ἀμφὶ τὰ
the servants to-eat and to-drink still being about the
ἱερά. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὥσπερ εἶχεν ἑστηκὼς ἀπαρξάμενος
sacrifices — and Cyrus as he-was standing having-offered-first-fruits
ἠρίστα καὶ μετεδίδου ἀεὶ τῷ μάλιστα δεομένῳ·
breakfasted and gave-a-share always to-the(-man) most needing
καὶ σπείσας καὶ εὐξάμενος ἔπιε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
and having-poured-a-libation and having-prayed he-drank and the others
δὲ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν οὕτως ἐποίουν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
and the(-men) about him so did after and these(-things)
αἰτησάμενος Δία πατρῷον ἡγεμόνα εἶναι καὶ σύμμαχον
having-asked Zeus ancestral leader to-be and ally
ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἐκέλευεν.
he-mounted onto the horse and the(-men) about himself ordered(-to-do-so)

2 ὡπλισμένοι δὲ πάντες ἦσαν οἱ περὶ τὸν Κῦρον τοῖς
armed and all were the(-men) about — Cyrus with-the
αὐτοῖς Κύρῳ ὅπλοις, χιτῶσι φοινικοῖς, θώραξι χαλκοῖς,
same as-Cyrus arms with-tunics purple with-breastplates bronze
κράνεσι χαλκοῖς, λόφοις λευκοῖς, μαχαίραις, παλτῷ κρανεΐνῳ
with-helmets bronze with-crests white with-sabers with-spear of-cornel
ἑνὶ ἕκαστος· οἱ δὲ ἵπποι προμετωπιδίοις καὶ προστερνιδίοις
one each the and horses with-frontlets and with-breast-pieces
καὶ παραμηριδίοις χαλκοῖς· τὰ δ' αὐτὰ ταῦτα παραμηρίδια
and with-thigh-pieces bronze the and same these thigh-pieces
ἦν καὶ τῷ ἀνδρί· τοσοῦτον μόνον διέφερον τὰ Κύρου
were also for-the man so-much only differed the of-Cyrus
ὅπλα ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἐκέχριτο τῷ χρυσοειδεῖ
arms that the indeed others had-been-coated with-the gold-like
χρώματι, τὰ δὲ Κύρου ὅπλα ὥσπερ κάτοπτρον ἐξέλαμπεν·
color the but of-Cyrus arms like a-mirror flashed
3 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη καὶ ἔστη ἀποβλέπων ᾗπερ ἔμελλε
when and he-had-mounted and stood looking-toward where he-was-about
πορεύεσθαι, βροντὴ δεξιὰ ἐφθέγξατο· ὁ δ' εἶπεν,
to-march thunder on-the-right sounded he and said
Ἑψόμεθά σοι, ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε. καὶ ὡρμᾶτο ἐν μὲν δεξιᾷ
We-shall-follow you O Zeus greatest and he-set-out on indeed right
ἔχων Χρυσάνταν τὸν ἵππαρχον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας, ἐν
having Chrysantas the cavalry-commander and the horsemen on
ἀριστερᾷ δὲ Ἀρσάμαν καὶ τοὺς πεζούς.
left and Arsamas and the foot-soldiers
4 παρηγγύησε δὲ παρορᾶν πρὸς τὸ σημεῖον καὶ ἐν ἴσῳ
he-passed-the-word and to-watch toward the standard and in step
ἕπεσθαι· ἦν δὲ αὐτῷ τὸ σημεῖον ἀετὸς χρυσοῦς ἐπὶ
to-follow was and for-him the standard an-eagle golden on
δόρατος μακροῦ ἀνατεταμένος. καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι τοῦτο τὸ
a-spear long raised-up and now and still this the

σημεῖον τῷ Περσῶν βασιλεῖ διαμένει. πρὶν δὲ ὁρᾶν
standard for-the of-Persians king remains before and to-see
τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τρὶς ἀνέπαυσε τὸ στράτευμα.
the enemies up-to three-times he-rested the army
Ἐπεὶ δὲ προεληλύθεσαν ὡς εἴκοσι σταδίους, ἤρχοντο ἤδη 5
When and they-had-advanced about twenty stades they-began already
τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στράτευμα ἀντιπροσιὸν καθορᾶν. ὡς
the of-the enemies army advancing-against(-them) to-catch-sight-of when
δ' ἐν τῷ καταφανεῖ πάντες ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο καὶ ἔγνωσαν
and in the view all to-one-another they-were and recognized
οἱ πολέμιοι πολὺ ἑκατέρωθεν ὑπερφαλαγγοῦντες, στήσαντες
the enemies much on-either-side outflanking having-halted
τὴν αὑτῶν φάλαγγα, οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως κυκλοῦσθαι,
the their-own phalanx not for it-is-possible otherwise to-encircle
ἐπέκαμπτον εἰς κύκλωσιν, ὥσπερ γάμμα ἑκατέρωθεν τὴν
they-bent(-it) for encirclement like a-gamma on-either-side the
ἑαυτῶν τάξιν ποιήσαντες, ὡς πάντοθεν ἅμα μάχοιντο.
their-own line having-made so-that from-all-sides at-once they-might-fight
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν ταῦτα οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον ἀφίστατο, 6
— and Cyrus seeing these(-things) not-at-all at-all more drew-back
ἀλλ' ὡσαύτως ἡγεῖτο. κατανοῶν δὲ ὡς πρόσω τὸν
but likewise led observing and how far the
καμπτῆρα ἑκατέρωθεν ἐποιήσαντο περὶ ὃν κάμπτοντες
turning-point on-either-side they-made around which bending
ἀνέτεινον τὰ κέρατα, Ἐννοεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἔνθα
they-extended the wings Do-you-notice he-said O Chrysantas where
τὴν ἐπικαμπὴν ποιοῦνται; Πάνυ γε, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας,
the bend they-make Very at-least said — Chrysantas
καὶ θαυμάζω γε· πολὺ γάρ μοι δοκοῦσιν ἀποσπᾶν τὰ
and I-wonder at-least far for to-me they-seem to-pull-away the

κέρατα ἀπὸ τῆς ἑαυτῶν φάλαγγος. Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ
wings from the their-own phalanx Yes by Zeus said —
Κῦρος, καὶ ἀπό γε τῆς ἡμετέρας.
Cyrus and from at-least the our

7 Τί δὴ τοῦτο; Δῆλον ὅτι, ἔφη, φοβούμενοι μὴ ἦν ἐγγὺς
Why then this Clear that he-said fearing lest if near
ἡμῶν γένωνται τὰ κέρατα τῆς φάλαγγος ἔτι πρόσω
us come the wings of-the phalanx still far
οὔσης, ἐπιθώμεθα αὐτοῖς. Ἔπειτ᾽, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, πῶς
being we-attack them Then said — Chrysantas how
δυνήσονται ὠφελεῖν οἱ ἕτεροι τοὺς ἑτέρους οὕτω πολὺ
will-they-be-able to-help the ones the others so far
ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων; Ἀλλὰ δῆλον, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὅτι ἡνίκα
being-distant from-one-another But clear said — Cyrus that when
ἂν γένωνται τὰ κέρατα ἀναβαίνοντα κατ᾽ ἀντιπέρας τῶν
— come the wings going-up against opposite the
πλαγίων τοῦ ἡμετέρου στρατεύματος, στραφέντες ὡς εἰς
flanks of-the our army having-wheeled as into
φάλαγγα ἡμῖν προσίασιν, ὡς ἅμα πάντοθεν μαχούμενοι.
phalanx at-us they-will-advance so-as at-once from-all-sides going-to-fight

8 Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, εὖ σοι δοκοῦσι βουλεύεσθαι;
Therefore said — Chrysantas well to-you do-they-seem to-deliberate
Πρός γε ἃ ὁρῶσι· πρὸς δὲ ἃ οὐχ ὁρῶσιν
With-regard at-least to-what they-see with-regard but to-what not they-see
ἔτι κάκιον ἢ εἰ κατὰ κέρας προσῇσαν. ἀλλὰ σὺ μέν,
still worse than if by wing they-advanced but you indeed
ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρσάμα, ἡγοῦ τῷ πεζῷ ἠρέμα ὥσπερ ἐμὲ
he-said O Arsamas lead the infantry quietly as me
ὁρᾷς· καὶ σύ, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἐν ἴσῳ τούτῳ τὸ ἱππικὸν
you-see and you O Chrysantas in step with-this the cavalry
ἔχων συμπαρέπου. ἐγὼ δὲ ἄπειμι ἐκεῖσε ὅθεν μοι δοκεῖ
having follow-alongside I and shall-go-off there whence to-me seems

καιρὸς εἶναι ἄρχεσθαι τῆς μάχης· ἅμα δὲ παριὼν
the-time to-be to-begin the battle at-the-same-time and passing-by
ἐπισκέψομαι ἕκαστα πῶς ἡμῖν ἔχει.
I-shall-look-at each-thing how for-us it-is
ἐπειδὰν δ' ἐκεῖ γένωμαι, ὅταν ἤδη ὁμοῦ προσιόντες 9
when and there I-am when already together approaching
ἀλλήλοις γιγνώμεθα, παιᾶνα ἐξάρξω, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐπείγεσθε.
to-one-another we-are a-paean I-shall-begin you and hasten
ἡνίκα δ' ἂν ἡμεῖς ἐγχειρῶμεν τοῖς πολεμίοις, αἰσθήσεσθε
when and — we engage with-the enemies you-will-perceive(-it)
μέν, οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι ὀλίγος θόρυβος ἔσται, ὁρμήσεται
indeed not for I-think little uproar there-will-be will-charge
δὲ τηνικαῦτα Ἀβραδάτας ἤδη σὺν τοῖς ἅρμασιν εἰς
and then Abradatas already with the chariots against
τοὺς ἐναντίους· οὕτω γὰρ αὐτῷ εἰρήσεται· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρὴ
the opponents so for to-him it-will-be-said you and must
ἕπεσθαι ἐχομένους ὅτι μάλιστα τῶν ἁρμάτων. οὕτω
to-follow keeping-close as most to-the chariots so
γὰρ μάλιστα τοῖς πολεμίοις τεταραγμένοις ἐπιπεσούμεθα.
for most on-the enemies thrown-into-confusion we-shall-fall
παρέσομαι δὲ κἀγὼ ᾗ ἂν δύνωμαι τάχιστα διώκων τοὺς
shall-be-present and I-too as — I-can most-quickly pursuing the
ἄνδρας, ἢν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι.
men if the gods wish
Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ ξύνθημα παρεγγυήσας Ζεὺς σωτὴρ 10
These(-things) having-said and a-watchword having-passed-along Zeus savior
καὶ ἡγεμὼν ἐπορεύετο. μεταξὺ δὲ τῶν ἁρμάτων καὶ τῶν
and leader he-marched between and the chariots and the
θωρακοφόρων διαπορευόμενος ὁπότε προσβλέψειέ τινας
breastplate-wearers passing-through whenever he-looked-at some
τῶν ἐν ταῖς τάξεσι, τότε μὲν εἶπεν ἄν, Ὦ ἄνδρες,
of-the(-men) in the ranks then indeed he-would-say — O men

ὡς ἡδὺ ὑμῶν τὰ πρόσωπα θεάσασθαι. τοτὲ δ' αὖ
how pleasant your the faces to-look-at at-another-time and again
ἐν ἄλλοις ἂν ἔλεξεν, Ἆρα ἐννοεῖτε, ἄνδρες, ὅτι ὁ νῦν
among others — he-would-say Do you-consider men that the present
ἀγὼν ἐστιν οὐ μόνον περὶ τῆς τήμερον νίκης, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ
contest is not only about the of-today victory but also about
τῆς πρόσθεν ἣν νενικήκατε καὶ περὶ πάσης εὐδαιμονίας;
the former which you-have-won and about all happiness
11 ἐν ἄλλοις δ' ἂν παριὼν εἶπεν, Ὦ ἄνδρες, τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε
among others and — passing-by he-said O men the from now-on
οὐδέν ποτε ἔτι θεοὺς αἰτιατέον ἔσται· παραδεδώκασι
not-at-all ever any-longer the-gods must-be-blamed it-will-be they-have-handed-over
γὰρ ἡμῖν πολλά τε καὶ ἀγαθὰ κτήσασθαι.
for to-us many both and good-things to-acquire
12 ἀλλ' ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενώμεθα. κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ τοιάδε,
but men good let-us-become to others and again as-follows
Ὦ ἄνδρες, εἰς τίνα ποτ' ἂν καλλίονα ἔρανον ἀλλήλους
O men to what ever — finer contribution one-another
παρακαλέσαιμεν ἢ εἰς τόνδε; νῦν γὰρ ἔξεστιν ἀγαθοῖς
could-we-call than to this now for it-is-possible good
ἀνδράσι γενομένοις πολλὰ κἀγαθὰ ἀλλήλοις εἰσενεγκεῖν.
men having-become many and-good-things to-one-another to-contribute
13 κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ, Ἐπίστασθε μέν, οἶμαι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅτι
to others and again You-know indeed I-think O men that
νῦν ἆθλα πρόκειται τοῖς νικῶσι μὲν διώκειν, παίειν,
now prizes are-set-before for-the conquering(-ones) indeed to-pursue to-strike
κατακαίνειν, ἀγαθὰ ἔχειν, καλὰ ἀκούειν, ἐλευθέροις
to-kill good-things to-have fine(-things) to-hear-said free
εἶναι, ἄρχειν· τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς δῆλον ὅτι τἀναντία τούτων.
to-be to-rule for-the and cowards clear that the-opposite of-these

ὅστις οὖν ἑαυτὸν φιλεῖ, μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ μαχέσθω· ἐγὼ γὰρ
whoever then himself loves with me let-him-fight I for
κακὸν οὐδὲν οὐδ᾽ αἰσχρὸν ἑκὼν εἶναι προσήσομαι.
evil nothing nor shameful willingly to-be shall-admit
ὁπότε δ᾽ αὖ γένοιτο κατά τινας τῶν πρόσθεν 14
whenever and again he-came to some of-the(-men) formerly
συμμαχεσαμένων, εἶπεν ἄν, Πρὸς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες,
having-fought-with(-him) he-would-say — To and you O men
τί δεῖ λέγειν; ἐπίστασθε γὰρ οἵαν τε οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἐν
what need to-speak you-know for what-sort-of both the brave in
ταῖς μάχαις ἡμέραν ἄγουσι καὶ οἵαν οἱ κακοί.
the battles day spend and what-sort-of the cowards
Ὡς δὲ παριὼν κατὰ Ἀβραδάταν ἐγένετο, ἔστη· καὶ 15
When and passing-by at Abradatas he-came he-stopped and
ὁ Ἀβραδάτας παραδοὺς τῷ ὑφηνιόχῳ τὰς ἡνίας
— Abradatas having-handed-over to-the charioteer the reins
προσῆλθεν αὐτῷ· προσέδραμον δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν πλησίον
came-up to-him ran-up and also others of-the near
τεταγμένων καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἁρματηλατῶν. ὁ δ᾽ αὖ
posted both foot-soldiers and chariot-drivers — and again
Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς παραγεγενημένοις ἔλεξεν, Ὁ μὲν θεός,
Cyrus among the(-men) having-gathered said The indeed god
ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, ὥσπερ σὺ ἠξίους, συνηξίωσέ σε καὶ
O Abradatas as you thought-right thought-right-with(-you) you and
τοὺς σὺν σοὶ πρωτοστάτας εἶναι τῶν συμμάχων· σὺ
the(-men) with you front-rankers to-be of-the allies you
δὲ τοῦτο μέμνησο, ὅταν δέῃ σε ἤδη ἀγωνίζεσθαι,
and this remember when there-be-need you already to-contend
ὅτι Πέρσαι οἵ τε θεασόμενοι ὑμᾶς ἔσονται καὶ οἱ
that Persians the(-ones) both going-to-watch you will-be and the(-ones)
ἑψόμενοι ὑμῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐάσοντες ἐρήμους ὑμᾶς ἀγωνίζεσθαι.
going-to-follow you and not going-to-let deserted you to-contend

16 καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν καθ' ἡμᾶς
and — Abradatas said But the(-things) indeed by us
ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ὦ Κῦρε, καλῶς ἔχειν· ἀλλὰ τὰ πλάγια
to-me-at-least seem O Cyrus well to-be but the flanks
λυπεῖ με, ὅτι τὰ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κέρατα ἰσχυρὰ
grieve me because the indeed of-the enemies wings strong
ὁρῶ ἀνατεινόμενα καὶ ἅρμασι καὶ παντοδαπῇ στρατιᾷ·
I-see extending both with-chariots and with-every-kind-of army
ἡμέτερον δ' οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοῖς ἀντιτέτακται ἢ ἅρματα·
ours and nothing else to-them is-opposed than chariots
ὥστ' ἔγωγ', ἔφη, εἰ μὴ ἔλαχον τήνδε τὴν τάξιν, ᾐσχυνόμην
so-that I-at-least he-said if not I-had-drawn this the position would-be-ashamed
ἂν ἐνθάδε ὤν· οὕτω πολύ μοι δοκῶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι.
— here being so much to-me I-seem in safest(-place) to-be
17 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ' εἰ τὰ παρὰ σοὶ καλῶς
and — Cyrus said But if the(-things) with you well
ἔχει, θάρρει ὑπὲρ ἐκείνων· ἐγὼ γάρ σοι σὺν θεοῖς ἔρημα
are take-heart for those I for to-you with gods empty
τῶν πολεμίων τὰ πλάγια ταῦτα ἀποδείξω. καὶ σὺ μὴ
of-the enemies the flanks these shall-show and you not
πρότερον ἔμβαλλε τοῖς ἐναντίοις, διαμαρτύρομαι, πρὶν
before charge-into the opponents I-adjure(-you) before
ἂν φεύγοντας τούτους οὓς νῦν φοβῇ θεάσῃ· τοιαῦτα
— fleeing these whom now you-fear you-see such(-things)
δ' ἐμεγαληγόρει, μελλούσης τῆς μάχης γίγνεσθαι· ἄλλως
and he-boasted being-about the battle to-take-place otherwise
δ' οὐ μάλα μεγαλήγορος ἦν· Ὅταν μέντοι τούτους
but not very boastful he-was When however these
ἴδῃς φεύγοντας, ἐμέ τε ἤδη παρεῖναι νόμιζε καὶ ὅρμα
you-see fleeing me both already to-be-present consider and rush

εἰς τοὺς ἄνδρας· καὶ σὺ γὰρ τότε τοῖς μὲν ἐναντίοις
at the men and you for then the indeed opponents
κακίστοις ἂν χρήσαιο, τοῖς δὲ μετὰ σαυτοῦ ἀρίστοις.
worst — would-find the(-men) and with yourself best
ἀλλ' ἕως ἔτι σοι σχολή, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, πάντῃ παρελάσας 18
but while still for-you leisure O Abradatas everywhere having-driven-along
παρὰ τὰ σαυτοῦ ἅρματα παρακάλει τοὺς σὺν σοὶ εἰς
by the your-own chariots exhort the(-men) with you to
τὴν ἐμβολήν, τῷ μὲν προσώπῳ παραθαρρύνων, ταῖς
the attack with-the indeed face encouraging(-them) with-the
δ' ἐλπίσιν ἐπικουφίζων. ὅπως δὲ κράτιστοι φανεῖσθε
and hopes lightening(-them) so-that and best you-will-appear
τῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἅρμασι, φιλονικίαν αὐτοῖς ἔμβαλλε· καὶ
of-the(-men) on the chariots rivalry into-them throw and
γάρ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἢν τάδε εὖ γένηται, πάντες ἐροῦσι
for well know if these(-things) well turn-out all will-say
τὸ λοιπὸν μηδὲν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον ἀρετῆς. ὁ μὲν δὴ
the future nothing to-be more-profitable than-valor — indeed then
Ἀβραδάτας ἀναβὰς παρήλαυνε καὶ ταῦτ' ἐποίει.
Abradatas having-mounted rode-along and these(-things) did
Ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος παριὼν ὡς ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ εὐωνύμῳ, 19
— and again Cyrus passing-by when he-came to the left
ἔνθα ὁ Ὑστάσπας τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἔχων ἦν τῶν Περσῶν
where — Hystaspas the half having was of-the Persian
ἱππέων, ὀνομάσας αὐτὸν εἶπεν, Ὦ Ὑστάσπα, νῦν ὁρᾷς
horsemen having-named him said O Hystaspas now you-see
ἔργον τῆς σῆς ταχυεργίας· νῦν γὰρ ἢν φθάσωμεν τοὺς
work of-the your speed now for if we-anticipate the
πολεμίους κατακανόντες, οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν ἀποθανεῖται.
enemies killing(-them) none of-us will-die

20 καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν
and — Hystaspas having-laughed said But about indeed
τῶν ἐξ ἐναντίας ἡμῖν μελήσει, τοὺς δ' ἐκ πλαγίου
the(-men) from opposite for-us it-will-be-a-care the(-men) and from flank
σὺ ἄλλοις πρόσταξον, ὅπως μηδ' οὗτοι σχολάζωσι. καὶ
you to-others assign so-that not-even these be-idle and
ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἀλλ' ἐπί γε τούτους ἐγὼ αὐτὸς
— Cyrus said But against at-least these I myself
παρέρχομαι· ἀλλ', ὦ Ὑστάσπα, τόδε μέμνησο, ὅτῳ ἂν
am-going but O Hystaspas this remember to-whomever —
ἡμῶν ὁ θεὸς νίκην διδῷ, ἤν τί που μένῃ πολέμιον,
of-us the god victory gives if anything anywhere remain enemy
πρὸς τὸ μαχόμενον ἀεὶ συμβάλλωμεν.
toward the(-part) fighting always let-us-join

21 ταῦτ' εἰπὼν προήει. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὸ πλευρὸν παριὼν
these(-things) having-said he-went-on when and along the flank passing-by
ἐγένετο καὶ κατὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ταύτῃ ἁρμάτων, πρὸς
he-came and to the commander of-the there chariots to
τοῦτον ἔλεξεν, Ἐγὼ δὲ ἔρχομαι ὑμῖν ἐπικουρήσων· ἀλλ'
this(-man) he-said I and am-coming to-you going-to-help but
ὁπόταν αἴσθησθε ἡμᾶς ἐπιτιθεμένους κατ' ἄκρον, τότε καὶ
whenever you-perceive us attacking at the-tip then also
ὑμεῖς πειρᾶσθε ἅμα διὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐλαύνειν·
you try at-the-same-time through the enemies to-drive
πολὺ γὰρ ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ ἔσεσθε ἔξω γενόμενοι ἢ
far for in safer(-position) you-will-be outside having-got than
ἔνδον ἀπολαμβανόμενοι.
inside cut-off

22 ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ παριὼν ἐγένετο ὄπισθεν τῶν ἁρμαμαξῶν,
when and again passing-by he-came behind the carriages
Ἀρταγέρσαν μὲν καὶ Φαρνοῦχον ἐκέλευσεν ἔχοντας τήν
Artagersas indeed and Pharnuchus he-ordered having the

τε τῶν πεζῶν χιλιοστὺν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἱππέων μένειν
both of-the foot-soldiers thousand and the of-the horsemen to-stay
αὐτοῦ. Ἐπειδὰν δ', ἔφη, αἰσθάνησθε ἐμοῦ ἐπιτιθεμένου
there When and he-said you-perceive me attacking
τοῖς κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, τότε καὶ ὑμεῖς τοῖς
the(-men) on the right wing then also you the(-men)
καθ' ὑμᾶς ἐπιχειρεῖτε· μαχεῖσθε δ', ἔφη, πρὸς κέρας,
facing you attack you-will-fight and he-said against the-wing
ᾗπερ ἀσθενέστατον στράτευμα γίγνεται, φάλαγγα ἔχοντες,
where weakest an-army becomes a-phalanx having
ὥσπερ ἂν ἰσχυρότατοι εἴητε. καὶ εἰσὶ μέν, ὡς ὁρᾶτε,
as — strongest you-would-be and are indeed as you-see
τῶν πολεμίων ἱππεῖς οἱ ἔσχατοι· πάντως δὲ πρόετε
of-the enemies horsemen the last(-ones) by-all-means and send-forward
πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὴν τῶν καμήλων τάξιν, καὶ εὖ ἴστε ὅτι
against them the of-the camels company and well know that
καὶ πρὶν μάχεσθαι γελοίους τοὺς πολεμίους θεάσεσθε.
even before to-fight laughable the enemies you-will-see
Ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ταῦτα διαπραξάμενος ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν 23
— indeed then Cyrus these(-things) having-arranged to the right
παρήει· ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος νομίσας ἤδη ἐγγύτερον εἶναι
went-past — and Croesus having-thought already nearer to-be
τῶν πολεμίων τὴν φάλαγγα σὺν ᾗ αὐτὸς ἐπορεύετο ἢ
to-the enemies the phalanx with which himself marched than
τὰ ἀνατεινόμενα κέρατα, ἦρε τοῖς κέρασι σημεῖον μηκέτι
the extending wings raised for-the wings a-signal no-longer
ἄνω πορεύεσθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἐν χώρᾳ στραφῆναι. ὡς δ'
upward to-march but there in place to-wheel when and
ἔστησαν ἀντία πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Κύρου στράτευμα ὁρῶντες,
they-stood facing toward the — of-Cyrus army looking
ἐσήμηνεν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.
he-signaled to-them to-march against the enemies

24 καὶ οὕτω δὴ προσήεσαν τρεῖς φάλαγγες ἐπὶ τὸ Κύρου
and so indeed advanced three phalanxes against the of-Cyrus
στράτευμα, ἡ μὲν μία κατὰ πρόσωπον, τὼ δὲ δύο,
army the indeed one in front the and two
ἡ μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιόν, ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον·
the(-one) indeed on the right the(-one) and on the left
ὥστε πολὺν φόβον παρεῖναι πάσῃ τῇ Κύρου στρατιᾷ.
so-that much fear to-be-present to-all the of-Cyrus army
ὥσπερ γὰρ μικρὸν πλινθίον ἐν μεγάλῳ τεθέν, οὕτω
as for a-small brick in a-large(-one) placed so
καὶ τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα πάντοθεν περιείχετο ὑπὸ τῶν
also the of-Cyrus army from-all-sides was-surrounded by the
πολεμίων καὶ ἱππεῦσι καὶ ὁπλίταις καὶ πελτοφόροις καὶ
enemies both with-horsemen and with-hoplites and with-peltasts and
τοξόταις καὶ ἅρμασι πλὴν ἐξόπισθεν.
with-archers and with-chariots except from-behind

25 ὅμως δὲ ὡς ὁ Κῦρος παρήγγειλεν, ἐστράφησαν πάντες
yet and when — Cyrus passed-the-word turned all
ἀντιπρόσωποι τοῖς πολεμίοις· καὶ ἦν μὲν πολλὴ πάντοθεν
facing the enemies and there-was indeed much on-all-sides
σιγὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ τὸ μέλλον ὀκνεῖν· ἡνίκα δὲ ἔδοξε τῷ Κύρῳ
silence through the the future to-dread when and it-seemed — to-Cyrus
καιρὸς εἶναι, ἐξῆρχε παιᾶνα, συνεπήχησε δὲ πᾶς ὁ στρατός.
the-time to-be he-began a-paean joined-in-the-sound and all the army

26 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ τε ἅμα ἐπηλάλαξαν
after and this — to-Enyalius both at-the-same-time they-raised-the-war-cry
καὶ ἐξανίσταται ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ εὐθὺς μὲν μετὰ τῶν ἱππέων
and rises-up — Cyrus and at-once indeed with the horsemen
λαβὼν πλαγίους τοὺς πολεμίους ὁμόσε αὐτοῖς τὴν
having-taken in-flank the enemies at-close-quarters with-them the
ταχίστην συνεμείγνυεν· οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ συντεταγμένοι
quickest(-way) engaged the and foot-soldiers with-him drawn-up

ταχὺ ἐφείποντο, καὶ περιεπτύσσοντο ἔνθεν καὶ
quickly followed and enfolded(-them) on-this-side and
ἔνθεν, ὥστε πολὺ ἐπλεονέκτει· φάλαγγι γὰρ κατὰ κέρας
on-that-side so-that much he-had-the-advantage a-phalanx for on wing
προσέβαλεν· ὥστε ταχὺ ἰσχυρὰ φυγὴ ἐγένετο τοῖς πολεμίοις.
he-attacked so-that quickly strong flight arose for-the enemies
Ὡς δὲ ᾔσθετο Ἀρταγέρσης ἐν ἔργῳ ὄντα τὸν Κῦρον, 27
When and perceived Artagersas in action being — Cyrus
ἐπιτίθεται καὶ αὐτὸς κατὰ τὰ εὐώνυμα, προεὶς τὰς
attacks also himself on the left having-sent-forward the
καμήλους ὥσπερ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ ἵπποι αὐτὰς
camels as Cyrus ordered the and horses them
ἐκ πάνυ πολλοῦ οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ᾽ οἳ μὲν ἔκφρονες
from very far not awaited but some indeed out-of-their-wits
γιγνόμενοι ἔφευγον, οἳ δ᾽ ἐξήλλοντο, οἳ δ᾽ ἐνέπιπτον
becoming fled some and leapt-out some and fell-on
ἀλλήλοις. τοιαῦτα γὰρ πάσχουσιν ἵπποι ὑπὸ καμήλων.
one-another such(-things) for suffer horses from camels
ὁ δὲ Ἀρταγέρσης συντεταγμένους ἔχων τοὺς μεθ᾽ 28
— and Artagersas drawn-up having the(-men) with
ἑαυτοῦ ταραττομένοις ἐπέκειτο· καὶ τὰ ἅρματα δὲ
himself being-thrown-into-confusion pressed-on(-them) and the chariots and
κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν καὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἅμα ἐνέβαλλε. καὶ
on the right and the left at-the-same-time charged and
πολλοὶ μὲν τὰ ἅρματα φεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν κατὰ κέρας
many indeed the chariots fleeing by the(-men) on wing
ἑπομένων ἀπέθνῃσκον, πολλοὶ δὲ τούτους φεύγοντες ὑπὸ
following died many and these fleeing by
τῶν ἁρμάτων ἀνηλίσκοντο.
the chariots were-destroyed

29 Καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας δὲ οὐκέτι ἔμελλεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀναβοήσας,
And — Abradatas and no-longer delayed but having-shouted
Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἕπεσθε, ἐνίει οὐδὲν φειδόμενος τῶν
Men friends follow he-drove-on not-at-all sparing the
ἵππων, ἀλλ᾽ ἰσχυρῶς ἐξαιμάττων τῷ κέντρῳ·
horses but strongly drawing-blood-from(-them) with-the goad
συνεξώρμησαν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἁρματηλάται. καὶ τὰ μὲν
set-out-with(-him) and also the other chariot-drivers and the indeed
ἅρματα ἔφευγεν αὐτοὺς εὐθύς, τὰ μὲν καὶ ἀναλαβόντα
chariots fled them at-once the(-ones) indeed even having-taken-up
τοὺς παραιβάτας, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀπολιπόντα.
the warriors the(-ones) and even having-left(-them)

30 ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀντικρὺ διάττων εἰς τὴν τῶν Αἰγυπτίων
— and Abradatas straight darting into the of-the Egyptians
φάλαγγα ἐμβάλλει· συνεισέβαλον δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ
phalanx charges charged-in-with and him also the(-men)
ἐγγύτατα τεταγμένοι. πολλαχοῦ μὲν οὖν καὶ ἄλλοθι δῆλον
nearest posted in-many-places indeed then also elsewhere clear
ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν ἰσχυροτέρα φάλαγξ ἢ ὅταν ἐκ φίλων
that not is stronger phalanx than when from friendly
συμμάχων ἠθροισμένη ᾖ, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐδήλωσεν. οἱ
allies gathered it-is and in this and it-showed(-itself) the
μὲν γὰρ ἑταῖροί τε αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζοι συνεισέβαλον·
indeed for comrades both of-him and table-companions charged-in-with(-him)
οἱ δ᾽ ἄλλοι ἡνίοχοι ὡς εἶδον ὑπομένοντας πολλῷ στίφει
the and other drivers when they-saw holding-firm with-a-great mass
τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους, ἐξέκλιναν κατὰ τὰ φεύγοντα ἅρματα
the Egyptians swerved along the fleeing chariots
καὶ τούτοις ἐφείποντο.
and these followed

οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ἀβραδάταν ᾗ μὲν ἐνέβαλλον, ἅτε 31
the(-men) and about Abradatas where indeed they-charged inasmuch-as
οὐ δυναμένων διαχάσασθαι τῶν Αἰγυπτίων διὰ τὸ
not being-able to-part the Egyptians because-of the
μένειν τοὺς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν αὐτῶν, τοὺς μὲν
to-stand-firm the(-men) on-this-side and on-that-side of-them the(-ones) indeed
ὀρθοὺς τῇ ῥύμῃ τῇ τῶν ἵππων παίοντες ἀνέτρεπον,
upright by-the rush the of-the horses striking overturned
τοὺς δὲ πίπτοντας κατηλόων καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ ὅπλα καὶ
the(-ones) and falling they-crushed both them and arms and
ἵπποις καὶ τροχοῖς. ὅτου δ' ἐπιλάβοιτο τὰ δρέπανα,
with-horses and wheels whatever and seized the scythes
πάντα βίᾳ διεκόπτετο καὶ ὅπλα καὶ σώματα.
all by-force was-cut-through both arms and bodies
ἐν δὲ τῷ ἀδιηγήτῳ τούτῳ ταράχῳ ὑπὸ τῶν παντοδαπῶν 32
in and the indescribable this confusion by the of-every-kind
σωρευμάτων ἐξαλλομένων τῶν τροχῶν ἐκπίπτει ὁ
heaps leaping-up the wheels falls-out —
Ἀβραδάτας καὶ ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν συνεισβαλόντων, καὶ
Abradatas and others and of-the(-men) having-charged-in-with(-him) and
οὗτοι μὲν ἐνταῦθα ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι κατεκόπησαν
these indeed there men brave having-proved were-cut-down
καὶ ἀπέθανον· οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι συνεπισπόμενοι, ᾗ μὲν
and died the and Persians following-up where indeed
ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἐνέβαλε καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, ταύτῃ
— Abradatas charged and the(-men) with him there
ἐπεισπεσόντες τεταραγμένους ἐφόνευον, ᾗ δὲ ἀπαθεῖς
having-fallen-in thrown-into-confusion(-men) they-slaughtered where but unharmed
ἐγένοντο οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι, πολλοὶ δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν, ἐχώρουν
were the Egyptians many and these were advanced
ἐναντίοι τοῖς Πέρσαις.
opposite to-the Persians

33 Ἔνθα δὴ δεινὴ μάχη ἦν καὶ δοράτων καὶ ξυστῶν καὶ
There indeed terrible battle was both of-spears and of-lances and
μαχαιρῶν· ἐπλεονέκτουν μέντοι οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι καὶ πλήθει
of-sabers had-the-advantage however the Egyptians both in-number
καὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις. τά τε γὰρ δόρατα ἰσχυρὰ καὶ μακρὰ
and in-the arms the both for spears strong and long
ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἔχουσιν, αἵ τε ἀσπίδες πολὺ μᾶλλον τῶν
still even now they-have the and shields much more than-the
θωράκων καὶ τῶν γέρρων καὶ στεγάζουσι τὰ σώματα καὶ
breastplates and the wicker-shields both cover the bodies and
πρὸς τὸ ὠθεῖσθαι συνεργάζονται πρὸς τοῖς ὤμοις οὖσαι.
for the to-push help at the shoulders being
συγκλείσαντες οὖν τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐχώρουν καὶ ἐώθουν.
having-locked then the shields they-advanced and pushed
34 οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀντέχειν, ἅτε ἐν ἄκραις
the and Persians not could to-hold-out inasmuch-as in the-tips-of
ταῖς χερσὶ τὰ γέρρα ἔχοντες, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχάζοντο
the hands the wicker-shields having but step-by step they-gave-way
παίοντες καὶ παιόμενοι, ἕως ὑπὸ ταῖς μηχαναῖς ἐγένοντο.
striking and being-struck until under the engines they-were
ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐνταῦθα ἦλθον, ἐπαίοντο αὖθις οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι ἀπὸ
when however there they-came were-struck in-turn the Egyptians from
τῶν πύργων· καὶ οἱ ἐπὶ πᾶσι δὲ οὐκ εἴων φεύγειν
the towers and the(-men) behind all and not allowed to-flee
οὔτε τοὺς τοξότας οὔτε τοὺς ἀκοντιστάς, ἀλλ' ἀνατεταμένοι
neither the archers nor the javelin-men but having-raised
τὰς μαχαίρας ἠνάγκαζον καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν.
the sabers compelled(-them) both to-shoot and to-hurl-javelins
35 ἦν δὲ πολὺς μὲν ἀνδρῶν φόνος, πολὺς δὲ κτύπος
there-was and much indeed of-men slaughter much and clashing
ὅπλων καὶ βελῶν παντοδαπῶν, πολλὴ δὲ βοὴ
of-arms and of-missiles of-every-kind great and shouting

τῶν μὲν ἀνακαλούντων ἀλλήλους, τῶν δὲ
of-the(-men) indeed calling one-another of-the(-men) and
παρακελευομένων, τῶν δὲ θεοὺς ἐπικαλουμένων.
exhorting of-the(-men) and gods calling-upon
Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Κῦρος διώκων τοὺς καθ' αὑτὸν 36
In and this Cyrus pursuing the(-men) opposite himself
παραγίγνεται. ὡς δ' εἶδε τοὺς Πέρσας ἐκ τῆς χώρας
arrives when and he-saw the Persians from the position
ἐωσμένους, ἤλγησέ τε καὶ γνοὺς ὅτι οὐδαμῶς ἂν θᾶττον
pushed he-was-grieved both and knowing that in-no-way — sooner
σχοίη τοὺς πολεμίους τῆς εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν προόδου
he-would-check the enemies from-the to the front advance
ἢ εἰ εἰς τὸ ὄπισθεν περιελάσειεν αὐτῶν, παραγγείλας
than if to the rear he-rode-around of-them having-ordered
ἕπεσθαι τοῖς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ περιήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ ὄπισθεν·
to-follow the(-men) with himself he-rode-around to the rear
καὶ εἰσπεσόντες παίουσιν ἀποροῦντας καὶ πολλοὺς
and having-fallen-upon(-them) they-strike(-them) helpless and many
κατακαίνουσιν.
they-kill
οἱ δὲ Αἰγύπτιοι ὡς ᾔσθοντο, ἐβόων τε ὅτι ὄπισθεν οἱ 37
the and Egyptians when they-perceived shouted both that behind(-were) the
πολέμιοι καὶ ἐστρέφοντο ἐν ταῖς πληγαῖς. καὶ ἐνταῦθα
enemies and turned-about in the blows and then
δὴ φύρδην ἐμάχοντο καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἱππεῖς, πεπτωκὼς
indeed confusedly they-fought both foot and horse having-fallen
δέ τις ὑπὸ τῷ Κύρου ἵππῳ καὶ πατούμενος παίει
and someone under the of-Cyrus horse and being-trampled strikes
εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τῇ μαχαίρᾳ τὸν ἵππον αὐτοῦ· ὁ δὲ
in the belly with-the saber the horse of-him the and
ἵππος πληγεὶς σφαδάζων ἀποσείεται τὸν Κῦρον.
horse struck struggling shakes-off — Cyrus

38 ἔνθα δὴ ἔγνω ἄν τις ὅσου ἄξιον εἴη τὸ φιλεῖσθαι
there indeed would-have-known — one how-much worth is the to-be-loved
ἄρχοντα ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ αὐτόν. εὐθὺς γὰρ ἀνεβόησάν τε
a-ruler by the(-men) around him at-once for shouted both
πάντες καὶ προσπεσόντες ἐμάχοντο, ἐώθουν, ἐωθοῦντο,
all and having-fallen-upon(-them) fought pushed were-pushed
ἔπαιον, ἐπαίοντο. καταπηδήσας δέ τις τῶν τοῦ Κύρου
struck were-struck having-leapt-down and someone of-the — of-Cyrus
ὑπηρετῶν ἀναβάλλει αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἵππον.
attendants puts-up him on the his-own horse
39 ὡς δ' ἀνέβη ὁ Κῦρος, κατεῖδε πάντοθεν ἤδη παιομένους
when and mounted — Cyrus he-saw from-all-sides already being-struck
τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους· καὶ γὰρ Ὑστάσπας ἤδη παρῆν σὺν
the Egyptians and for Hystaspas already was-present with
τοῖς Περσῶν ἱππεῦσι καὶ Χρυσάντας. ἀλλὰ τούτους
the of-Persians horsemen and Chrysantas but these
ἐμβάλλειν μὲν οὐκέτι εἴα εἰς τὴν φάλαγγα τῶν
to-charge indeed no-longer he-allowed into the phalanx of-the
Αἰγυπτίων, ἔξωθεν δὲ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν ἐκέλευσεν.
Egyptians from-outside but to-shoot and to-hurl-javelins he-ordered
ὡς δ' ἐγένετο περιελαύνων παρὰ τὰς μηχανάς, ἔδοξεν
when and he-came riding-around by the engines it-seemed-good
αὐτῷ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τῶν πύργων τινὰ καὶ κατασκέψασθαι
to-him to-climb onto the towers one and to-look-down
εἴ πη καὶ ἄλλο τι μένοι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ μάχοιτο.
if anywhere also other any remained of-the enemies and fought
40 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη, κατεῖδε μεστὸν τὸ πεδίον ἵππων,
when and he-had-climbed he-saw full the plain of-horses
ἀνθρώπων, ἁρμάτων, φευγόντων, διωκόντων, κρατούντων,
men chariots fleeing pursuing conquering
κρατουμένων· μένον δ' οὐδαμοῦ οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐδύνατο
being-conquered remaining but nowhere anything still he-could

κατιδεῖν πλὴν τὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων στῖφος· οὗτοι δὲ ἐπειδὴ
to-see except the of-the Egyptians mass these and since
ἠποροῦντο, κύκλον ποιησάμενοι, ὥστε ὁρᾶσθαι πάντοθεν
they-were-at-a-loss a-circle having-made so-that to-be-seen on-all-sides
τὰ ὅπλα, ὑπὸ ταῖς ἀσπίσιν ἐκάθηντο· καὶ ἐποίουν μὲν
the arms under the shields sat and did indeed
οὐδὲν ἔτι, ἔπασχον δὲ πολλὰ καὶ δεινά.
nothing any-longer suffered but many(-things) and terrible
Ἀγασθεὶς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοὺς καὶ οἰκτίρων ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ 41
Having-admired and — Cyrus them and pitying that good
ἄνδρες ὄντες ἀπώλλυντο, ἀνεχώρισε πάντας τοὺς
men being they-were-perishing withdrew all the(-men)
περιμαχομένους καὶ μάχεσθαι οὐδένα ἔτι εἴα. πέμπει
fighting-around(-them) and to-fight no-one any-longer allowed he-sends
δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς κήρυκα ἐρωτῶν πότερα βούλονται
and to them a-herald asking whether they-wish
ἀπολέσθαι πάντες ὑπὲρ τῶν προδεδωκότων αὐτοὺς ἢ
to-perish all on-behalf-of the(-men) having-betrayed them or
σωθῆναι ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ δοκοῦντες εἶναι. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο,
to-be-saved men good seeming to-be they and answered
Πῶς δ' ἂν ἡμεῖς σωθείημεν ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ δοκοῦντες εἶναι;
How and — we could-be-saved men good seeming to-be
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πάλιν ἔλεγεν, Ὅτι ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς ὁρῶμεν 42
— and Cyrus again said Because we you see
μόνους καὶ μένοντας καὶ μάχεσθαι ἐθέλοντας. Ἀλλὰ
alone both staying and to-fight willing But
τοὐντεῦθεν, ἔφασαν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι, τί καλὸν ἂν ποιοῦντες
next said the Egyptians what honorable — doing
σωθείημεν; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος αὖ πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν, Τά τε
could-we-be-saved and — Cyrus in-turn to this said The both

ὅπλα παραδόντες φίλοι τε γενόμενοι τοῖς αἱρουμένοις
arms having-surrendered friends and having-become to-the(-men) choosing
ὑμᾶς σῶσαι, ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι.
you to-save it-being-possible to-destroy(-you)

43 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπήροντο, Ἢν δὲ γενώμεθά τοι
having-heard these(-things) they-asked If and we-become surely
φίλοι, τί ἡμῖν ἀξιώσεις χρῆσθαι; ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κῦρος
friends how us will-you-think-fit to-use answered — Cyrus
Εὖ ποιεῖν καὶ εὖ πάσχειν. ἐπηρώτων πάλιν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι
Well to-treat and well to-be-treated asked again the Egyptians
Τίνα εὐεργεσίαν; πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, Μισθὸν
What benefit to this said — Cyrus Pay
μὲν ὑμῖν δοίην ἂν πλείονα ἢ νῦν λαμβάνετε ὅσον
indeed to-you I-would-give — more than now you-receive as-long-as
ἂν χρόνον πόλεμος ᾖ· εἰρήνης δὲ γενομένης τῷ
— time war be peace and having-come to-the(-man)
βουλομένῳ ὑμῶν μένειν παρ᾽ ἐμοὶ χώραν τε δώσω καὶ
wishing of-you to-stay with me country both I-shall-give and
πόλεις καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ οἰκέτας.
cities and wives and servants

44 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ Κροῖσον
having-heard these(-things) the Egyptians the indeed against Croesus
συστρατεύειν ἀφελεῖν σφίσιν ἐδεήθησαν· τούτῳ
to-campaign-with(-him) to-take-away for-them they-begged to-this(-man)
γὰρ μόνῳ γιγνώσκεσθαι ἔφασαν· τὰ δ᾽ ἄλλα
for alone to-be-known they-said the and other(-terms)
συνομολογήσαντες ἔδοσαν πίστιν καὶ ἔλαβον.
having-agreed they-gave pledge and received(-it)

45 καὶ οἱ Αἰγύπτιοί τε οἱ καταμείναντες τότε ἔτι
and the Egyptians both the(-ones) having-stayed then still
καὶ νῦν βασιλεῖ πιστοὶ διαμένουσι, Κῦρός τε πόλεις
and now to-the-king faithful remain Cyrus both cities

αὐτοῖς ἔδωκε, τὰς μὲν ἄνω, αἳ ἔτι καὶ νῦν πόλεις
to-them gave the(-ones) indeed inland which still also now cities
Αἰγυπτίων καλοῦνται, Λάρισαν δὲ καὶ Κυλλήνην περὶ
of-Egyptians are-called Larisa and and Cyllene near
Κύμην πλησίον θαλάττης, ἃς ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ ἀπ᾽
Cyme near sea which still also now the(-people) from
ἐκείνων ἔχουσι. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη
those hold these(-things) and having-accomplished — Cyrus already
σκοταῖος ἀναγαγὼν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐν Θυμβράροις.
in-the-dark having-led-back encamped in Thymbrara
Ἐν δὲ τῇ μάχῃ τῶν μὲν πολεμίων Αἰγύπτιοι μόνοι 46
In and the battle of-the indeed enemies Egyptians alone
εὐδοκίμησαν, τῶν δὲ σὺν Κύρῳ τὸ Περσῶν ἱππικὸν
won-renown of-the(-men) and with Cyrus the of-Persians cavalry
κράτιστον ἔδοξεν εἶναι· ὥστ᾽ ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει ἡ
best seemed to-be so-that still even now remains the
ὅπλισις ἣν τότε Κῦρος τοῖς ἱππεῦσι κατεσκεύασεν.
armament which then Cyrus for-the horsemen equipped
εὐδοκίμησε δὲ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα· 47
won-renown and strongly also the scythe-bearing chariots
ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει τὸ πολεμιστήριον
so-that also this still even now remains the war-chariot
τῷ ἀεὶ βασιλεύοντι.
for-the always reigning(-king)
αἱ μέντοι κάμηλοι ἐφόβουν μόνον τοὺς ἵππους, οὐ μέντοι 48
the however camels frightened only the horses not however
κατέκαινόν γε οἱ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἱππέας, οὐδ᾽ αὐτοί
did-kill at-least the(-men) on them horsemen nor themselves
γε ἀπέθνῃσκον ὑπὸ ἱππέων· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἵππος ἐπέλαζε.
at-least died by horsemen no for horse came-near

49 καὶ χρήσιμον μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὔτε τρέφειν οὐδεὶς
and useful indeed it-seemed to-be but for neither to-rear anyone
ἐθέλει καλὸς κἀγαθὸς κάμηλον ὥστ᾽ ἐποχεῖσθαι, οὔτε μελετᾶν
is-willing noble and-good a-camel so-as to-ride(-it) nor to-practice
ὡς πολεμήσων ἀπὸ τούτων. οὕτω δὴ ἀπολαβοῦσαι
as going-to-make-war from these so indeed having-recovered
πάλιν τὸ ἑαυτῶν σχῆμα ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις διάγουσι.
again the their-own position among the baggage they-pass-their-time

II · SARDIS AND CROESUS

Cyrus takes the citadel of Sardis by night, guided by a former slave, and Croesus shuts himself in the palace. The Chaldaeans who left their posts to plunder are made to give their booty to the guards. Croesus persuades Cyrus to spare the city from plunder and tells how he tested Apollo instead of asking, was granted sons who brought him no joy, and misread the oracle that knowing himself he would be happy. Cyrus restores him his wife, daughters, friends, servants, and table; Croesus says he will now live the life his wife had, and Cyrus, admiring his good cheer, keeps him at his side from then on.

1 Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον δειπνοποιησάμενοι καὶ
And the(-men) indeed about — Cyrus having-made-dinner and
φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι, ὥσπερ ἔδει, ἐκοιμήθησαν.
guards having-posted as (one)-should went-to-sleep
Κροῖσος μέντοι εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεων ἔφευγε σὺν τῷ
Croesus however at-once toward Sardis fled with the
στρατεύματι· τὰ δ᾽ ἄλλα φῦλα ὅποι ἐδύνατο προσωτάτω
army the and other tribes wherever could farthest
ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ τῆς ἐπ᾽ οἶκον ὁδοῦ ἕκαστος ἀπεχώρει.
in the night of-the toward home road each withdrew

ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεις ἦγε Κῦρος. 2
when and day came at-once against Sardis led Cyrus
ὡς δ' ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ τείχει τῷ ἐν Σάρδεσι, τάς
when and he-came to the wall the(-one) in Sardis the
τε μηχανὰς ἀνίστη ὡς προσβαλῶν πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος καὶ
both engines he-set-up as going-to-attack against the wall and
κλίμακας παρεσκευάζετο.
ladders prepared
ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν κατὰ τὰ ἀποτομώτατα δοκοῦντα 3
these(-things) and doing at the(-parts) steepest seeming
εἶναι τοῦ Σαρδιανῶν ἐρύματος τῆς ἐπιούσης νυκτὸς
to-be of-the of-the-Sardians fortification in-the following night
ἀναβιβάζει Χαλδαίους τε καὶ Πέρσας. ἡγήσατο δ' αὐτοῖς
sends-up Chaldaeans both and Persians led and them
ἀνὴρ Πέρσης δοῦλος γεγενημένος τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
a-man Persian slave having-been of-the in the acropolis
τινὸς φρουρῶν καὶ καταμεμαθηκὼς κατάβασιν εἰς τὸν
of-one guards and having-learned a-way-down to the
ποταμὸν καὶ ἀνάβασιν τὴν αὐτήν.
river and way-up the same
ὡς δ' ἐγένετο τοῦτο δῆλον ὅτι εἶχετο τὰ ἄκρα, πάντες δὴ 4
when and became this clear that was-held the heights all indeed
ἔφευγον οἱ Λυδοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν τειχῶν ὅποι ἐδύνατο ἕκαστος
fled the Lydians from the walls wherever could each
τῆς πόλεως. Κῦρος δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰσῄει εἰς τὴν
of-the city Cyrus and at-the-same-time-as the day entered into the
πόλιν καὶ παρήγγειλεν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως μηδένα κινεῖσθαι.
city and ordered from the ranks no-one to-move
ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος κατακλεισάμενος ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις Κῦρον 5
— and Croesus having-shut-himself-up in the palace Cyrus
ἐβόα· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν Κροίσου φύλακας κατέλιπεν,
called-on — and Cyrus — indeed of-Croesus guards left

αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν ἐχομένην ἄκραν
himself and having-led-away(-them) to the held height
ὡς εἶδε τοὺς μὲν Πέρσας φυλάττοντας τὴν ἄκραν,
when he-saw the indeed Persians guarding the height
ὥσπερ ἔδει, τὰ δὲ τῶν Χαλδαίων ὅπλα ἔρημα,
as (one)-should the and of-the Chaldaeans arms deserted
καταδεδραμήκεσαν γὰρ ἁρπασόμενοι τὰ ἐκ τῶν
they-had-run-down for going-to-plunder the(-things) from the
οἰκιῶν, εὐθὺς συνεκάλεσεν αὐτῶν τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ εἶπεν
houses at-once called-together their the commanders and told
αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος ὡς τάχιστα.
them to-depart from the army as quickly-as-possible
6 Οὐ γὰρ ἄν, ἔφη, ἀνασχοίμην πλεονεκτοῦντας ὁρῶν
Not for — he-said I-would-endure taking-advantage seeing
τοὺς ἀτακτοῦντας. καὶ εὖ μέν, ἔφη, ἐπίστασθε ὅτι
the(-men) breaking-ranks and well indeed he-said you-know that
παρεσκευαζόμην ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς ἐμοὶ συστρατευσαμένους
I-was-preparing I you the(-ones) with-me having-campaigned
πᾶσι Χαλδαίοις μακαριστοὺς ποιῆσαι· νῦν δ', ἔφη, μὴ
to-all Chaldaeans enviable to-make now but he-said not
θαυμάζετε ἤν τις καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν ὑμῖν κρείττων ἐντύχῃ.
wonder if someone even departing you stronger meets
7 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἔδεισάν τε καὶ
having-heard these(-things) the Chaldaeans feared both and
ἱκέτευον παύσασθαι ὀργιζόμενον καὶ τὰ χρήματα πάντα
begged(-him) to-cease being-angry and the goods all
ἀποδώσειν ἔφασαν. ὃ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδὲν αὐτῶν δέοιτο.
they-would-give-back they-said he and said that nothing of-them he-needed
Ἀλλ' εἴ με, ἔφη, βούλεσθε παύσασθαι ἀχθόμενον, ἀπόδοτε
But if me he-said you-wish to-cease being-vexed give-back
πάντα ὅσα ἐλάβετε τοῖς διαφυλάξασι τὴν ἄκραν. ἢν
all which you-took to-the(-men) having-guarded the height if

γὰρ αἴσθωνται οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ὅτι πλεονεκτοῦσιν
for perceive the other soldiers that get-the-advantage
οἱ εὔτακτοι γενόμενοι, πάντα μοι καλῶς ἕξει.
the(-men) orderly having-been all-things for-me well will-be
οἱ μὲν δὴ Χαλδαῖοι οὕτως ἐποίησαν ὡς ἐκέλευσεν ὁ 8
the indeed then Chaldaeans so did as ordered —
Κῦρος· καὶ ἔλαβον οἱ πειθόμενοι πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα
Cyrus and received the(-men) obeying many and all-kinds-of
χρήματα. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος καταστρατοπεδεύσας τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,
goods — and Cyrus having-encamped the(-men) of-himself
ὅπου ἐδόκει ἐπιτηδειότατον εἶναι τῆς πόλεως, μένειν ἐπὶ
where seemed most-suitable to-be of-the city to-stay by
τοῖς ὅπλοις παρήγγειλε καὶ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι.
the arms ordered and to-take-breakfast
Ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ τὸν 9
These(-things) and having-accomplished to-bring he-ordered to-him —
Κροῖσον. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, Χαῖρε, ἔφη,
Croesus — and Croesus when he-saw — Cyrus Hail said
ὦ δέσποτα· τοῦτο γὰρ ἡ τύχη καὶ ἔχειν τὸ ἀπὸ
O master this for the fortune both to-have the(-time) from
τοῦδε δίδωσι σοὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ προσαγορεύειν.
this grants to-you and to-me to-address(-you)
Καὶ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐπείπερ ἄνθρωποί γέ ἐσμεν 10
And you he-said O Croesus since-indeed men at-least we-are
ἀμφότεροι. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, ἆρ' ἄν τί μοι
both but he-said O Croesus then — something to-me
θελήσαις συμβουλεῦσαι; Βουλοίμην γ' ἄν, ἔφη,
would-you-be-willing to-advise I-would-wish at-least — he-said
ὦ Κῦρε, ἀγαθόν τί σοι εὑρεῖν· τοῦτο γὰρ ἂν οἶμαι
O Cyrus good some for-you to-find this for — I-think
ἀγαθὸν καὶμοὶ γενέσθαι.
good also-for-me would-be

11 Ἄκουσον τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὁρῶν
Hear then he-said O Croesus I for seeing
τοὺς στρατιώτας πολλὰ πεπονηκότας καὶ πολλὰ
the soldiers many-things having-toiled and many-things
κεκινδυνευκότας καὶ νῦν νομίζοντας πόλιν ἔχειν τὴν
having-risked and now believing a-city to-have the
πλουσιωτάτην ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ μετὰ Βαβυλῶνα, ἀξιῶ
richest in — Asia after Babylon I-think-it-right
ὠφεληθῆναι τοὺς στρατιώτας. γιγνώσκω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι
to-be-benefited the soldiers I-know for he-said that
εἰ μή τινα καρπὸν λήψονται τῶν πόνων, οὐ δυνήσομαι
if not some fruit they-will-take of-the toils not I-shall-be-able
αὐτοὺς πολὺν χρόνον πειθομένους ἔχειν. διαρπάσαι μὲν
them long time obeying to-keep to-plunder indeed
οὖν αὐτοῖς ἐφεῖναι τὴν πόλιν οὐ βούλομαι· τήν τε γὰρ
then to-them to-allow the city not I-wish the both for
πόλιν νομίζω ἂν διαφθαρῆναι, ἔν τε ἁρπαγῇ εὖ οἶδ᾽
city I-think — would-be-destroyed in and plunder well I-know
ὅτι οἱ πονηρότατοι πλεονεκτήσειαν ἄν.
that the worst(-men) would-get-the-advantage —

12 ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος ἔλεξεν, Ἀλλ᾽ ἐμέ, ἔφη, ἔασον
having-heard these(-things) — Croesus said But me said allow
λέξαι πρὸς οὓς ἂν ἐγὼ Λυδῶν ἕλωμαι ὅτι διαπέπραγμαι
to-say to whom — I of-Lydians choose that I-have-obtained
παρὰ σοῦ μὴ ποιῆσαι ἁρπαγὴν μηδὲ ἐᾶσαι ἀφανισθῆναι
from you not to-make plunder nor to-allow to-be-destroyed
παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας· ὑπεσχόμην δέ σοι ἀντὶ τούτων
children and women I-promised and to-you in-return-for these(-things)
ἦ μὴν παρ᾽ ἑκόντων Λυδῶν ἔσεσθαι πᾶν ὅ τι
truly indeed from willing Lydians there-would-be all what ever
καλὸν κἀγαθόν ἐστιν ἐν Σάρδεσιν.
fine and-good is in Sardis

ἢν γὰρ ταῦτα ἀκούσωσιν, οἶδ' ὅτι ἥξει σοι πᾶν ὅ 13
if for these(-things) they-hear I-know that will-come to-you all what
τι ἐστὶν ἐνθάδε καλὸν κτῆμα ἀνδρὶ καὶ γυναικί· καὶ
ever is here fine possession for-a-man and for-a-woman and
ὅμως εἰς νέωτα πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν πάλιν σοι πλήρης
yet by next-year of-many and fine(-things) again for-you full
ἡ πόλις ἔσται· ἢν δὲ διαρπάσῃς, καὶ αἱ τέχναι σοι,
the city will-be if but you-plunder also the crafts for-you
ἃς πηγάς φασι τῶν καλῶν εἶναι, διεφθαρμέναι ἔσονται.
which sources they-say of-the fine(-things) to-be destroyed will-be
ἐξέσται δέ σοι ἰδόντι τὰ ἐλθόντα ἔτι καὶ περὶ 14
it-will-be-possible and for-you having-seen the(-things) having-come still also about
τῆς ἁρπαγῆς βουλεύσασθαι. πρῶτον δ', ἔφη, ἐπὶ τοὺς ἐμοὺς
the plunder to-deliberate first and he-said to the my
θησαυροὺς πέμπε καὶ παραλαμβανόντων οἱ σοὶ φύλακες
treasuries send and let-take-over the your guards
παρὰ τῶν ἐμῶν φυλάκων. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἅπαντα οὕτω
from the my guards these(-things) indeed then all so
συνήνεσε ποιεῖν ὁ Κῦρος ὥσπερ ἔλεξεν ὁ Κροῖσος.
agreed to-do — Cyrus as said — Croesus
Τάδε δέ μοι πάντως, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, λέξον πῶς σοι 15
These(-things) and to-me by-all-means he-said O Croesus tell how for-you
ἀποβέβηκε τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖς χρηστηρίου· σοὶ
have-turned-out the(-things) from the at Delphi oracle by-you
γὰρ δὴ λέγεται πάνυ γε τεθεραπεῦσθαι ὁ Ἀπόλλων
for indeed it-is-said very at-least to-have-been-served — Apollo
καί σε πάντα ἐκείνῳ πειθόμενον πράττειν.
and you all-things him obeying to-do
Ἐβουλόμην ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχειν· νῦν δὲ πάντα 16
I-would-wish — he-said O Cyrus so to-be now but all-things
τἀναντία εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς πράττων προσηνέχθην τῷ
the-opposite at-once from beginning doing I-behaved —

Ἀπόλλωνι. Πῶς δέ; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· δίδασκε· πάνυ γὰρ
toward-Apollo How and said — Cyrus teach(-me) very for
παράδοξα λέγεις.
strange-things you-say

17 Ὅτι πρῶτον μέν, ἔφη, ἀμελήσας ἐρωτᾶν τὸν θεόν, εἴ
Because first indeed he-said having-neglected to-ask the god if
τι ἐδεόμην, ἀπεπειρώμην αὐτοῦ εἰ δύναιτο ἀληθεύειν.
anything I-needed I-made-trial of-him whether he-could to-speak-truth
τοῦτο δ', ἔφη, μὴ ὅτι θεός, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄνθρωποι καλοὶ
this and he-said not to-speak-of a-god but even men noble
κἀγαθοί, ἐπειδὰν γνῶσιν ἀπιστούμενοι, οὐ φιλοῦσι τοὺς
and-good when they-perceive being-distrusted not love the(-ones)
ἀπιστοῦντας.
distrusting

18 ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἔγνω καὶ μάλ' ἄτοπα ἐμοῦ ποιοῦντος,
when however he-knew even very strange-things me doing
καίπερ πρόσω Δελφῶν ἀπέχοντος, οὕτω δὴ πέμπω περὶ
although far from-Delphi being-distant so indeed I-send about
παίδων.
children

19 ὁ δέ μοι τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οὐδ' ἀπεκρίνατο· ἐπεὶ δ'
he and to-me the indeed first not-even answered when and
ἐγὼ πολλὰ μὲν πέμπων ἀναθήματα χρυσᾶ, πολλὰ δ'
I many indeed sending offerings golden many and
ἀργυρᾶ, πάμπολλα δὲ θύων ἐξιλασάμην αὐτόν ποτε, ὡς
silver very-many and sacrificing propitiated him at-last as
ἐδόκουν, τότε δή μοι ἀποκρίνεται ἐρωτῶντι τί ἄν μοι
I-thought then indeed to-me he-answers asking what — to-me
ποιήσαντι παῖδες γένοιντο· ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι ἔσοιντο.
having-done children would-be-born he and said that there-would-be

καὶ ἐγένοντο μέν, οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐψεύσατο, γενόμενοι 20
and there-were indeed nor for even this he-lied having-been-born
δὲ οὐδὲν ὤνησαν. ὃ μὲν γὰρ κωφὸς ὢν διετέλει,
but in-nothing they-helped the(-one) indeed for dumb being continued
ὃ δὲ ἄριστος γενόμενος ἐν ἀκμῇ τοῦ βίου ἀπώλετο.
the(-other) and best having-become in the-prime of-the life perished
πιεζόμενος δὲ ταῖς περὶ τοὺς παῖδας συμφοραῖς πάλιν
being-oppressed and by-the concerning the children misfortunes again
πέμπω καὶ ἐπερωτῶ τὸν θεὸν τί ἂν ποιῶν τὸν λοιπὸν
I-send and ask the god what — doing the rest-of
βίον εὐδαιμονέστατα διατελέσαιμι· ὃ δέ μοι ἀπεκρίνατο,
life most-happily I-would-pass he and to-me answered
Σαυτὸν γιγνώσκων εὐδαίμων, Κροῖσε, περάσεις.
Yourself knowing happy Croesus you-will-pass
ἐγὼ δ' ἀκούσας τὴν μαντείαν ἥσθην· ἐνόμιζον γὰρ τὸ 21
I and having-heard the oracle was-pleased I-thought for the
ῥᾷστόν μοι αὐτὸν προστάξαντα τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν διδόναι.
easiest(-thing) to-me him having-enjoined the happiness to-give
ἄλλους μὲν γὰρ γιγνώσκειν τοὺς μὲν οἷόν τ' εἶναι
others indeed for to-know some indeed possible — to-be
τοὺς δ' οὔ· ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὅστις ἐστὶ πάντα τινὰ ἐνόμιζον
others and not oneself but who he-is every one I-thought
ἄνθρωπον εἰδέναι.
man to-know
καὶ τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα δὴ χρόνον, ἕως μὲν εἶχον ἡσυχίαν, 22
and the after these(-things) indeed time while indeed I-kept quiet
οὐδὲν ἐνεκάλουν μετὰ τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς θάνατον ταῖς
in-nothing I-blamed after the of-the son death the
τύχαις· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνεπείσθην ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου ἐφ' ὑμᾶς
fortunes when but I-was-persuaded by the Assyrian against you
στρατεύεσθαι, εἰς πάντα κίνδυνον ἦλθον· ἐσώθην μέντοι οὐδὲν
to-march into every danger I-came I-was-saved however no

κακὸν λαβών. οὐκ αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὐδὲ τάδε τὸν θεόν.
harm having-taken not I-blame and even these(-things) the god
ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἔγνων ἐμαυτὸν μὴ ἱκανὸν ὑμῖν μάχεσθαι, ἀσφαλῶς
since for I-knew myself not able you to-fight safely
σὺν τῷ θεῷ ἀπῆλθον καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐμοί.
with the god I-went-away both myself and the(-men) with me
23 νῦν δ' αὖ πάλιν ὑπό τε πλούτου τοῦ παρόντος
now but again in-turn by both wealth the present
διαθρυπτόμενος καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν δεομένων μου προστάτην
being-spoiled and by the(-men) begging me leader
γενέσθαι, οἵ με κολακεύοντες ἔλεγον ὡς εἰ ἐγὼ θέλοιμι
to-become who me flattering said that if I should-be-willing
ἄρχειν, πάντες ἂν ἐμοὶ πείθοιντο καὶ μέγιστος ἂν εἴην
to-rule all — me would-obey and greatest — I-would-be
ἀνθρώπων, ὑπὸ τοιούτων δὲ λόγων ἀναφυσώμενος, ὡς
of-men by such and words being-puffed-up when
εἵλοντό με πάντες οἱ κύκλῳ βασιλεῖς προστάτην τοῦ
chose me all the around kings leader of-the
πολέμου, ὑπεδεξάμην τὴν στρατηγίαν, ὡς ἱκανὸς ὢν
war I-accepted the command as able being
μέγιστος γενέσθαι,
greatest to-become
24 ἀγνοῶν ἄρα ἐμαυτόν, ὅτι σοὶ ἀντιπολεμεῖν ἱκανὸς ᾤμην
not-knowing it-seems myself that you to-make-war-against able I-thought
εἶναι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ θεῶν γεγονότι, ἔπειτα δὲ διὰ
to-be first indeed from gods born then and through
βασιλέων πεφυκότι, ἔπειτα δ' ἐκ παιδὸς ἀρετὴν ἀσκοῦντι·
kings descended then and from a-boy virtue practicing
τῶν δ' ἐμῶν προγόνων ἀκούω τὸν πρῶτον βασιλεύσαντα
of-the and my ancestors I-hear the(-one) first having-reigned

ἅμα τε βασιλέα καὶ ἐλεύθερον γενέσθαι. ταῦτ'
at-the-same-time both king and free to-have-become these(-things)
οὖν ἀγνοήσας δικαίως, ἔφη, ἔχω τὴν δίκην.
then having-not-known justly he-said I-have the penalty
ἀλλὰ νῦν δή, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, γιγνώσκω μὲν ἐμαυτόν· σὺ 25
but now indeed he-said O Cyrus I-know indeed myself you
δ', ἔφη, ἔτι δοκεῖς ἀληθεύειν τὸν Ἀπόλλω ὡς εὐδαίμων
and he-said still do-you-think to-speak-truth — Apollo that happy
ἔσομαι γιγνώσκων ἐμαυτόν; σὲ δὲ ἐρωτῶ διὰ τοῦτο ὅτι
I-shall-be knowing myself you and I-ask for this because
ἄριστ' ἄν μοι δοκεῖς εἰκάσαι τοῦτο ἐν τῷ παρόντι· καὶ
best — to-me you-seem would-judge this in the present and
γὰρ δύνασαι ποιῆσαι.
for you-can to-do(-it)
Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε, Βουλήν μοι δὸς περὶ τούτου, ὦ 26
And — Cyrus said Counsel to-me give about this O
Κροῖσε· ἐγὼ γάρ σου ἐννοῶν τὴν πρόσθεν εὐδαιμονίαν
Croesus I for your considering the former happiness
οἰκτίρω τέ σε καὶ ἀποδίδωμι ἤδη γυναῖκά τε ἔχειν ἣν
pity both you and give-back now wife both to-have whom
εἶχες καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας, ἀκούω γάρ σοι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς
you-had and the daughters I-hear for to-you to-be and the
φίλους καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας καὶ τράπεζαν σὺν οἵπερ
friends and the servants and table with which-very
ἐζῆτε· μάχας δέ σοι καὶ πολέμους ἀφαιρῶ.
you-lived battles but for-you and wars I-take-away
Μὰ Δία μηδὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κροῖσος, σὺ ἐμοὶ ἔτι 27
No-by Zeus nothing then said — Croesus you to-me any-longer
βουλεύου ἀποκρίνασθαι περὶ τῆς ἐμῆς εὐδαιμονίας· ἐγὼ γὰρ
take-thought to-answer about the my happiness I for
ἤδη σοι λέγω, ἢν ταῦτά μοι ποιήσῃς ἃ λέγεις, ὅτι
now to-you say if these(-things) for-me you-do which you-say that

ἣν ἄλλοι τε μακαριωτάτην ἐνόμιζον εἶναι βιοτὴν καὶ ἐγὼ
which others both most-blessed thought to-be life and I
συνεγίγνωσκον αὐτοῖς, ταύτην καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ἔχων διάξω.
agreed with-them this also I now having I-shall-live
28 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε, Τίς δ' ἦν ὁ ἔχων ταύτην τὴν
and — Cyrus said Who and was the(-one) having this the
μακαρίαν βιοτήν; Ἡ ἐμὴ γυνή, εἶπεν, ὦ Κῦρε· ἐκείνη
blessed life The my wife he-said O Cyrus she
γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν καὶ τῶν μαλακῶν καὶ εὐφροσυνῶν
for of-the indeed good(-things) and the comforts and delights
πασῶν ἐμοὶ τὸ ἴσον μετεῖχε, φροντίδων δὲ ὅπως ταῦτα
all with-me the equal shared of-cares but how these(-things)
ἔσται καὶ πολέμου καὶ μάχης οὐ μετῆν αὐτῇ. οὕτω
will-be and of-war and of-battle not was-a-share for-her so
δὴ καὶ σὺ δοκεῖς ἐμὲ κατασκευάζειν ὥσπερ ἐγὼ ἣν
indeed also you seem me to-set-up as I whom
ἐφίλουν μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἄλλα
I-loved most of-people so-that — to-Apollo other
μοι δοκῶ χαριστήρια ὀφειλήσειν.
to-me I-think thank-offerings to-owe
29 ἀκούσας δ' ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς λόγους αὐτοῦ ἐθαύμασε μὲν
having-heard and — Cyrus the words his admired indeed
τὴν εὐθυμίαν, ἦγε δὲ τὸ λοιπὸν ὅποι καὶ αὐτὸς
the cheerfulness he-took(-him) and the rest(-of-the-time) wherever also he-himself
πορεύοιτο, εἴτε ἄρα καὶ χρήσιμόν τι νομίζων αὐτὸν
went whether after-all also useful somewhat thinking him
εἶναι εἴτε καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον οὕτως ἡγούμενος.
to-be or also safer so considering(-it)

III · THE DEATH OF PANTHEA

Cyrus has Croesus's treasure taken over, the gods' share set apart, and the rest loaded on wagons. Learning that Abradatas fell charging the Egyptians and that Panthea has brought his body to the Pactolus, he rides there, with gifts sent after him. He takes the dead man's hand, which comes away, and weeps. Panthea blames herself for urging him on. Cyrus promises a fitting tomb and an escort wherever she wishes; when he leaves, she sends away her eunuchs, charges her nurse, who begs her in vain, to cover them both with one cloak, and kills herself with a dagger. Her three eunuchs kill themselves, and Cyrus has a great tomb raised.

Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ 1
And then indeed so they-slept on-the and next-day
καλέσας ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας
having-summoned — Cyrus the friends and the leaders
τοῦ στρατεύματος, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἔταξε τοὺς
of-the army the(-ones) indeed of-them he-appointed the
θησαυροὺς παραλαμβάνειν, τοὺς δ' ἐκέλευσεν ὁπόσα
treasures to-take-over the(-others) and he-ordered as-much-as
παραδοίη Κροῖσος χρήματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς
handed-over Croesus wealth first indeed for-the gods
ἐξελεῖν ὁποῖ' ἂν οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγῶνται, ἔπειτα τἆλλα
to-set-apart whatever — the magi direct then the-other
χρήματα παραδεχομένους ἐν ζυγάστροις στήσαντας ἐφ'
wealth receiving in chests having-weighed on
ἁμαξῶν ἐπισκευάσαι καὶ διαλαχόντας τὰς ἁμάξας
wagons to-load and having-distributed-by-lot the wagons
κομίζειν ὅποιπερ ἂν αὐτοὶ πορεύωνται, ἵνα ὅπου
to-carry wherever — they-themselves march so-that where
καιρὸς εἴη διαλαμβάνοιεν ἕκαστοι τὰ ἄξια.
occasion might-be might-take each the(-shares) deserved

2 οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος καλέσας
they indeed then these(-things) did — and Cyrus having-called
τινὰς τῶν παρόντων ὑπηρετῶν, Εἶπατέ μοι, ἔφη, ἑόρακέ
some of-the present attendants Tell me he-said has-seen
τις ὑμῶν Ἀβραδάταν; θαυμάζω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι πρόσθεν
anyone of-you Abradatas I-wonder for he-said that before
θαμίζων ἐφ' ἡμᾶς νῦν οὐδαμοῦ φαίνεται.
coming-often to us now nowhere he-appears

3 τῶν οὖν ὑπηρετῶν τις ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι Ὦ δέσποτα, οὐ
of-the then attendants one answered that O master not
ζῇ, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανεν ἐμβαλὼν τὸ ἅρμα εἰς τοὺς
he-lives but in the battle he-died having-driven the chariot into the
Αἰγυπτίους· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι πλὴν τῶν ἑταίρων αὐτοῦ ἐξέκλιναν,
Egyptians the and others except the companions his turned-aside
ὥς φασιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ στῖφος εἶδον τὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων.
as they-say when the mass they-saw the(-one) of-the Egyptians

4 καὶ νῦν γε, ἔφη, λέγεται αὐτοῦ ἡ γυνὴ ἀνελομένη
and now at-least he-said it-is-said his the wife having-taken-up
τὸν νεκρὸν καὶ ἐνθεμένη εἰς τὴν ἁρμάμαξαν, ἐν ᾗπερ
the corpse and having-placed(-it) in the carriage in which-very
αὐτὴ ὠχεῖτο, προσκεκομικέναι αὐτὸν ἐνθάδε ποι πρὸς
she-herself rode to-have-brought him here somewhere to
τὸν Πακτωλὸν ποταμόν.
the Pactolus river

5 καὶ τοὺς μὲν εὐνούχους καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας αὐτοῦ ὀρύττειν
and the indeed eunuchs and the servants his to-dig
φασὶν ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς θήκην τῷ τελευτήσαντι· τὴν δὲ
they-say on hill a-certain a-tomb for-the(-man) having-died the and
γυναῖκα λέγουσιν ὡς κάθηται χαμαὶ κεκοσμηκυῖα οἷς
wife they-say that she-sits on-the-ground having-adorned with-what
εἶχε τὸν ἄνδρα, τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ἔχουσα ἐπὶ τοῖς γόνασι.
she-had the husband the head his holding on the knees

ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Κῦρος ἐπαίσατο ἄρα τὸν μηρὸν καὶ 6
these(-things) having-heard — Cyrus struck then the thigh and
εὐθὺς ἀναπηδήσας ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον λαβὼν χιλίους ἱππέας
at-once having-leapt onto the horse having-taken thousand horsemen
ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τὸ πάθος.
rode to the calamity
Γαδάταν δὲ καὶ Γωβρύαν ἐκέλευσεν ὅ τι δύναιντο 7
Gadatas and also Gobryas he-ordered what ever they-could
λαβόντας καλὸν κόσμημα ἀνδρὶ φίλῳ καὶ ἀγαθῷ
having-taken fine adornment for-a-man dear and good
τετελευτηκότι μεταδιώκειν· καὶ ὅστις εἶχε τὰς ἑπομένας
having-died to-follow and whoever had the following
ἀγέλας, καὶ βοῦς καὶ ἵππους εἶπε τούτῳ καὶ ἅμα
herds both oxen and horses he-told this(-one) also at-the-same-time
πρόβατα πολλὰ ἐλαύνειν ὅπου ἂν αὐτὸν πυνθάνηται ὄντα,
sheep many to-drive where — him he-learns being
ὡς ἐπισφαγείη τῷ Ἀβραδάτᾳ.
so-that they-might-be-slaughtered-over — for-Abradatas
Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ καθημένην καὶ τὸν 8
When and he-saw the wife on-the-ground sitting and the
νεκρὸν κείμενον, ἐδάκρυσέ τε ἐπὶ τῷ πάθει καὶ εἶπε,
corpse lying he-wept both at the calamity and said
Φεῦ, ὦ ἀγαθὴ καὶ πιστὴ ψυχή, οἴχῃ δὴ ἀπολιπὼν
Alas O good and faithful soul you-are-gone indeed having-left
ἡμᾶς; καὶ ἅμα ἐδεξιώσατο αὐτὸν καὶ ἡ χεὶρ
us and at-the-same-time took-the-right-hand-of him and the hand
τοῦ νεκροῦ ἐπηκολούθησεν· ἀπεκέκοπτο γὰρ κοπίδι ὑπὸ
of-the corpse came-away it-had-been-cut-off for with-a-saber by
τῶν Αἰγυπτίων.
the Egyptians

9 ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἤλγησε· καὶ ἡ γυνὴ δὲ
he and having-seen much still more grieved and the woman and
ἀνωδύρατο καὶ δεξαμένη δὴ παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου ἐφίλησέ τε
wailed and having-received indeed from — Cyrus kissed both
τὴν χεῖρα καὶ πάλιν ὡς οἷόν τ' ἦν προσήρμοσε, καὶ εἶπε,
the hand and again as possible — it-was fitted(-it) and said
10 Καὶ τἆλλά τοι, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχει· ἀλλὰ τί δεῖ σε ὁρᾶν;
And the-rest you-know O Cyrus so is but why must you to-see
καὶ ταῦτα, ἔφη, οἶδ' ὅτι δι' ἐμὲ οὐχ ἥκιστα ἔπαθεν,
also these(-things) she-said I-know that because-of me not least he-suffered
ἴσως δὲ καὶ διὰ σέ, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδὲν ἧττον. ἐγώ τε γὰρ
perhaps and also because-of you O Cyrus nothing less I both for
ἡ μώρα πολλὰ διεκελευόμην αὐτῷ οὕτω ποιεῖν, ὅπως σοι
the fool often urged him so to-act that to-you
φίλος ἄξιος γενήσοιτο· αὐτός τε οἶδ' ὅτι οὗτος οὐ τοῦτο
friend worthy he-would-become he-himself and I-know that this(-man) not this
ἐνενόει ὅ τι πείσοιτο, ἀλλὰ τί ἄν σοι ποιήσας χαρίσαιτο.
considered what ever he-would-suffer but what — to-you having-done he-would-please
καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη, αὐτὸς μὲν ἀμέμπτως τετελεύτηκεν,
and for then she-said he-himself indeed blamelessly has-died
ἐγὼ δ' ἡ παρακελευομένη ζῶσα παρακάθημαι.
I but the(-one) urging living sit-beside(-him)
11 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος χρόνον μέν τινα σιωπῇ κατεδάκρυσεν, ἔπειτα
and — Cyrus time indeed some in-silence wept then
δὲ ἐφθέγξατο, Ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν δή, ὦ γύναι, ἔχει τὸ
and spoke But this(-man) indeed then O woman has the
κάλλιστον τέλος· νικῶν γὰρ τετελεύτηκε· σὺ δὲ λαβοῦσα
finest end conquering for he-has-died you and having-taken
τοῖσδε ἐπικόσμει αὐτὸν τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ· παρῆν δὲ
with-these adorn him the(-things) from me were-present and
ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας πολὺν καὶ καλὸν κόσμον
— Gobryas and — Gadatas much and fine adornment

φέροντες· ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲ τὰ ἄλλα
bringing then and he-said know that not-even in-the other(-things)
ἄτιμος ἔσται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ μνῆμα πολλοὶ χώσουσιν ἀξίως
unhonored he-will-be but also the monument many will-heap-up worthily
ἡμῶν καὶ ἐπισφαγήσεται αὐτῷ ὅσα εἰκὸς ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ.
of-us and will-be-slaughtered over-him as-much-as fitting for-a-man good
καὶ σὺ δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἔρημος ἔσῃ, ἀλλ' ἐγώ σε καὶ 12
and you and he-said not desolate you-will-be but I you both
σωφροσύνης ἕνεκα καὶ πάσης ἀρετῆς καὶ τἆλλα τιμήσω
of-self-control for-the-sake and of-all virtue and in-the-rest I-shall-honor
καὶ συστήσω ὅστις ἀποκομιεῖ σε ὅποι ἂν αὐτὴ ἐθέλῃς·
and I-shall-appoint whoever will-escort you wherever — yourself you-wish
μόνον, ἔφη, δήλωσον πρὸς ἐμὲ πρὸς ὁντινα χρῄζεις
only he-said make-known to me to whomever you-desire
κομισθῆναι.
to-be-conveyed
καὶ ἡ Πάνθεια εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ μή 13
and — Panthea said But take-heart she-said O Cyrus not —
σε κρύψω πρὸς ὅντινα βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι.
you I-shall-hide to whom I-wish to-go
ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀπῄει, κατοικτίρων τήν 14
he indeed then these(-things) having-said went-away pitying the
τε γυναῖκα οἵου ἀνδρὸς στέροιτο καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα
both woman what-a husband she-was-deprived-of and the husband
οἵαν γυναῖκα καταλιπὼν οὐκέτ' ὄψοιτο. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ
what-a wife having-left no-longer he-would-see the and woman
τοὺς μὲν εὐνούχους ἐκέλευσεν ἀποστῆναι, ἕως ἄν, ἔφη,
the indeed eunuchs ordered to-stand-off until — she-said
τόνδ' ἐγὼ ὀδύρωμαι ὡς βούλομαι· τῇ δὲ τροφῷ
this(-man) I lament as I-wish to-the and nurse
εἶπε παραμένειν, καὶ ἐπέταξεν αὐτῇ, ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ,
she-told to-stay and charged her when she-dies

περικαλύψαι αὐτήν τε καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἑνὶ ἱματίῳ. ἡ
to-cover her both and the husband with-one cloak the
δὲ τροφὸς πολλὰ ἱκετεύουσα μὴ ποιεῖν τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν
and nurse much begging not to-do this since nothing
ἤνυτε καὶ χαλεπαίνουσαν ἑώρα, ἐκάθητο κλαίουσα. ἡ
she-achieved and being-angry she-saw sat weeping she
δὲ ἀκινάκην πάλαι παρεσκευασμένον σπασαμένη σφάττει
and a-dagger long-ago prepared having-drawn slays
ἑαυτὴν καὶ ἐπιθεῖσα ἐπὶ τὰ στέρνα τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τὴν ἑαυτῆς
herself and having-laid on the breast of-the husband the her-own
κεφαλὴν ἀπέθνῃσκεν. ἡ δὲ τροφὸς ἀνωλοφύρατό τε καὶ
head died the and nurse wailed both and
περιεκάλυπτεν ἄμφω ὥσπερ ἡ Πάνθεια ἐπέστειλεν.
covered both as — Panthea had-instructed

15 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ᾔσθετο τὸ ἔργον τῆς γυναικός, ἐκπλαγεὶς
— and Cyrus when perceived the deed of-the woman astounded
ἴεται, εἴ τι δύναιτο βοηθῆσαι. οἱ δὲ εὐνοῦχοι ἰδόντες
rushes if at-all he-could to-help the and eunuchs having-seen
τὸ γεγενημένον, τρεῖς ὄντες σπασάμενοι κἀκεῖνοι τοὺς
the(-thing) having-happened three being having-drawn they-too the
ἀκινάκας ἀποσφάττονται οὗπερ ἔταξεν αὐτοὺς ἑστηκότες.
daggers slay-themselves where-very she-had-posted them standing

16 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ἐπλησίασε τῷ πάθει ἀγασθείς τε τὴν
— and Cyrus when approached the calamity having-admired both the
γυναῖκα καὶ κατολοφυράμενος ἀπῄει· καὶ τούτων μὲν
woman and having-lamented went-away and of-these indeed
ᾗ εἰκὸς ἐπεμελήθη ὡς τύχοιεν πάντων τῶν καλῶν,
as fitting took-care that they-might-receive all the fine(-things)
καὶ τὸ μνῆμα ὑπερμέγεθες ἐχώσθη, ὥς φασιν.
and the monument huge was-heaped-up as they-say

The Carians, at war among themselves, call on Cyrus; he sends Adusius, who swears to both factions to enter their walls without guile, seizes both their strongholds on one night, and makes them keep peace, and the Carians ask for him as satrap. Hystaspas marches into Hellespontine Phrygia, where the Greek cities buy terms and the king surrenders. Croesus brings lists of the treasure on the wagons, and Cyrus gives them to his friends and officers. Lydians who follow grudgingly lose their horses and arms, and all the unarmed subjects are made to practice the sling. On the road to Babylon Cyrus subdues the Phrygians, Cappadocians, and Arabians and enlarges his Persian cavalry.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου στασιάζοντες οἱ Κᾶρες καὶ πολεμοῦντες 1
After and this being-in-faction the Carians and warring
πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἅτε τὰς οἰκήσεις ἔχοντες ἐν ἐχυροῖς
against one-another inasmuch-as the dwellings having in strong
χωρίοις, ἑκάτεροι ἐπεκαλοῦντο τὸν Κῦρον. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
places each-side called-in — Cyrus — and Cyrus
αὐτὸς μὲν μένων ἐν Σάρδεσι μηχανὰς ἐποιεῖτο καὶ
himself indeed staying in Sardis engines made and
κριούς, ὡς τῶν μὴ πειθομένων ἐρείψων τὰ τείχη,
rams as of-the(-ones) not obeying going-to-throw-down the walls
Ἀδούσιον δὲ ἄνδρα Πέρσην καὶ τἆλλα οὐκ ἄφρονα οὐδ᾽
Adusius and a-man Persian both in-the-rest not foolish nor
ἀπόλεμον, καὶ πάνυ δὴ εὔχαριν, πέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν,
unwarlike and very indeed gracious he-sends to — Caria
στράτευμα δούς· καὶ Κίλικες δὲ καὶ Κύπριοι πάνυ
an-army having-given and Cilicians and and Cyprians very
προθύμως αὐτῷ συνεστράτευσαν.
eagerly with-him campaigned

2 ὧν ἕνεκα Κῦρος οὐδ᾽ ἔπεμψε πώποτε Πέρσην
which for-the-sake Cyrus not-even sent ever a-Persian
σατράπην οὔτε Κιλίκων οὔτε Κυπρίων, ἀλλ᾽ ἤρκουν αὐτῷ
satrap either of-Cilicians or of-Cyprians but sufficed for-him
αἰεὶ οἱ ἐπιχώριοι βασιλεύοντες· δασμὸν μέντοι ἐλάμβανε
always the native kings tribute however he-took
καὶ στρατιᾶς ὁπότε δέοιτο ἐπήγγελλεν αὐτοῖς.
and army whenever he-needed he-requisitioned to-them
3 ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος ἄγων τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν
— and Adusius leading the army to — Caria
ἦλθε, καὶ ἀπ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν Καρῶν παρῆσαν πρὸς
came and from both the Carians came to
αὐτὸν ἕτοιμοι ὄντες δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰ τείχη ἐπὶ κακῷ
him ready being to-receive(-him) into the walls for harm
τῶν ἀντιστασιαζόντων· ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους
of-the opposing-faction — and Adusius toward both
ταὐτὰ ἐποίει· δικαιότερά τε ἔφη λέγειν τούτους ὁποτέροις
the-same did more-just both he-said to-speak these with-whichever
διαλέγοιτο, λαθεῖν τε ἔφη δεῖν τοὺς ἐναντίους φίλους
he-talked to-escape-notice and he-said must the opponents friends
σφᾶς γενομένους, ὡς δὴ οὕτως ἂν μᾶλλον ἐπιπεσὼν
they having-become as indeed so — more would-fall-upon
ἀπαρασκεύοις τοῖς ἐναντίοις. πιστὰ δ᾽ ἠξίου γενέσθαι,
unprepared the opponents pledges and he-required to-be-made
καὶ τοὺς μὲν Κᾶρας ὀμόσαι ἀδόλως τε δέξεσθαι εἰς
and the indeed Carians to-swear without-guile both to-receive into
τὰ τείχη σφᾶς καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ τῷ Κύρου καὶ Περσῶν·
the walls them and for good the(-good) of-Cyrus and of-Persians
αὐτὸς δὲ ὀμόσαι θέλειν ἀδόλως εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τείχη
himself and to-swear to-be-willing without-guile to-enter into the walls
καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ τῶν δεχομένων.
and for good of-the(-ones) receiving(-him)

ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας ἀμφοτέροις λάθρᾳ ἑκατέρων νύκτα 4
these(-things) and having-done with-both secretly from-each-side night
συνέθετο τὴν αὐτήν, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ εἰσήλασέ τε εἰς τὰ
appointed the same and in this he-marched-in both into the
τείχη καὶ παρέλαβε τὰ ἐρύματα ἀμφοτέρων. ἅμα
walls and took-over the strongholds of-both at-the-same-time-as
δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καθεζόμενος εἰς τὸ μέσον σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ
and the day having-sat-down in the middle with the army
ἐκάλεσεν ἑκατέρων τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους. οἳ δὲ ἰδόντες
he-summoned of-each the chief(-men) they and having-seen
ἀλλήλους ἠχθέσθησαν, νομίζοντες ἐξηπατῆσθαι ἀμφότεροι.
one-another were-vexed thinking to-have-been-deceived both
ὁ μέντοι Ἀδούσιος ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, 5
— however Adusius said as-follows I to-you O men
ὤμοσα ἀδόλως εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τείχη καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ τῶν
swore without-guile to-enter into the walls and for good of-the(-ones)
δεχομένων. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἀπολῶ ὁποτέρους ὑμῶν, νομίζω
receiving(-me) if indeed then I-shall-destroy whichever of-you I-think
ἐπὶ κακῷ εἰσεληλυθέναι Καρῶν· ἢν δὲ εἰρήνην ὑμῖν ποιήσω
for harm to-have-come-in of-Carians if but peace for-you I-make
καὶ ἀσφάλειαν ἐργάζεσθαι ἀμφοτέροις τὴν γῆν, νομίζω
and safety to-work for-both the land I-think
ὑμῖν ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ παρεῖναι. νῦν οὖν χρὴ ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς
to-you for good to-be-present now then (one)-must from this the
ἡμέρας ἐπιμείγνυσθαί τε ἀλλήλοις φιλικῶς, ἐργάζεσθαί
day to-mingle both with-one-another in-friendship to-work
τε τὴν γῆν ἀδεῶς, διδόναι τε τέκνα καὶ λαμβάνειν παρ᾽
and the land fearlessly to-give and children and to-take from
ἀλλήλων. ἢν δὲ παρὰ ταῦτα ἀδικεῖν τις ἐπιχειρῇ,
one-another if but contrary-to these(-things) to-do-wrong anyone attempts
τούτοις Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡμεῖς πολέμιοι ἐσόμεθα.
to-these Cyrus both and we enemies shall-be

6 ἐκ τούτου πύλαι μὲν ἀνεῳγμέναι ἦσαν αἱ τῶν
after this gates indeed opened were the(-ones) of-the
τειχῶν, μεσταὶ δὲ αἱ ὁδοὶ πορευομένων παρ᾽ ἀλλήλους,
walls full and the roads of-people-going to one-another
μεστοὶ δὲ οἱ χῶροι ἐργαζομένων· ἑορτὰς δὲ κοινῇ
full and the fields of-people-working festivals and in-common
ἦγον, εἰρήνης δὲ καὶ εὐφροσύνης πάντα πλέα ἦν.
they-held of-peace and and of-good-cheer all-things full were

7 ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκον παρὰ Κύρου ἐρωτῶντες εἴ τι στρατιᾶς
in and this came from Cyrus asking whether any army
προσδέοιτο ἢ μηχανημάτων· ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος ἀπεκρίνατο
he-needed-besides or engines — and Adusius answered
ὅτι καὶ τῇ παρούσῃ ἐξείη ἄλλοσε χρῆσθαι στρατιᾷ·
that even the present it-was-possible elsewhere to-use army
καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων ἀπῆγε τὸ στράτευμα,
and at-the-same-time these(-things) saying led-away the army
φρουροὺς ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις καταλιπών. οἱ δὲ Κᾶρες ἱκέτευον
guards in the citadels having-left the and Carians begged
μένειν αὐτόν· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἤθελε, προσέπεμψαν πρὸς Κῦρον
to-stay him when but not he-would they-sent to Cyrus
δεόμενοι πέμψαι Ἀδούσιον σφίσι σατράπην.
asking to-send Adusius to-them as-satrap

8 Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ ἀπεστάλκει Ὑστάσπαν στράτευμα
— and Cyrus in this had-sent Hystaspas an-army
ἄγοντα ἐπὶ Φρυγίαν τὴν περὶ Ἑλλήσποντον. ἐπεὶ
leading against Phrygia the(-one) by the-Hellespont when
δ᾽ ἦκεν ὁ Ἀδούσιος, μετάγειν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσεν ᾗπερ
and came — Adusius to-lead-on him he-ordered where-very
ὁ Ὑστάσπας προῴχετο, ὅπως μᾶλλον πείθοιντο τῷ
— Hystaspas had-gone-ahead so-that more they-might-obey —
Ὑστάσπᾳ, ἀκούσαντες ἄλλο στράτευμα προσιόν.
Hystaspas having-heard another army approaching

οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες οἱ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ οἰκοῦντες 9
the indeed then Greeks the(-ones) by sea dwelling
πολλὰ δόντες δῶρα διεπράξαντο ὥστε εἰς μὲν τὰ
many having-given gifts arranged so-that into indeed the
τείχη βαρβάρους μὴ δέχεσθαι, δασμὸν δὲ ἀποφέρειν καὶ
walls barbarians not to-receive tribute but to-pay and
στρατεύειν ὅποι Κῦρος ἐπαγγέλλοι.
to-campaign wherever Cyrus might-order
ὁ δὲ τῶν Φρυγῶν βασιλεὺς παρεσκευάζετο μὲν ὡς 10
the and of-the Phrygians king prepared indeed as
καθέξων τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καὶ οὐ πεισόμενος καὶ παρήγγειλεν
going-to-hold the strongholds and not going-to-obey and gave-orders
οὕτως· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίσταντο αὐτοῦ οἱ ὕπαρχοι καὶ ἔρημος
so when but revolted from-him the lieutenants and deserted
ἐγίγνετο, τελευτῶν εἰς χεῖρας ἦλθεν Ὑστάσπᾳ ἐπὶ τῇ
he-became finally into hands came to-Hystaspas on the
Κύρου δίκῃ. καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας καταλιπὼν ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις
of-Cyrus judgment and — Hystaspas having-left in the citadels
ἰσχυρὰς Περσῶν φρουρὰς ἀπῄει ἄγων σὺν τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ
strong of-Persians garrisons went-off leading with the(-men) of-his-own
καὶ Φρυγῶν πολλοὺς ἱππέας καὶ πελταστάς.
also of-Phrygians many horsemen and peltasts
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπέστελλεν Ἀδουσίῳ συμμείξαντα πρὸς 11
— and Cyrus instructed Adusius having-joined with
Ὑστάσπαν τοὺς μὲν ἑλομένους Φρυγῶν τὰ σφέτερα
Hystaspas the(-ones) indeed having-chosen of-Phrygians the their-own(-things)
σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἄγειν, τοὺς δὲ ἐπιθυμήσαντας πολεμεῖν
with the arms to-lead the(-ones) but having-desired to-make-war
τούτων ἀφελομένους τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὅπλα σφενδόνας
from-these having-taken-away the horses and the arms slings
ἔχοντας πάντας κελεύειν ἕπεσθαι.
having all to-order to-follow

12 Οὗτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτ᾽ ἐποίουν. Κῦρος δὲ ὡρμᾶτο ἐκ
These indeed then these(-things) did Cyrus and set-out from
Σάρδεων, φρουρὰν μὲν πεζὴν καταλιπὼν πολλὴν ἐν
Sardis garrison indeed infantry having-left large in
Σάρδεσι, Κροῖσον δὲ ἔχων, ἄγων δὲ πολλὰς ἁμάξας
Sardis Croesus and having leading and many wagons
πολλῶν καὶ παντοδαπῶν χρημάτων. ἦκε δὲ καὶ ὁ
of-many and all-kinds-of goods came and also —
Κροῖσος γεγραμμένα ἔχων ἀκριβῶς ὅσα ἐν ἑκάστῃ
Croesus written(-lists) having exactly what-things in each
ἦν τῇ ἁμάξῃ· καὶ διδοὺς τῷ Κύρῳ τὰ γράμματα εἶπε,
was the wagon and giving — to-Cyrus the writings said
Ταῦτ᾽, ἔφη, ἔχων, ὦ Κῦρε, εἴσῃ τόν τέ σοι
These he-said having O Cyrus you-will-know the(-one) both to-you
ὀρθῶς ἀποδιδόντα ἃ ἄγει καὶ τὸν μή.
rightly delivering what he-carries and the(-one) not

13 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔλεξεν, Ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν καλῶς ποιεῖς, ὦ Κροῖσε,
and — Cyrus said But you indeed well do O Croesus
προνοῶν· ἔμοιγε μέντοι ἄξουσι τὰ χρήματα οἵπερ καὶ
taking-forethought to-me-at-least however will-carry the goods those-who also
ἔχειν αὐτὰ ἄξιοί εἰσιν· ὥστε ἤν τι καὶ κλέψωσι, τῶν
to-have them worthy are so-that if anything even they-steal of-the
ἑαυτῶν κλέψονται. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων ἔδωκε τὰ
their-own they-will-steal and at-the-same-time these(-things) saying he-gave the
γράμματα τοῖς φίλοις καὶ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν, ὅπως εἰδεῖεν
writings to-the friends and to-the officers so-that they-might-know
τῶν ἐπιτρόπων οἵ τε σῶα αὐτοῖς ἀποδιδοῖεν οἵ τε μή.
of-the stewards who both safe to-them delivered who and not

14 ἦγε δὲ καὶ Λυδῶν οὓς μὲν ἑώρα καλλωπιζομένους
he-led and also of-Lydians those-whom indeed he-saw priding-themselves
καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ ἵπποις καὶ ἅρμασι καὶ πάντα πειρωμένους
both on-arms and horses and chariots and everything trying

ποιεῖν ὅ τι ᾤοντο αὐτῷ χαριεῖσθαι, τούτους μὲν σὺν
to-do what ever they-thought him to-be-going-to-please these indeed with
τοῖς ὅπλοις· οὓς δὲ ἑώρα ἀχαρίτως ἑπομένους, τοὺς
the arms those-whom but he-saw ungraciously following the
μὲν ἵππους αὐτῶν παρέδωκε Πέρσαις τοῖς πρώτοις
indeed horses their he-handed-over to-Persians the(-ones) first
συστρατευσαμένοις, τὰ δὲ ὅπλα κατέκαυσε· σφενδόνας δὲ
having-campaigned-with(-him) the and arms he-burned slings and
καὶ τούτους ἠνάγκασεν ἔχοντας ἕπεσθαι.
also these he-compelled having to-follow
καὶ πάντας δὲ τοὺς ἀόπλους τῶν ὑποχειρίων γενομένων 15
and all and the unarmed of-the subject having-become
σφενδονᾶν ἠνάγκαζε μελετᾶν, νομίζων τοῦτο τὸ ὅπλον
to-sling he-compelled to-practice thinking this the weapon
δουλικώτατον εἶναι· σὺν μὲν γὰρ ἄλλῃ δυνάμει μάλα
most-slavish to-be with indeed for other force very
ἔστιν ἔνθα ἰσχυρῶς ὠφελοῦσι σφενδονῆται παρόντες,
there-are(-times) when strongly help slingers being-present
αὐτοὶ δὲ καθ' ἑαυτοὺς οὐδ' ἂν οἱ πάντες σφενδονῆται
themselves but by themselves not-even — the all slingers
μείνειαν πάνυ ὀλίγους ὁμόσε ἰόντας σὺν ὅπλοις
would-withstand very few to-close-quarters going with arms
ἀγχεμάχοις.
close-fighting
Προϊὼν δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος κατεστρέψατο μὲν 16
Advancing and the(-road) toward Babylon he-subdued indeed
Φρύγας τοὺς ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φρυγίᾳ, κατεστρέψατο δὲ
Phrygians the(-ones) in — Great Phrygia he-subdued and
Καππαδόκας, ὑποχειρίους δ' ἐποιήσατο Ἀραβίους. ἐξέπλησε
Cappadocians subject and he-made Arabians he-filled-up
δὲ ἀπὸ πάντων τούτων Περσῶν μὲν ἱππέας οὐ μεῖον
and from all these of-Persians indeed horsemen not less

τετρακισμυρίους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους τῶν αἰχμαλώτων
forty-thousand many and horses of-the captives
καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς συμμάχοις διέδωκε· καὶ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα
also to-all the allies he-distributed and to Babylon
ἀφίκετο παμπόλλους μὲν ἱππέας ἔχων, παμπόλλους δὲ
arrived very-many indeed horsemen having very-many and
τοξότας καὶ ἀκοντιστάς, σφενδονήτας δὲ ἀναριθμήτους.
archers and javelin-men slingers and countless

V · THE FALL OF BABYLON

Cyrus surrounds Babylon, folds back his line safely, and digs trenches around the city while the Babylonians laugh at a siege. On a festival night he turns the river into the trenches and leads his men along the riverbed; Gobryas and Gadatas reach the palace, and the king is killed. Cyrus disarms the Babylonians and distributes houses and offices, then, besieged by petitioners, keeps himself apart on the advice of Artabazus and Chrysantas and moves into the palace. He chooses eunuchs and ten thousand Persian spearmen as guards and urges the peers to keep their virtue now that they rule, living at court as they did at home and educating their children there.

1 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι ἦν ὁ Κῦρος, περιέστησε μὲν πᾶν
When and near Babylon was — Cyrus he-stationed-around indeed all
τὸ στράτευμα περὶ τὴν πόλιν, ἔπειτα αὐτὸς περιήλαυνε τὴν
the army around the city then himself rode-around the
πόλιν σὺν τοῖς φίλοις τε καὶ ἐπικαιρίοις τῶν συμμάχων.
city with the friends both and chief(-men) of-the allies
2 ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεθεάσατο τὰ τείχη, ἀπάγειν παρεσκευάζετο τὴν
when and he-had-surveyed the walls to-lead-away he-prepared the
στρατιὰν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως· ἐξελθὼν δέ τις αὐτόμολος
army from the city having-come-out but a deserter
εἶπεν ὅτι ἐπιτίθεσθαι μέλλοιεν αὐτῷ, ὁπότε ἀπάγοι τὸ
said that to-attack they-intended him whenever he-led-away the

στράτευμα· καταθεωμένοις γάρ, ἔφη, αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους
army surveying for he-said to-them from the wall
ἀσθενὴς ἐδόκει εἶναι ἡ φάλαγξ· καὶ οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἦν
weak seemed to-be the phalanx and nothing wonderful it-was
οὕτως ἔχειν· περὶ γὰρ πολὺ τεῖχος κυκλουμένοις ἀνάγκη
so to-be around for great wall encircling necessity
ἦν ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγων τὸ βάθος γενέσθαι τὴν φάλαγγα.
it-was on few the depth to-be the phalanx
ἀκούσας οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα, στὰς κατὰ μέσον τῆς 3
having-heard then — Cyrus these(-things) having-stood at the-middle of-the
αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν παρήγγειλεν ἀπὸ
his-own army with the(-men) about him ordered from
τοῦ ἄκρου ἑκατέρωθεν τοὺς ὁπλίτας ἀναπτύσσοντας τὴν
the wing on-each-side the hoplites folding-back the
φάλαγγα ἀπιέναι παρὰ τὸ ἑστηκὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος, ἕως
phalanx to-go-away along the standing(-part) of-the army until
γένοιτο ἑκατέρωθεν τὸ ἄκρον κατ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ κατὰ τὸ μέσον.
should-be on-each-side the wing opposite him and opposite the middle
οὕτως οὖν ποιούντων οἵ τε μένοντες εὐθὺς θαρραλεώτεροι 4
so then (them)-doing the both staying at-once more-confident
ἐγίγνοντο ἐπὶ διπλασίων τὸ βάθος γιγνόμενοι, οἵ τ᾽ ἀπιόντες
became on double the depth becoming the and departing
ὡσαύτως θαρραλεώτεροι· εὐθὺς γὰρ οἱ μένοντες ἀντ᾽
likewise more-confident at-once for the(-men) staying instead-of
αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐγίγνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι
them toward the enemies were when and marching
ἑκατέρωθεν συνῆψαν τὰ ἄκρα, ἔστησαν ἰσχυρότεροι
from-each-side they-joined the wings they-halted stronger
γεγενημένοι, οἵ τε ἀπεληλυθότες διὰ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν,
having-become the both having-gone-off because-of the(-men) in-front
οἵ τ᾽ ἔμπροσθεν διὰ τοὺς ὄπισθεν προσγεγενημένους.
the and in-front because-of the(-men) behind having-been-added

5 ἀναπτυχθείσης δ᾽ οὕτω τῆς φάλαγγος ἀνάγκη τοὺς
having-been-folded-back and so the phalanx necessity the
πρώτους ἀρίστους εἶναι καὶ τοὺς τελευταίους, ἐν μέσῳ δὲ
first best to-be and the last in middle and
τοὺς κακίστους τετάχθαι· ἡ δ᾽ οὕτως ἔχουσα τάξις καὶ
the worst to-have-been-posted the and so being order both
πρὸς τὸ μάχεσθαι ἐδόκει εὖ παρεσκευάσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ μὴ
for the fighting seemed well to-have-been-prepared and for the not
φεύγειν. καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς δὲ καὶ οἱ γυμνῆτες οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν
fleeing and the horsemen and and the light-troops the(-ones) from the
κεράτων αἰεὶ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοσούτῳ
wings always nearer were to-the commander by-so-much
ὅσῳ ἡ φάλαγξ βραχυτέρα ἐγίγνετο ἀναδιπλουμένη.
as the phalanx shorter became being-doubled

6 ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτω συνεσπειράθησαν, ἀπῆσαν, ἕως μὲν ἐξικνεῖτο
when and so they-had-closed-up they-went-off while indeed reached
τὰ βέλη ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους, ἐπὶ πόδα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔξω βελῶν
the missiles from the wall step-by step when and outside missiles(-range)
ἐγένοντο, στραφέντες, καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ὀλίγα βήματα
they-were having-turned also the indeed first few steps
προϊόντες μετεβάλλοντο ἐπ᾽ ἀσπίδα καὶ ἵσταντο πρὸς τὸ
advancing they-wheeled to shield and halted toward the
τεῖχος βλέποντες· ὅσῳ δὲ προσωτέρω ἐγίγνοντο, τόσῳ
wall looking by-as-much and farther they-got by-so-much
δὲ μανότερον μετεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ ἐδόκουν
and less-often they-wheeled when and in the safety they-seemed
εἶναι, ξυνεῖρον ἀπιόντες, ἔστ᾽ ἐπὶ ταῖς σκηναῖς ἐγένοντο.
to-be they-kept-on departing until at the tents they-were

7 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο, συνεκάλεσεν ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς
When and they-had-encamped called-together — Cyrus the
ἐπικαιρίους καὶ ἔλεξεν, Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, τεθεάμεθα μὲν
chief(-men) and said Men allies we-have-viewed indeed

κύκλῳ τὴν πόλιν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως μὲν ἄν τις τείχη οὕτως
around the city I but how indeed — anyone walls so
ἰσχυρὰ καὶ ὑψηλὰ προσμαχόμενος ἕλοι οὐκ ἐνορᾶν μοι
strong and high assaulting would-take not to-see to-me
δοκῶ· ὅσῳ δὲ πλείους ἄνθρωποι ἐν τῇ πόλει εἰσίν,
I-seem by-as-much but more people in the city are
ἐπείπερ οὐ μάχονται ἐξιόντες, τοσούτῳ ἂν θᾶττον λιμῷ
since not they-fight coming-out by-so-much — faster by-hunger
αὐτοὺς ἡγοῦμαι ἁλῶναι. εἰ μή τιν' οὖν ἄλλον τρόπον
them I-think would-be-taken if not some then other way
ἔχετε λέγειν, τούτῳ πολιορκητέους φημὶ εἶναι τοὺς ἄνδρας.
you-have to-tell in-this must-be-besieged I-say to-be the men
καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπεν, Ὁ δὲ ποταμός, ἔφη, οὗτος 8
and — Chrysantas said The but river he-said this
οὐ διὰ μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ πλάτος ἔχων πλέον ἢ
not through middle the city flows breadth having more than
ἐπὶ δύο στάδια; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ βάθος
over two stades Yes by Zeus said — Gobryas and depth
γ' ὡς οὐδ' ἂν δύο ἄνδρες ὁ ἕτερος ἐπὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου
at-least so-that not-even — two men the one on the other
ἑστηκὼς τοῦ ὕδατος ὑπερέχοιεν· ὥστε τῷ ποταμῷ ἔτι
standing the water would-rise-above so-that by-the river still
ἰσχυροτέρα ἐστὶν ἡ πόλις ἢ τοῖς τείχεσι.
stronger is the city than by-the walls
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, Ταῦτα μέν, ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἐῶμεν ὅσα 9
and — Cyrus These(-things) indeed he-said O Chrysantas let-us-leave which
κρείττω ἐστὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας δυνάμεως· διαμετρησαμένους
stronger are than-the our power having-measured-out
δὲ χρὴ ὡς τάχιστα τὸ μέρος ἑκάστους ἡμῶν ὀρύττειν
but must as quickly-as-possible the share each of-us to-dig

τάφρον ὡς πλατυτάτην καὶ βαθυτάτην, ὅπως ὅτι
a-trench as broadest and deepest so-that as
ἐλαχίστων ἡμῖν τῶν φυλάκων δέῃ.
fewest for-us of-the guards there-be-need
10 οὕτω δὴ κύκλῳ διαμετρήσας περὶ τὸ τεῖχος, ἀπολιπὼν
so indeed in-a-circle having-measured around the wall having-left
ὅσον τύρσεσι μεγάλαις ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὤρυττεν
as-much-as for-towers great from the river he-dug
ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τοῦ τείχους τάφρον ὑπερμεγέθη, καὶ
on-this-side and on-that-side of-the wall a-trench huge and
τὴν γῆν ἀνέβαλλον πρὸς ἑαυτούς.
the earth they-threw-up toward themselves
11 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πύργους ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ᾠκοδόμει,
and first indeed towers by the river he-built
φοίνιξι θεμελιώσας οὐ μεῖον ἢ πλεθριαίοις· — εἰσὶ
with-palms having-founded(-them) not less than a-plethron-long they-are
γὰρ καὶ μείζονες ἢ τοσοῦτοι τὸ μῆκος πεφυκότες —
for even greater than so-great the length grown
καὶ γὰρ δὴ πιεζόμενοι οἱ φοίνικες ὑπὸ βάρους ἄνω
and for indeed being-pressed the palms by weight upward
κυρτοῦνται, ὥσπερ οἱ ὄνοι οἱ κανθήλιοι·
bend as the asses the pack(-asses)
12 τούτους δ᾽ ὑπετίθει τούτου ἕνεκα, ὡς εἰ καὶ διαφύγοι
these and he-laid-under for-this for-the-sake so-that if even should-escape
ὁ ποταμὸς εἰς τὴν τάφρον, μὴ ἀνέλοι τοὺς πύργους.
the river into the trench not it-might-destroy the towers
ἀνίστη δὲ καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς πύργους ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμβολάδος
he-set-up and also other many towers on the thrown-up
γῆς, ὅπως ὅτι πλεῖστα φυλακτήρια εἴη.
earth so-that as most guard-posts might-be

οἳ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ᾽ ἐποίουν· οἱ δ᾽ ἐν τῷ τείχει 13
they indeed then these(-things) did the(-men) but on the wall
κατεγέλων τῆς πολιορκίας, ὡς ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
laughed-at the siege as having the necessaries
πλέον ἢ εἴκοσιν ἐτῶν. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος
more than for-twenty years having-heard and these(-things) — Cyrus
τὸ στράτευμα κατένειμε δώδεκα μέρη, ὡς μῆνα τοῦ
the army divided-into twelve parts so-that a-month of-the
ἐνιαυτοῦ ἕκαστον τὸ μέρος φυλάξον.
year each the part going-to-guard
οἱ δὲ αὖ Βαβυλώνιοι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πολὺ ἔτι 14
the and in-turn Babylonians having-heard these(-things) much still
μᾶλλον κατεγέλων, ἐννοούμενοι εἰ σφᾶς Φρύγες καὶ Λυδοὶ
more laughed considering if them Phrygians and Lydians
καὶ Ἀράβιοι καὶ Καππαδόκαι φυλάξοιεν, οὓς σφίσιν
and Arabians and Cappadocians should-guard whom to-themselves
ἐνόμιζον πάντας εὐμενεστέρους εἶναι ἢ Πέρσαις.
they-thought all more-well-disposed to-be than to-Persians
Καὶ αἱ μὲν τάφροι ἤδη ὀρωρυγμέναι ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος 15
And the indeed trenches now dug were — and Cyrus
ἐπειδὴ ἑορτὴν τοιαύτην ἐν τῇ Βαβυλῶνι ἤκουσεν εἶναι, ἐν
when a-festival such in — Babylon he-heard to-be in
ᾗ πάντες οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι ὅλην τὴν νύκτα πίνουσι καὶ
which all the Babylonians whole the night drink and
κωμάζουσιν, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα συνεσκότασε, λαβὼν πολλοὺς
revel as soon-as it-grew-dark having-taken many
ἀνθρώπους ἀνεστόμωσε τὰς τάφρους πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν.
men he-opened-the-mouths-of the trenches toward the river

16 ὡς δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, τὸ ὕδωρ κατὰ τὰς τάφρους ἐχώρει
when and this happened the water down the trenches went
ἐν τῇ νυκτί, ἡ δὲ διὰ τῆς πόλεως τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁδὸς
in the night the and through the city of-the river way
πορεύσιμος ἀνθρώποις ἐγίγνετο.
passable for-men became

17 ὡς δὲ τὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὕτως ἐπορσύνετο,
when and the(-matter) of-the river so was-being-prepared
παρηγγύησεν ὁ Κῦρος Πέρσαις χιλιάρχοις καὶ
passed-the-word — Cyrus to-Persian commanders-of-a-thousand both
πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων εἰς δύο ἄγοντας τὴν χιλιοστὺν
of-foot and of-horse in two(-deep) leading the thousand
παρεῖναι πρὸς αὐτόν, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους συμμάχους κατ'
to-be-present with him the and other allies at
οὐρὰν τούτων ἕπεσθαι ᾗπερ πρόσθεν τεταγμένους.
rear of-these to-follow just-as before drawn-up

18 οἳ μὲν δὴ παρῆσαν· ὃ δὲ καταβιβάσας εἰς τὸ ξηρὸν τοῦ
they indeed then were-present he and having-sent-down into the dry(-bed) of-the
ποταμοῦ τοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ πεζοὺς καὶ ἱππέας, ἐκέλευσε
river the attendants both foot and horse ordered
σκέψασθαι εἰ πορεύσιμον εἴη τὸ ἔδαφος τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
to-examine whether passable was the bottom of-the river

19 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήγγειλαν ὅτι πορεύσιμον εἴη, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
when and they-reported that passable it-was then indeed
συγκαλέσας τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῶν πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων ἔλεξε
having-called-together the leaders of-the foot and horse he-said
τοιάδε.
as-follows

20 Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὁ μὲν ποταμὸς ἡμῖν παρακεχώρηκε
Men friends the indeed river to-us has-given-way
τῆς εἰς τὴν πόλιν ὁδοῦ. ἡμεῖς δὲ θαρροῦντες εἰσίωμεν
of-the into the city road we and confidently let-us-go-in

ἐννοούμενοι ὅτι οὗτοι ἐφ᾽ οὓς νῦν πορευσόμεθα ἐκεῖνοί
considering that these against whom now we-shall-march those
εἰσιν οὓς ἡμεῖς καὶ συμμάχους πρὸς ἑαυτοῖς ἔχοντας καὶ
are whom we even allies with themselves having and
ἐγρηγορότας ἅπαντας καὶ νήφοντας καὶ ἐξωπλισμένους
awake all and sober and armed
καὶ συντεταγμένους ἐνικῶμεν·
and drawn-up we-were-conquering
νῦν δ᾽ ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἴμεν ἐν ᾧ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν 21
now but against them we-go at which-time many indeed of-them
καθεύδουσι, πολλοὶ δὲ μεθύουσι, πάντες δ᾽ ἀσύντακτοί
are-sleeping many and are-drunk all and disordered
εἰσιν· ὅταν δὲ ἡμᾶς αἴσθωνται ἔνδον ὄντας, πολὺ ἔτι
are when and us they-perceive inside being much still
μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν ἀχρεῖοι ἔσονται ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐκπεπλῆχθαι.
more than now useless they-will-be by the being-astounded
εἰ δέ τις τοῦτο ἐννοεῖται, ὃ δὴ λέγεται φοβερὸν εἶναι 22
if but anyone this considers which indeed is-said fearful to-be
τοῖς εἰς πόλιν εἰσιοῦσι, μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ τέγη ἀναβάντες
for-the(-men) into a-city going-in lest onto the roofs having-gone-up
βάλλωσιν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, τοῦτο μάλιστα θαρρεῖτε·
they-pelt(-us) from-this-side and from-that-side this most be-confident-about
ἢν γὰρ ἀναβῶσί τινες ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας, ἔχομεν σύμμαχον θεὸν
if for go-up any onto the houses we-have ally a-god
Ἥφαιστον. εὔφλεκτα δὲ τὰ πρόθυρα αὐτῶν, φοίνικος μὲν
Hephaestus easily-burned and the porches their of-palm indeed
αἱ θύραι πεποιημέναι, ἀσφάλτῳ δὲ ὑπεκκαύματι κεχριμέναι.
the doors made with-bitumen and as-tinder smeared
ἡμεῖς δ᾽ αὖ πολλὴν μὲν δᾳδα ἔχομεν, ἣ ταχὺ πολὺ 23
we and in-turn much indeed pine-torch have which quickly much
πῦρ τέξεται, πολλὴν δὲ πίτταν καὶ στυππεῖον, ἃ ταχὺ
fire will-beget much and pitch and tow which quickly

πολλὴν παρακαλεῖ φλόγα· ὥστε ἀνάγκην εἶναι ἢ φεύγειν
much summons flame so-that necessity to-be either to-flee
ταχὺ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ἢ ταχὺ κατακεκαῦσθαι.
quickly the(-men) from the houses or quickly to-be-burned-up

24 ἀλλ' ἄγετε λαμβάνετε τὰ ὅπλα· ἡγήσομαι δ' ἐγὼ σὺν
but come take the arms shall-lead and I with
τοῖς θεοῖς. ὑμεῖς δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα καὶ Γωβρύα, δείκνυτε
the gods you and he-said O Gadatas and Gobryas show
τὰς ὁδούς· ἴστε γάρ· ὅταν δ' ἐντὸς γενώμεθα, τὴν
the roads you-know for when and inside we-are the
ταχίστην ἄγετε ἐπὶ τὰ βασίλεια.
quickest(-way) lead to the palace

25 Καὶ μήν, ἔφασαν οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν, οὐδὲν ἂν
And indeed said the(-men) about — Gobryas nothing —
εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ καὶ ἄκλειστοι αἱ πύλαι αἱ τοῦ
would-be wonderful if even unlocked the gates the(-ones) of-the
βασιλείου εἶεν· κωμάζει γὰρ ἡ πόλις πᾶσα τῇδε τῇ νυκτί.
palace should-be revels for the city all this the night
φυλακῇ μέντοι πρὸ τῶν πυλῶν ἐντευξόμεθα· ἔστι γὰρ αἰεὶ
a-guard however before the gates we-shall-meet it-is for always
τεταγμένη. Οὐκ ἂν μέλλειν δέοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀλλ'
posted Not — to-delay (one)-would-need said — Cyrus but
ἰέναι, ἵνα ἀπαρασκεύους ὡς μάλιστα λάβωμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας.
to-go so-that unprepared as most we-may-take the men

26 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐρρήθη, ἐπορεύοντο· τῶν δὲ
When and these(-things) had-been-said they-marched of-the(-men) and
ἀπαντώντων οἳ μὲν ἀπέθνῃσκον παιόμενοι, οἳ δ'
meeting(-them) some indeed died being-struck others and
ἔφευγον πάλιν εἴσω, οἳ δ' ἐβόων· οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ
fled back inside others and shouted the(-men) and about

Γωβρύαν συνεβόων αὐτοῖς, ὡς κωμασταὶ ὄντες καὶ αὐτοί·
Gobryas shouted-with them as revelers being also themselves
καὶ ἰόντες ᾗ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα ἐπὶ τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐγένοντο.
and going as they-could quickest at the palace they-were
καὶ οἱ μὲν σὺν τῷ Γωβρύᾳ καὶ Γαδάτᾳ τεταγμένοι 27
and the(-men) indeed with — Gobryas and Gadatas posted
κεκλειμένας εὑρίσκουσι τὰς πύλας τοῦ βασιλείου· οἱ δὲ
locked find the gates of-the palace the(-men) and
ἐπὶ τοὺς φύλακας ταχθέντες ἐπεισπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς πίνουσι
against the guards posted fall-upon them drinking
πρὸς φῶς πολύ, καὶ εὐθὺς ὡς πολεμίοις ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς.
by light much and at-once as enemies they-treated them
ὡς δὲ κραυγὴ καὶ κτύπος ἐγίγνετο, αἰσθόμενοι οἱ 28
when and shouting and din arose having-perceived the(-men)
ἔνδον τοῦ θορύβου, κελεύσαντος τοῦ βασιλέως σκέψασθαι
inside the uproar having-ordered the king to-see
τί εἴη τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἐκθέουσί τινες ἀνοίξαντες τὰς πύλας.
what was the matter run-out some having-opened the gates
οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Γαδάταν ὡς εἶδον τὰς πύλας χαλώσας 29
the(-men) and about — Gadatas when they-saw the gates loosened
εἰσπίπτουσι καὶ τοῖς πάλιν φεύγουσιν εἴσω ἐφεπόμενοι καὶ
rush-in and the(-men) back fleeing inside following and
παίοντες ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ ἤδη ἑστηκότα
striking arrive at the king and already standing
αὐτὸν καὶ ἐσπασμένον ὃν εἶχεν ἀκινάκην εὑρίσκουσι.
him and having-drawn which he-had dagger find
καὶ τοῦτον μὲν οἱ σὺν Γαδάτᾳ καὶ Γωβρύᾳ 30
and this(-man) indeed the(-men) with Gadatas and Gobryas
ἐχειροῦντο· καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ δὲ ἀπέθνῃσκον, ὃ μὲν
overpowered and the(-men) with him and died one indeed

προβαλλόμενός τι, ὃ δὲ φεύγων, ὃ δέ γε καὶ
shielding-himself-with something one and fleeing one and at-least even
ἀμυνόμενος ὅτῳ ἐδύνατο.
defending-himself with-whatever he-could

31 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος διέπεμπε τὰς τῶν ἱππέων τάξεις κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς
— and Cyrus sent-about the of-the horsemen squadrons through the streets
καὶ προεῖπεν οὓς μὲν ἔξω λαμβάνοιεν κατακαίνειν, τοὺς
and proclaimed whom indeed outside they-should-take to-kill the(-ones)
δ' ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις κηρύττειν τοὺς συριστὶ ἐπισταμένους
and in the houses to-proclaim the(-ones) in-Syrian knowing
ἔνδον μένειν· εἰ δέ τις ἔξω ληφθείη, ὅτι θανατώσοιτο.
inside to-stay if but anyone outside were-taken that he-would-be-put-to-death

32 Οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν. Γαδάτας δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας
They indeed then these(-things) did Gadatas and and Gobryas
ἦκον· καὶ θεοὺς μὲν πρῶτον προσεκύνουν, ὅτι τετιμωρημένοι
came and gods indeed first did-obeisance-to that avenged
ἦσαν τὸν ἀνόσιον βασιλέα, ἔπειτα δὲ Κύρου κατεφίλουν
they-had the unholy king then and of-Cyrus kissed
καὶ χεῖρας καὶ πόδας, πολλὰ δακρύοντες ἅμα χαρᾷ.
both hands and feet much weeping together-with joy

33 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο καὶ ᾔσθοντο οἱ τὰς ἄκρας
when and day came and perceived the(-men) the citadels
ἔχοντες ἑαλωκυῖάν τε τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὸν βασιλέα
holding taken both the city and the king
τεθνηκότα, παραδιδόασι καὶ τὰς ἄκρας.
dead they-surrender also the citadels

34 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰς μὲν ἄκρας εὐθὺς παρελάμβανε καὶ
— and Cyrus the indeed citadels at-once took-over and
φρουράρχους τε καὶ φρουροὺς εἰς ταύτας ἀνέπεμπε, τοὺς
garrison-commanders both and garrisons into these sent-up the
δὲ τεθνηκότας θάπτειν ἐφῆκε τοῖς προσήκουσι· τοὺς
and dead to-bury he-permitted to-the(-ones) related the

δὲ κήρυκας κηρύττειν ἐκέλευσεν ἀποφέρειν πάντας τὰ
and heralds to-proclaim he-ordered to-bring-out all the
ὅπλα Βαβυλωνίους· ὅπου δὲ ληφθήσοιτο ὅπλα ἐν οἰκίᾳ,
arms Babylonians where and should-be-taken arms in a-house
προηγόρευεν ὡς πάντες οἱ ἔνδον ἀποθανοῖντο. οἳ μὲν δὴ
he-proclaimed that all the(-ones) inside would-die they indeed then
ἀπέφερον, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα μὲν εἰς τὰς ἄκρας κατέθετο,
brought(-them) — and Cyrus these(-things) indeed in the citadels deposited
ὡς εἴη ἕτοιμα, εἴ τί ποτε δέοι χρῆσθαι.
so-that they-might-be ready if at-all ever there-should-be-need to-use(-them)
ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἐπέπρακτο, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς μάγους 35
when and these(-things) had-been-done first indeed the magi
καλέσας, ὡς δοριαλώτου τῆς πόλεως οὔσης ἀκροθίνια
having-called since spear-won the city being first-fruits
τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ τεμένη ἐκέλευσεν ἐξελεῖν· ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ
for-the gods and precincts he-ordered to-set-apart after this and also
οἰκίας διεδίδου καὶ ἀρχεῖα τούτοις οὕσπερ κοινῶνας
houses he-distributed and official-quarters to-these whom-very partners
ἐνόμιζε τῶν καταπεπραγμένων· οὕτω δὲ διένειμεν ὥσπερ
he-considered in-the achievements so and he-divided as
ἐδέδοκτο τὰ κράτιστα τοῖς ἀρίστοις. εἰ δέ τις οἴοιτο
had-been-resolved the best(-things) to-the bravest if but anyone should-think
μεῖον ἔχειν, διδάσκειν προσιόντας ἐκέλευσε.
less to-have to-inform(-him) coming he-ordered
προεῖπε δὲ Βαβυλωνίοις μὲν τὴν γῆν ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ 36
he-proclaimed and to-Babylonians indeed the land to-work and
τοὺς δασμοὺς ἀποφέρειν καὶ θεραπεύειν τούτους οἷς
the tributes to-pay and to-serve those to-whom
ἕκαστοι αὐτῶν ἐδόθησαν· Πέρσας δὲ τοὺς κοινῶνας καὶ
each of-them had-been-given Persians and the partners and

τῶν συμμάχων ὅσοι μένειν ἠροῦντο παρ᾽ αὐτῷ ὡς
of-the allies as-many-as to-stay chose with him as
δεσπότας ὧν ἔλαβον προηγόρευε διαλέγεσθαι.
masters of-what they-had-received he-proclaimed to-converse

37 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐπιθυμῶν ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη κατασκευάσασθαι
After and this desiring — Cyrus now to-establish
καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς βασιλεῖ ἡγεῖτο πρέπειν, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ
also himself as for-a-king he-thought to-befit it-seemed-best to-him
τοῦτο σὺν τῇ τῶν φίλων γνώμῃ ποιῆσαι, ὡς ὅτι ἥκιστα
this with the of-the friends judgment to-do so-that as least
ἂν ἐπιφθόνως σπάνιός τε καὶ σεμνὸς φανείη. ὧδε οὖν
— *invidiously rare both and majestic he-might-appear thus then*
ἐμηχανᾶτο τοῦτο. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ στὰς ὅπου
he-contrived this at-the-same-time-as the day having-stood where
ἐδόκει ἐπιτήδειον εἶναι προσεδέχετο τὸν βουλόμενον
seemed suitable to-be he-received the(-man) wishing
λέγειν τι καὶ ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπέπεμπεν.
to-say anything and having-answered(-him) sent(-him)-away

38 οἱ δ᾽ ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἔγνωσαν ὅτι προσδέχοιτο, ἦκον
the and people when they-knew that he-received(-them) came
ἀμήχανοι τὸ πλῆθος· καὶ ὠθουμένων περὶ τοῦ προσελθεῖν
unmanageable the number and (of-them)-pushing about the approaching
ἠχή τε πολλὴ καὶ μάχη ἦν.
uproar both great and fighting there-was

39 οἱ δὲ ὑπηρέται ὡς ἐδύναντο διακρίναντας προσίεσαν.
the and attendants as they-could having-separated(-them) let(-them)-in
ὁπότε δέ τις τῶν φίλων διωσάμενος τὸν ὄχλον
whenever and anyone of-the friends having-pushed-through the crowd
προφανείη, προτείνων ὁ Κῦρος τὴν χεῖρα προσήγετο
appeared holding-out — Cyrus the hand drew
αὐτοὺς καὶ οὕτως ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες φίλοι, περιμένετε,
them(-to-him) and so said Men friends wait

ἕως ἂν τὸν ὄχλον διωσώμεθα· ἔπειτα δὲ καθ' ἡσυχίαν
until — the crowd we-push-away then and at leisure
συγγενησόμεθα. οἱ μὲν δὴ φίλοι περιέμενον, ὁ δ' ὄχλος
we-shall-be-together the indeed then friends waited the but crowd
πλείων καὶ πλείων ἐπέρρει, ἕωσπερ ἔφθασεν ἑσπέρα
more and more flowed-in until came-first evening
γενομένη πρὶν τοῖς φίλοις αὐτὸν σχολάσαι συγγενέσθαι.
having-come before for-the friends him to-be-at-leisure to-be-with(-them)
οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει, Ὥρα, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, νῦν μὲν 40
so indeed — Cyrus says Time he-said O men now indeed
διαλυθῆναι· αὔριον δὲ πρῲ ἔλθετε· καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ βούλομαι
to-disperse tomorrow and early come and for I wish
ὑμῖν τι διαλεχθῆναι. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ φίλοι
with-you something to-discuss having-heard these(-things) the friends
ἄσμενοι ᾤχοντο ἀποθέοντες, δίκην δεδωκότες ὑπὸ
gladly went-off running-away punishment having-paid at-the-hands-of
πάντων τῶν ἀναγκαίων. καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
all the necessities and then indeed so they-slept
Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ μὲν Κῦρος παρῆν εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ χωρίον, 41
On-the and next-day — indeed Cyrus was-present at the same place
ἀνθρώπων δὲ πολὺ πλέον πλῆθος περιειστήκει βουλομένων
of-people and much greater a-crowd stood-around wishing
προσιέναι, καὶ πολὺ πρότερον ἢ οἱ φίλοι παρῆσαν.
to-approach and much earlier than the friends were-present
ὁ οὖν Κῦρος περιστησάμενος τῶν ξυστοφόρων Περσῶν
— then Cyrus having-set-around of-the spear-bearing Persians
κύκλον μέγαν εἶπε μηδένα παριέναι ἢ τοὺς φίλους τε
a-circle great said no-one to-let-through except the friends both
καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν συμμάχων.
and the officers of-the Persians both and of-the allies

42 ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον οὗτοι, ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοῖς τοιάδε.
when and had-come-together these said — Cyrus to-them as-follows
Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἂν
Men friends and allies the indeed gods in-nothing —
ἔχοιμεν μέμψασθαι τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ μέχρι τοῦδε πάντα
we-could blame the(-fact) not — up-to this(-time) all
ὅσα ηὐχόμεθα καταπεπραχέναι· εἰ μέντοι τοιοῦτον ἔσται
which we-prayed-for to-have-accomplished if however such will-be
τὸ μεγάλα πράττειν ὥστε μὴ οἷόν τ᾽ εἶναι μήτε ἀμφ᾽
the great-things to-do so-that not possible — to-be either about
αὑτὸν σχολὴν ἔχειν μήτε μετὰ τῶν φίλων εὐφρανθῆναι,
oneself leisure to-have or with the friends to-be-merry
ἐγὼ μὲν χαίρειν ταύτην τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν κελεύω.
I indeed farewell this the happiness bid
43 ἐνενοήσατε γάρ, ἔφη, καὶ χθὲς δήπου ὅτι ἕωθεν
you-noticed for he-said also yesterday surely that from-dawn
ἀρξάμενοι ἀκούειν τῶν προσιόντων οὐκ ἐλήξαμεν
having-begun to-hear the(-men) approaching not we-stopped
πρόσθεν ἑσπέρας· καὶ νῦν ὁρᾶτε τούτους ἄλλους πλείονας
before evening and now you-see these others more-numerous
τῶν χθὲς παρόντας ὡς πράγματα ἡμῖν παρέξοντας.
than-the(-men) yesterday present as troubles to-us going-to-give
44 εἰ οὖν τις τούτοις ὑφέξει ἑαυτόν, λογίζομαι μικρὸν μέν
if then anyone to-these will-submit himself I-reckon small indeed
τι ὑμῖν μέρος ἐμοῦ μετεσόμενον, μικρὸν δέ τι ἐμοὶ ὑμῶν·
some to-you share of-me going-to-be-had small and some to-me of-you
ἐμαυτοῦ μέντοι σαφῶς οἶδ᾽ ὅτι οὐδ᾽ ὁτιοῦν μοι μετέσται.
of-myself however clearly I-know that not-even anything for-me will-be-had
45 ἔτι δ᾽, ἔφη, καὶ ἄλλο ὁρῶ γελοῖον πρᾶγμα, ἐγὼ γὰρ
further and he-said also another I-see ridiculous thing I for
δήπου ὑμῖν μὲν ὥσπερ εἰκὸς διάκειμαι· τούτων δὲ τῶν
surely toward-you indeed as fitting am-disposed of-these but the(-men)

περιεστηκότων ἤ τινα ἢ οὐδένα οἶδα, καὶ οὗτοι πάντες
standing-around either some-one or no-one I-know and these all
οὕτω παρεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶν ὡς, ἢν νικῶσιν ὑμᾶς ὠθοῦντες,
so prepared are that if they-prevail you pushing
πρότεροι ἃ βούλονται ὑμῶν παρ᾽ ἐμοῦ διαπραξόμενοι. ἐγὼ
first what they-wish than-you from me going-to-obtain I
δὲ ἠξίουν τοὺς τοιούτους, εἴ τίς τι ἐμοῦ δέοιτο,
but thought-it-right the such(-men) if anyone anything of-me should-need
θεραπεύειν ὑμᾶς τοὺς ἐμοὺς φίλους δεομένους προσαγωγῆς.
to-court you the my friends asking-for introduction
ἴσως ἂν οὖν εἴποι τις, τί δῆτα οὐχ οὕτως ἐξ ἀρχῆς 46
perhaps — then would-say someone why indeed not so from beginning
παρεσκευασάμην, ἀλλὰ παρεῖχον ἐν τῷ μέσῳ ἐμαυτόν.
did-I-arrange(-it) but offered in the middle myself
ὅτι τὰ τοῦ πολέμου τοιαῦτα ἐγίγνωσκον ὄντα ὡς
because the(-things) of-the war such I-knew being that
μὴ ὑστερίζειν δέον τὸν ἄρχοντα μήτε τῷ εἰδέναι ἃ
not to-be-behind being-needful the commander either in-the knowing what
δεῖ μήτε τῷ πράττειν ἃ ἂν καιρὸς ᾖ· τοὺς δὲ
(one)-must or in-the doing what — occasion may-be the and
σπανίους ἰδεῖν στρατηγοὺς πολλὰ ἐνόμιζον ὧν δεῖ
rare to-see generals many-things I-thought of-what (one)-must
πραχθῆναι παριέναι.
to-be-done to-let-slip
νῦν δ᾽ ἐπειδὴ ὁ φιλοπονώτατος πόλεμος ἀναπέπαυται, 47
now but since the most-toilsome war has-ceased
δοκεῖ μοι καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ ψυχὴ ἀναπαύσεώς τινος ὀρθῶς
seems to-me also the my soul of-rest some rightly
ἀξιοῦν τυγχάνειν. ὡς οὖν ἐμοῦ ἀπορουμένου ὅ τι ἂν
to-claim to-obtain as then of-me being-at-a-loss what ever —
τύχοιμι ποιῶν ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν τά τε ἡμέτερα
I-should-happen doing so-that well to-be the both ours

καὶ τὰ τῶν ἄλλων ὧν ἡμᾶς δεῖ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι,
and the(-affairs) of-the others which us must to-care-for
συμβουλευέτω ὅ τι τις ὁρᾷ συμφορώτατον.
let-him-advise what ever anyone sees most-advantageous

48 Κῦρος μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀνίσταται δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Ἀρτάβαζος
Cyrus indeed so spoke rises and after him Artabazus
ὁ συγγενής ποτε φήσας εἶναι καὶ εἶπεν, Ἦ καλῶς,
the(-one) kinsman once having-claimed to-be and said Truly well
ἔφη, ἐποίησας, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄρξας τοῦ λόγου. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἔτι νέου
he-said you-did O Cyrus having-begun the speech I for still young
μὲν ὄντος σοῦ πάνυ ἀρξάμενος ἐπεθύμουν φίλος γενέσθαι,
indeed being you very having-begun desired a-friend to-become
ὁρῶν δέ σε οὐδὲν δεόμενον ἐμοῦ κατώκνουν σοι προσιέναι.
seeing but you nothing needing me I-shrank to-you to-approach
49 ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔτυχές ποτε καὶ ἐμοῦ δεηθεὶς ἐξαγγεῖλαι πρὸς
when but you-happened once also me having-needed to-report to
Μήδους τὰ παρὰ Κυαξάρου, ἐλογιζόμην, εἰ ταῦτα
Medes the(-messages) from Cyaxares I-reckoned if these(-things)
προθύμως σοι συλλάβοιμι, ὡς οἰκεῖός τέ σοι ἐσοίμην
eagerly for-you I-should-help that intimate both to-you I-would-be
καὶ ἐξέσοιτό μοι διαλέγεσθαί σοι ὁπόσον χρόνον
and it-would-be-possible for-me to-converse with-you as-much time
βουλοίμην. καὶ ἐκεῖνα μὲν δὴ ἐπράχθη ὥστε σε ἐπαινεῖν.
as-I-wished and those(-things) indeed then were-done so-that you to-praise(-me)
50 μετὰ τοῦτο Ὑρκάνιοι μὲν πρῶτοι φίλοι ἐγένοντο ἡμῖν
after this Hyrcanians indeed first friends became to-us
καὶ μάλα πεινῶσι συμμάχων· ὥστε μόνον οὐκ ἐν ταῖς
and very hungering for-allies so-that only not in the
ἀγκάλαις περιεφέρομεν αὐτοὺς ἀγαπῶντες. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο

ἐπεὶ ἑάλω τὸ πολέμιον στρατόπεδον, οὐκ οἶμαι σχολή
when was-taken the enemy camp not I-think leisure
σοι ἦν ἀμφ᾽ ἐμὲ ἔχειν· καὶ ἐγώ σοι συνεγίγνωσκον.
for-you was about me to-have and I for-you made-allowance
ἐκ δὲ τούτου Γωβρύας ἡμῖν φίλος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἐγὼ 51
after and this Gobryas to-us friend became and I
ἔχαιρον· καὶ αὖθις Γαδάτας· καὶ ἤδη ἔργον σοῦ ἦν
rejoiced and again Gadatas and now a-task of-you it-was
μεταλαβεῖν. ἐπεί γε μέντοι καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Καδούσιοι
to-get-a-share since at-least however also Sacians and Cadusians
σύμμαχοι ἐγεγένηντο, θεραπεύειν εἰκότως ἔδει τούτους·
allies had-become to-court reasonably (one)-should these
καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι σὲ ἐθεράπευον.
and for these you courted
ὡς δ᾽ ἤλθομεν πάλιν ἔνθεν ὡρμήθημεν, ὁρῶν σε ἀμφ᾽ 52
when and we-came back whence we-had-set-out seeing you about
ἵππους ἔχοντα, ἀμφ᾽ ἅρματα, ἀμφὶ μηχανάς, ἡγούμην, ἐπεὶ
horses being-busy about chariots about engines I-thought when
ἀπὸ τούτου σχολάσαις, τότε σε καὶ ἀμφ᾽ ἐμὲ ἔξειν
from this you-should-have-leisure then you also about me to-have
σχολήν. ὥς γε μέντοι ἦλθεν ἡ δεινὴ ἀγγελία τὸ πάντας
leisure when at-least however came the terrible news the all
ἀνθρώπους ἐφ᾽ ἡμᾶς συλλέγεσθαι, ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι ταῦτα
men against us to-be-gathering I-knew that these(-things)
μέγιστα εἴη· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς γένοιτο, εὖ ἤδη ἐδόκουν
greatest were if but these(-things) well should-turn-out well now I-seemed
εἰδέναι ὅτι πολλὴ ἔσοιτο ἀφθονία τῆς ἐμῆς καὶ σῆς συνουσίας.
to-know that great would-be abundance of-the my and your companionship
καὶ νῦν δὴ νενικήκαμέν τε τὴν μεγάλην μάχην καὶ 53
and now indeed we-have-won both the great battle and
Σάρδεις καὶ Κροῖσον ὑποχείριον ἔχομεν καὶ Βαβυλῶνα
Sardis and Croesus subject we-have and Babylon

ἠρήκαμεν καὶ πάντας κατεστράμμεθα, καὶ μὰ τὸν Μίθρην
we-have-taken and all we-have-subdued and no-by — Mithras
ἐγώ τοι ἐχθές, εἰ μὴ πολλοῖς διεπύκτευσα, οὐκ ἄν σοι
I you-know yesterday if not many I-had-fought-through not — to-you
ἐδυνάμην προσελθεῖν. ἐπεί γε μέντοι ἐδεξιώσω
I-could to-approach since at-least however you-gave-your-right-hand-to
με καὶ παρὰ σοὶ ἐκέλευσας μένειν, ἤδη περίβλεπτος ἦν,
me and beside you bade(-me) to-stay at-once conspicuous I-was
ὅτι μετὰ σοῦ ἄσιτος καὶ ἄποτος διημέρευον.
because with you without-food and without-drink I-spent-the-day
54 νῦν οὖν εἰ μὲν ἔσται πῇ ὅπως οἱ πλείστου ἄξιοι
now then if indeed it-will-be somehow that the(-ones) of-most worth
γεγενημένοι πλεῖστόν σου μέρος μεθέξομεν· εἰ δὲ μή,
having-proved most of-you share we-shall-have if but not
πάλιν αὖ ἐγὼ ἐθέλω παρὰ σοῦ ἐξαγγέλλειν ἀπιέναι
again in-turn I am-willing from you to-announce to-depart
πάντας ἀπὸ σοῦ πλὴν ἡμῶν τῶν ἐξ ἀρχῆς φίλων.
all from you except us the(-ones) from beginning friends
55 Ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐγέλασε μὲν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί·
At this laughed indeed — Cyrus and others many
Χρυσάντας δ' ἀνέστη ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἀλλὰ
Chrysantas and rose the Persian and spoke thus But
τὸ μὲν πρόσθεν, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰκότως ἐν τῷ φανερῷ σαυτὸν
the indeed before O Cyrus reasonably in the open yourself
παρεῖχες, δι' ἅ τε αὐτὸς εἶπες καὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἡμᾶς
you-offered because-of what both yourself you-said and because not us
σοι μάλιστα ἦν θεραπευτέον. ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἡμῶν
for-you most it-was to-be-courted we indeed for also of-us
αὐτῶν ἕνεκα παρῆμεν· τὸ δὲ πλῆθος ἔδει ἀνακτᾶσθαι
ourselves for-the-sake were-present the but multitude (one)-should to-win-over

ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου, ὅπως ὅτι ἥδιστα συμπονεῖν καὶ
by every means so-that as most-gladly to-share-toil and
συγκινδυνεύειν ἡμῖν ἐθέλοιεν.
to-share-danger with-us they-might-be-willing
νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ οὐχ ἕνα τρόπον μόνον ἔχεις, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλους 56
now but since not one way only you-have but also others
δύνασαι ἀνακτᾶσθαι οὓς καιρὸς εἴη, ἤδη καὶ οἰκίας σε
you-can to-win-over whom occasion would-be now also a-house you
τυχεῖν ἄξιον· ἢ τί ἀπολαύσαις ἂν τῆς ἀρχῆς, εἰ μόνος
to-obtain fitting or what would-you-enjoy — the rule if alone
ἄμοιρος εἶης ἑστίας, οὗ οὔτε ὁσιώτερον χωρίον
without-share you-were of-a-hearth than-which neither holier place
ἐν ἀνθρώποις οὔτε ἥδιον οὔτε οἰκειότερόν ἐστιν οὐδέν;
among men nor pleasanter nor more-one's-own is any
ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἂν οἶει καὶ ἡμᾶς αἰσχύνεσθαι,
then and he-said not — do-you-think also us to-be-ashamed
εἰ σὲ μὲν ὁρῶμεν ἔξω καρτεροῦντα, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐν οἰκίαις
if you indeed we-saw outside enduring ourselves and in houses
εἴημεν καὶ σοῦ δοκοίημεν πλεονεκτεῖν;
should-be and than-you should-seem to-have-more
ἐπεὶ δὲ Χρυσάντας ταῦτα ἔλεξε, συνηγόρευον αὐτῷ 57
when and Chrysantas these(-things) spoke spoke-in-support-of him
κατὰ ταὐτὰ πολλοί. ἐκ τούτου δὴ εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὰ
in the-same-way many after this indeed he-goes into the
βασίλεια, καὶ τὰ ἐκ Σάρδεων χρήματα ἐνταῦθ' οἱ
palace and the from Sardis goods there the(-men)
ἄγοντες ἀπέδοσαν. ἐπεὶ δ' εἰσῆλθεν ὁ Κῦρος, πρῶτον
bringing delivered when and had-gone-in — Cyrus first
μὲν Ἑστίᾳ ἔθυσεν, ἔπειτα Διὶ βασιλεῖ καὶ εἴ τινι
indeed to-Hestia he-sacrificed then to-Zeus the-king and if to-any
ἄλλῳ θεῷ οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγοῦντο.
other god the magi directed

58 Ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἄλλα ἤδη ἤρχετο διοικεῖν.
Having-done and these(-things) the other(-things) now he-began to-administer
ἐννοῶν δὲ τὸ αὑτοῦ πρᾶγμα ὅτι ἐπιχειροίη μὲν ἄρχειν
considering and the his-own situation that he-was-undertaking indeed to-rule
πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων, παρασκευάζοιτο δὲ οἰκεῖν ἐν πόλει
many men he-was-preparing and to-dwell in a-city
τῇ μεγίστῃ τῶν φανερῶν, αὕτη δ' οὕτως ἔχοι
the greatest of-the(-cities) known this and so was-disposed
αὐτῷ ὡς πολεμιωτάτη ἂν γένοιτο ἀνδρὶ πόλις, ταῦτα
to-him as most-hostile — could-be to-a-man a-city these(-things)
δὴ λογιζόμενος φυλακῆς περὶ τὸ σῶμα ἡγήσατο δεῖσθαι.
indeed reckoning of-a-guard about the person he-thought to-need
59 γνοὺς δ' ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ ἄνθρωποι εὐχειρωτότεροί εἰσιν
having-recognized and that nowhere men easier-to-overpower are
ἢ ἐν σιτίοις καὶ ποτοῖς καὶ λουτροῖς καὶ κοίτῃ καὶ ὕπνῳ,
than at meals and drinks and baths and bed and sleep
ἐσκόπει τίνας ἂν ἐν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν πιστοτάτους
he-considered whom — among the(-men) about him most-faithful
ἔχοι. ἐνόμισε δὲ μὴ ἂν γενέσθαι ποτὲ πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον
he-could-have he-thought and not — to-become ever faithful a-man
ὅστις ἄλλον μᾶλλον φιλήσοι τοῦ τῆς φυλακῆς δεομένου.
who another more would-love than-the(-one) the guarding needing
60 τοὺς μὲν οὖν ἔχοντας παῖδας ἢ γυναῖκας συναρμοττούσας
the(-ones) indeed then having children or wives suited(-to-them)
ἢ παιδικὰ ἔγνω φύσει ἠναγκάσθαι ταῦτα μάλιστα
or favorites he-recognized by-nature to-have-been-compelled these most
φιλεῖν· τοὺς δ' εὐνούχους ὁρῶν πάντων τούτων στερομένους
to-love the and eunuchs seeing all these deprived-of
ἡγήσατο τούτους ἂν περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι οἵτινες
he-thought these — of most to-make(-account) whoever
δύναιντο πλουτίζειν μάλιστα αὐτοὺς καὶ βοηθεῖν, εἴ τι
could to-enrich most them and to-help if in-anything

ἀδικοῖντο, καὶ τιμὰς περιάπτειν αὐτοῖς· τούτοις δ'
they-were-wronged and honors to-bestow-on them these and
εὐεργετοῦντα ὑπερβάλλειν αὐτὸν οὐδέν' ἂν ἡγεῖτο δύνασθαι.
in-benefiting to-surpass him no-one — he-thought to-be-able
πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἄδοξοι ὄντες οἱ εὐνοῦχοι παρὰ τοῖς 61
in-addition and to-these despised being the eunuchs among the
ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις καὶ διὰ τοῦτο δεσπότου ἐπικούρου
other people also because-of this of-a-master as-protector
προσδέονται· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀνὴρ ὅστις οὐκ ἂν ἀξιώσειεν
stand-in-need no for man who not — would-claim
εὐνούχου πλέον ἔχειν ἐν παντί, εἰ μή τι ἄλλο
than-a-eunuch more to-have in everything if not something other
κρεῖττον ἀπείργοι· δεσπότῃ δὲ πιστὸν ὄντα οὐδὲν κωλύει
stronger prevented to-a-master but faithful being nothing prevents
πρωτεύειν καὶ τὸν εὐνοῦχον.
to-be-first even the eunuch
ὃ δ' ἂν μάλιστά τις οἰηθείη, ἀνάλκιδας τοὺς εὐνούχους 62
what but — most anyone might-suppose weak the eunuchs
γίγνεσθαι, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐφαίνετο αὐτῷ. ἐτεκμαίρετο δὲ καὶ
to-become not-even this appeared to-him he-inferred and also
ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων ζῴων ὅτι οἵ τε ὑβρισταὶ ἵπποι ἐκτεμνόμενοι
from the other animals that the both unruly horses being-castrated
τοῦ μὲν δάκνειν καὶ ὑβρίζειν ἀποπαύονται, πολεμικοὶ δὲ
from-the indeed biting and being-unruly cease warlike but
οὐδὲν ἧττον γίγνονται, οἵ τε ταῦροι ἐκτεμνόμενοι τοῦ μὲν
nothing less become the and bulls being-castrated from-the indeed
μέγα φρονεῖν καὶ ἀπειθεῖν ὑφίενται, τοῦ δ' ἰσχύειν καὶ
great thinking and disobeying give-way from-the but being-strong and
ἐργάζεσθαι οὐ στερίσκονται, καὶ οἱ κύνες δὲ ὡσαύτως τοῦ
working not are-deprived and the dogs and likewise from-the

μὲν ἀπολείπειν τοὺς δεσπότας ἀποπαύονται ἐκτεμνόμεναι,
indeed leaving the masters cease being-castrated
φυλάττειν δὲ καὶ εἰς θήραν οὐδὲν κακίους γίγνονται.
to-guard but and for hunting nothing worse become
63 καὶ οἵ γε ἄνθρωποι ὡσαύτως ἠρεμέστεροι γίγνονται
and the at-least men likewise calmer become
στερισκόμενοι ταύτης τῆς ἐπιθυμίας, οὐ μέντοι ἀμελέστεροί
being-deprived of-this the desire not however more-careless
γε τῶν προσταττομένων, οὐδ' ἧττόν τι ἱππικοί, οὐδὲ
at-least of-the (things)-ordered nor less at-all horsemanlike nor
ἧττόν τι ἀκοντιστικοί, οὐδὲ ἧττον φιλότιμοι.
less at-all javelin-skilled nor less ambitious
64 κατάδηλοι δ' ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις καὶ ἐν ταῖς
evident and they-became both in the wars and in the
θήραις ὅτι ἔσῳζον τὸ φιλόνικον ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς. τοῦ δὲ
hunts that they-preserved the love-of-victory in the souls of-the and
πιστοὶ εἶναι ἐν τῇ φθορᾷ τῶν δεσποτῶν μάλιστα βάσανον
faithful being in the ruin of-the masters most proof
ἐδίδοσαν· οὐδένες γὰρ πιστότερα ἔργα ἀπεδείκνυντο ἐν
they-gave none for more-faithful deeds displayed in
ταῖς δεσποτικαῖς συμφοραῖς τῶν εὐνούχων.
the masters' misfortunes than-the eunuchs
65 εἰ δέ τι ἄρα τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἰσχύος μειοῦσθαι
if and somewhat then of-the of-the body strength to-be-diminished
δοκοῦσιν, ὁ σίδηρος ἀνισοῖ τοὺς ἀσθενεῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ
they-seem the iron equalizes the weak in the war
τοῖς ἰσχυροῖς. ταῦτα δὴ γιγνώσκων ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ
with-the strong these(-things) indeed knowing having-begun from
τῶν θυρωρῶν πάντας τοὺς περὶ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα
the doorkeepers all the(-men) about the his-own person
θεραπευτῆρας ἐποιήσατο εὐνούχους.
attendants he-made eunuchs

Ἡγησάμενος δὲ οὐχ ἱκανὴν εἶναι τὴν φυλακὴν ταύτην πρὸς 66
Having-thought and not sufficient to-be the guard this against
τὸ πλῆθος τῶν δυσμενῶς ἐχόντων, ἐσκόπει τίνας τῶν
the number of-the(-men) ill-disposed being he-considered whom of-the
ἄλλων ἂν πιστοτάτους περὶ τὸ βασίλειον φύλακας λάβοι.
others — most-faithful about the palace guards he-might-take
εἰδὼς οὖν Πέρσας τοὺς οἴκοι κακοβιωτάτους μὲν ὄντας 67
knowing then Persians the(-ones) at-home living-worst indeed being
διὰ πενίαν, ἐπιπονώτατα δὲ ζῶντας διὰ τὴν τῆς
because-of poverty most-laboriously and living because-of the of-the
χώρας τραχύτητα καὶ διὰ τὸ αὐτουργοὺς εἶναι, τούτους
country roughness and because-of the self-working being these
ἐνόμισε μάλιστ᾽ ἂν ἀγαπᾶν τὴν παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ δίαιταν.
he-thought most — to-be-content-with the with himself way-of-life
λαμβάνει οὖν τούτων μυρίους δορυφόρους, οἳ κύκλῳ 68
he-takes then of-these ten-thousand spear-bearers who around
μὲν νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ἐφύλαττον περὶ τὰ βασίλεια,
indeed by-night and by-day guarded about the palace
ὁπότε ἐπὶ χώρας εἴη· ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίοι ποι, ἔνθεν
whenever at home he-was whenever and he-went-out anywhere on-this-side
καὶ ἔνθεν τεταγμένοι ἐπορεύοντο.
and on-that-side drawn-up they-marched
νομίσας δὲ καὶ Βαβυλῶνος ὅλης φύλακας δεῖν εἶναι 69
having-thought and also of-Babylon whole guards must to-be
ἱκανούς, εἴτ᾽ ἐπιδημῶν αὐτὸς τυγχάνοι εἴτε καὶ
sufficient whether at-home himself he-happened(-to-be) or also
ἀποδημῶν, κατέστησε καὶ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι φρουροὺς ἱκανούς·
abroad he-established also in Babylon garrison-troops sufficient
μισθὸν δὲ καὶ τούτοις Βαβυλωνίους ἔταξε παρέχειν,
pay and also to-these Babylonians he-assigned to-provide

βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς ὡς ἀμηχανωτάτους εἶναι, ὅπως ὅτι
wishing them as most-helpless to-be so-that as
ταπεινότατοι καὶ εὐκαθεκτότατοι εἶεν.
most-humble and most-easily-controlled they-might-be
70 Αὕτη μὲν δὴ ἡ περὶ αὐτόν τε φυλακὴ καὶ ἡ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι
This indeed then the about him both guard and the in Babylon
φρουρὰ τότε κατασταθεῖσα καὶ νῦν ἔτι οὕτως ἔχουσα
garrison then established also now still so being
διαμένει. σκοπῶν δ' ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἡ πᾶσα ἀρχὴ κατέχοιτο
continues considering and how — both the whole empire might-be-held
καὶ ἄλλη ἔτι προσγίγνοιτο, ἡγήσατο τοὺς μισθοφόρους
and other still might-be-added he-thought the mercenaries
τούτους δεῖν τοσοῦτον βελτίονας τῶν ὑπηκόων εἶναι ὅσον
these must so-much better than-the subjects to-be as-much-as
ἐλάττονας· τοὺς δὲ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας ἐγίγνωσκε συνεκτέον
fewer the and good men be-recognized must-be-kept-together
εἶναι, οἵπερ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς τὸ κρατεῖν παρέσχον, καὶ
to-be who-very with the gods the conquering had-provided and
ἐπιμελητέον ὅπως μὴ ἀνήσουσι τὴν τῆς ἀρετῆς ἄσκησιν.
(one)-must-take-care that not they-will-relax the of-the virtue practice
71 ὅπως δὲ μὴ ἐπιτάττειν αὐτοῖς δοκοίη, ἀλλὰ γνόντες
so-that and not to-command them be-might-seem but having-recognized
καὶ αὐτοὶ ταῦτα ἄριστα εἶναι οὕτως ἐμμένοιέν τε
also themselves these(-things) best to-be so they-might-abide both
καὶ ἐπιμελοῖντο τῆς ἀρετῆς, συνέλεξε τούς τε ὁμοτίμους
and might-care-for the virtue he-gathered the both peers
καὶ πάντας ὁπόσοι ἐπικαίριοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀξιοχρεώτατοι
and all as-many-as key-officers were and most-worthy
αὐτῷ ἐδόκουν κοινωνοὶ εἶναι καὶ πόνων καὶ ἀγαθῶν.
to-him seemed partners to-be both of-toils and of-goods

ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ 72
when and they-had-come-together he-said as-follows Men friends and
σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς μεγίστη χάρις ὅτι ἔδοσαν
allies to-the indeed gods greatest thanks that they-granted
ἡμῖν τυχεῖν ὧν ἐνομίζομεν ἄξιοι εἶναι. νῦν μὲν γὰρ δὴ
to-us to-obtain what we-thought worthy to-be now indeed for indeed
ἔχομεν καὶ γῆν πολλὴν καὶ ἀγαθὴν καὶ οἵτινες ταύτην
we-have both land much and good and (men)-who this
ἐργαζόμενοι θρέψουσιν ἡμᾶς· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ οἰκίας καὶ
working will-nourish us we-have and both houses and
ἐν ταύταις κατασκευάς.
in these furnishings
καὶ μηδείς γε ὑμῶν ἔχων ταῦτα νομισάτω ἀλλότρια 73
and let-no-one at-least of-you having these(-things) think others'
ἔχειν· νόμος γὰρ ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἀίδιός ἐστιν, ὅταν
to-have a-law for among all men eternal is when
πολεμούντων πόλις ἁλῷ, τῶν ἑλόντων εἶναι καὶ τὰ
of-(men)-at-war a-city is-taken of-the(-men) having-taken to-be both the
σώματα τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ τὰ χρήματα. οὔκουν
persons of-the(-ones) in the city and the goods not-therefore
ἀδικίᾳ γε ἕξετε ὅ τι ἂν ἔχητε, ἀλλὰ φιλανθρωπίᾳ
by-injustice at-least you-will-have what ever — you-have but by-humanity
οὐκ ἀφαιρήσεσθε, ἤν τι ἐᾶτε ἔχειν αὐτούς.
not you-will-take-away if anything you-allow to-have them
τὸ μέντοι ἐκ τοῦδε οὕτως ἐγὼ γιγνώσκω ὅτι εἰ μὲν 74
the(-time) however after this so I judge that if indeed
τρεψόμεθα ἐπὶ ῥᾳδιουργίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων
we-shall-turn to idleness and the of-the bad men
ἡδυπάθειαν, οἳ νομίζουσι τὸ μὲν πονεῖν ἀθλιότητα, τὸ
luxury who think the indeed toiling misery the
δὲ ἀπόνως βιοτεύειν εὐδαιμονίαν, ταχὺ ἡμᾶς φημι ὀλίγου
and without-toil living happiness quickly us I-say of-little

ἀξίους ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθαι καὶ ταχὺ πάντων τῶν
worth to-ourselves ourselves to-be and quickly of-all the
ἀγαθῶν στερήσεσθαι.
goods to-be-deprived

75 οὐ γάρ τοι τὸ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας γενέσθαι τοῦτο ἀρκεῖ
not for you-know the good men to-become this suffices
ὥστε καὶ διατελεῖν, ἢν μή τις αὐτοῦ διὰ τέλους
so-that also to-continue(-so) if not one it through end
ἐπιμελῆται· ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τέχναι ἀμεληθεῖσαι
cares-for but as also the other arts being-neglected
μείονος ἄξιαι γίγνονται καὶ τὰ σώματά γε τὰ εὖ
of-less worth become and the bodies at-least the(-ones) well
ἔχοντα, ὁπόταν τις αὐτὰ ἀνῇ ἐπὶ ῥᾳδιουργίαν, πονήρως
being whenever one them lets-go to idleness badly
πάλιν ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἡ ἐγκράτεια
again are so also the self-control and the self-restraint
καὶ ἡ ἀλκή, ὁπόταν τις αὐτῶν ἀνῇ τὴν ἄσκησιν, ἐκ
and the strength whenever one of-them lets-go the practice from
τούτου εἰς τὴν πονηρίαν πάλιν τρέπεται.
this into the wickedness again turns

76 οὔκουν δεῖ ἀμελεῖν οὐδ᾽ ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτίκα ἡδὺ
not-therefore (one)-must to-neglect(-it) nor to the immediate pleasure
προϊέναι αὑτούς. μέγα μὲν γὰρ οἶμαι ἔργον καὶ τὸ
to-give-up ourselves great indeed for I-think a-deed also the
ἀρχὴν καταπρᾶξαι, πολὺ δ᾽ ἔτι μεῖζον τὸ λαβόντα
empire to-win much and still greater the(-thing) having-taken(-it)
διασώσασθαι. τὸ μὲν γὰρ λαβεῖν πολλάκις τῷ τόλμαν
to-preserve(-it) the indeed for to-take often to-the(-one) boldness
μόνον παρασχομένῳ ἐγένετο, τὸ δὲ λαβόντα κατέχειν
only having-shown has-happened the but having-taken to-hold

οὐκέτι τοῦτο ἄνευ σωφροσύνης οὐδ' ἄνευ ἐγκρατείας οὐδ'
no-longer this without self-control nor without self-restraint nor
ἄνευ πολλῆς ἐπιμελείας γίγνεται.
without much care comes-about
ἃ χρὴ γιγνώσκοντας νῦν πολὺ μᾶλλον ἀσκεῖν τὴν 77
which (one)-must recognizing now much more to-practice the
ἀρετὴν ἢ πρὶν τάδε τἀγαθὰ κτήσασθαι, εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι
virtue than before these the-goods to-have-acquired well knowing that
ὅταν πλεῖστά τις ἔχῃ, τότε πλεῖστοι καὶ φθονοῦσι καὶ
when most anyone has then most also envy and
ἐπιβουλεύουσι καὶ πολέμιοι γίγνονται, ἄλλως τε κἂν
plot and enemies become especially both even-if
παρ' ἀκόντων τά τε κτήματα καὶ τὴν θεραπείαν ὥσπερ
from unwilling(-men) the both possessions and the service as
ἡμεῖς ἔχῃ. τοὺς μὲν οὖν θεοὺς οἴεσθαι χρὴ σὺν ἡμῖν
we be-has the indeed then gods to-think (one)-must with us
ἔσεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἐπιβουλεύσαντες ἀδίκως ἔχομεν, ἀλλ'
to-be not for having-plotted unjustly we-have(-them) but
ἐπιβουλευθέντες ἐτιμωρησάμεθα.
having-been-plotted-against we-avenged-ourselves
τὸ μέντοι μετὰ τοῦτο κράτιστον ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς 78
the(-thing) however after this best for-us ourselves
παρασκευαστέον· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τὸ βελτίονας ὄντας
must-be-prepared this and is the better being
τῶν ἀρχομένων ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦν. θάλπους μὲν οὖν καὶ
than-the(-men) ruled to-rule to-claim of-heat indeed then and
ψύχους καὶ σίτων καὶ ποτῶν καὶ πόνων καὶ ὕπνου ἀνάγκη
of-cold and of-food and of-drinks and of-toils and of-sleep necessity
καὶ τοῖς δούλοις μεταδιδόναι· μεταδιδόντας γε μέντοι
also to-the slaves to-give-a-share giving-a-share at-least however
πειρᾶσθαι δεῖ ἐν τούτοις πρωτεύοντας αὐτῶν φαίνεσθαι.
to-try (one)-must in these being-first of-them to-appear

79 πολεμικῆς δ᾽ ἐπιστήμης καὶ μελέτης παντάπασιν οὐ
of-warlike and knowledge and practice altogether not
μεταδοτέον τούτοις, οὕστινας ἐργάτας τε ἡμετέρους
(one)-must-give-a-share to-these whom workers both our
καὶ δασμοφόρους βουλόμεθα καταστήσασθαι, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτοὺς
and tribute-payers we-wish to-make but ourselves
δεῖ τούτοις τοῖς ἀσκήμασι πλεονεκτεῖν, γιγνώσκοντας
must in-these the exercises to-have-the-advantage recognizing
ὅτι ἐλευθερίας ταῦτα ὄργανα καὶ εὐδαιμονίας οἱ θεοὶ τοῖς
that of-freedom these instruments and of-happiness the gods to-the
ἀνθρώποις ἀπέδειξαν· καὶ ὥσπερ γε ἐκείνους τὰ ὅπλα
men displayed and as at-least those the arms
ἀφῃρήμεθα, οὕτως ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς δεῖ μήποτ᾽ ἐρήμους ὅπλων
we-have-taken-away so us ourselves must never destitute of-arms
γίγνεσθαι, εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι τοῖς ἀεὶ ἐγγυτάτω τῶν ὅπλων
to-become well knowing that to-the(-ones) always nearest the arms
οὖσι τούτοις καὶ οἰκειότατά ἐστιν ὅταν χρῆσθαι βούλωνται.
being to-these also most-their-own is whenever to-use they-wish
80 εἰ δέ τις τοιαῦτα ἐννοεῖται, τί δῆτα ἡμῖν ὄφελος
if but anyone such(-things) considers what then to-us use
καταπρᾶξαι ἃ ἐπεθυμοῦμεν, εἴ ἔτι δεήσει
to-have-accomplished what we-desired if still it-will-be-necessary
καρτερεῖν καὶ πεινῶντας καὶ διψῶντας καὶ πονοῦντας καὶ
to-endure both hungering and thirsting and toiling and
ἐπιμελουμένους, ἐκεῖνο δεῖ καταμαθεῖν ὅτι τοσούτῳ
taking-care that (one)-must to-learn that by-so-much
τἀγαθὰ μᾶλλον εὐφραίνει ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον προπονήσας
the-goods more gladden by-as-much-as — more having-toiled-before
τις ἐπ᾽ αὐτὰ ἴῃ· οἱ γὰρ πόνοι ὄψον τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· ἄνευ
one to them goes the for toils relish for-the goods without

δὲ τοῦ δεόμενον τυγχάνειν τινὸς οὐδὲν οὕτω πολυτελῶς
but the needing to-obtain something nothing so expensively
παρασκευασθείη ἂν ὥσθ᾽ ἡδὺ εἶναι.
could-be-prepared — so-that pleasant to-be
εἰ δὲ ὧν μὲν μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ὁ δαίμων 81
if but of-what indeed most men desire the deity
ἡμῖν ταῦτα συμπαρεσκεύακεν, ὡς δ᾽ ἂν ἥδιστα
for-us these(-things) has-helped-to-provide as but — most-pleasant
ταῦτα φαίνοιτο αὐτός τις αὑτῷ παρασκευάσει, ὁ
these(-things) might-appear himself one for-himself will-provide the
τοιοῦτος ἀνὴρ τοσούτῳ πλεονεκτήσει τῶν ἐνδεεστέρων
such man by-so-much will-have-the-advantage over-the more-needy
βίου ὡς πεινήσας τῶν ἡδίστων σίτων τεύξεται καὶ
in-life that having-hungered the sweetest foods he-will-get and
διψήσας τῶν ἡδίστων ποτῶν ἀπολαύσεται καὶ δεηθεὶς
having-thirsted the sweetest drinks he-will-enjoy and having-needed
ἀναπαύσεως ἥδιστον ἀναπαύσεται.
rest most-pleasantly he-will-rest
ὧν ἕνεκά φημι χρῆναι νῦν ἐπιταθῆναι ἡμᾶς εἰς 82
of-which for-the-sake I-say (one)-must now to-be-strained us to
ἀνδραγαθίαν, ὅπως τῶν τε ἀγαθῶν ᾖ ἄριστον καὶ
manly-virtue so-that of-the both goods as best and
ἥδιστον ἀπολαύσωμεν καὶ ὅπως τοῦ πάντων χαλεπωτάτου
most-pleasant we-may-enjoy and so-that of-the of-all hardest
ἄπειροι γενώμεθα. οὐ γὰρ τὸ μὴ λαβεῖν τἀγαθὰ οὕτω
inexperienced we-may-be not for the not to-get the-goods so
χαλεπὸν ὥσπερ τὸ λαβόντα στερηθῆναι λυπηρόν.
hard as the having-got(-them) to-be-deprived painful
ἐννοήσατε δὲ κἀκεῖνο τίνα πρόφασιν ἔχοντες ἂν 83
consider and also-that what pretext having —
προσιοίμεθα κακίονες ἢ πρόσθεν γενέσθαι. πότερον ὅτι
we-would-allow worse than before to-become whether that

ἄρχομεν; ἀλλ᾽ οὐ δήπου τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων
we-rule but not surely the ruler than-the(-men) ruled
πονηρότερον προσήκει εἶναι. ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι εὐδαιμονέστεροι
more-wicked it-befits to-be but that happier
δοκοῦμεν νῦν ἢ πρότερον εἶναι; ἔπειτα τῇ εὐδαιμονίᾳ
we-seem now than before to-be then to-the happiness
φήσει τις τὴν κακίαν πρέπειν; ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι ἐπεὶ κεκτήμεθα
will-say anyone the vice befits but that since we-have-acquired
δούλους, τούτους κολάσομεν, ἢν πονηροὶ ὦσι;
slaves these we-shall-punish if wicked they-are
84 καὶ τί προσήκει αὐτὸν ὄντα πονηρὸν πονηρίας ἕνεκα
and how (it)-befits himself being wicked of-wickedness for-the-sake
ἢ βλακείας ἄλλους κολάζειν; ἐννοεῖτε δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι
or of-laziness others to-punish consider and also this that
τρέφειν μὲν παρεσκευάσμεθα πολλοὺς καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων
to-feed indeed we-have-prepared many both of-the our
οἴκων φύλακας καὶ τῶν σωμάτων· αἰσχρὸν δὲ πῶς οὐκ
houses guards and of-the persons shameful and how not
ἂν εἴη, εἰ δι᾽ ἄλλους μὲν δορυφόρους τῆς σωτηρίας
— would-it-be if through others indeed spear-bearers the safety
οἰησόμεθα χρῆναι τυγχάνειν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς οὐ
we-shall-think (one)-must to-obtain ourselves but for-us ourselves not
δορυφορήσομεν; καὶ μὴν εὖ γε δεῖ εἰδέναι ὅτι οὐκ
we-shall-be-spear-bearers and indeed well at-least (one)-must to-know that not
ἔστιν ἄλλη φυλακὴ τοιαύτη οἵα αὐτόν τινα καλὸν κἀγαθὸν
there-is other guard such as oneself one noble and-good
ὑπάρχειν· τοῦτο γὰρ δεῖ συμπαρομαρτεῖν· τῷ δ᾽
to-be this for must to-accompany(-one) to-the(-man) but
ἀρετῆς ἐρήμῳ οὐδὲ ἄλλο καλῶς ἔχειν οὐδὲν προσήκει.
of-virtue destitute not-even other well to-be anything befits

τί οὖν φημι χρῆναι ποιεῖν καὶ ποῦ τὴν ἀρετὴν ἀσκεῖν καὶ 85
what then do-I-say (one)-must to-do and where the virtue to-practice and
ποῦ τὴν μελέτην ποιεῖσθαι; οὐδὲν καινόν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐρῶ·
where the practice to-make nothing new O men I-shall-say
ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἐν Πέρσαις ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀρχείοις οἱ ὁμότιμοι
but as among Persians at the government-houses the peers
διάγουσιν, οὕτω καὶ ἡμᾶς φημι χρῆναι ἐνθάδε ὄντας τοὺς
spend-their-time so also we I-say must here being the
ὁμοτίμους πάντα ἅπερ καὶ ἐκεῖ ἐπιτηδεύειν, καὶ ὑμᾶς
peers all the(-things)-which also there to-pursue and you
τε ἐμὲ ὁρῶντας κατανοεῖν παρόντας εἰ ἐπιμελόμενος ὧν
both me seeing to-observe being-present whether taking-care-of what
δεῖ διάξω, ἐγώ τε ὑμᾶς κατανοῶν θεάσομαι, καὶ οὓς ἂν
(one)-must I-shall-live I and you observing shall-watch and whom —
ὁρῶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ τἀγαθὰ ἐπιτηδεύοντας, τούτους τιμήσω.
I-see the noble and the-good-things pursuing these I-shall-honor
καὶ τοὺς παῖδας δέ, οἳ ἂν ἡμῖν γίγνωνται, ἐνθάδε 86
and the children and who — to-us are-born here
παιδεύωμεν· αὐτοί τε γὰρ βελτίονες ἐσόμεθα, βουλόμενοι
let-us-educate ourselves both for better we-shall-be wishing
τοῖς παισὶν ὡς βέλτιστα παραδείγματα ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς
for-the children as best examples us ourselves
παρέχειν, οἵ τε παῖδες οὐδ' ἂν εἰ βούλοιντο ῥᾳδίως πονηροὶ
to-offer the and children not-even — if they-wished easily wicked
γένοιντο, αἰσχρὸν μὲν μηδὲν μήτε ὁρῶντες μήτε ἀκούοντες,
would-become shameful indeed nothing either seeing or hearing
ἐν δὲ καλοῖς κἀγαθοῖς ἐπιτηδεύμασι διημερεύοντες.
in and noble and-good pursuits spending-their-days

BOOK VIII

I · THE COURT

Chrysantas argues that obedience wins and keeps all good things, and the nobles resolve to attend at Cyrus' doors. Cyrus organizes his household like an army, keeps leisure for the care of his best men, and compels attendance by giving the absent man's goods to his friends. He sets an example of piety, justice, modesty, and self-restraint, honors ready obedience above the showiest virtues, hunts to train his officers, and rewards the best. He adopts the Median dress and the arts that make rulers impressive, keeps the subject peoples unarmed, and seeks to bind the strongest men to himself more than to each other.

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀνέστη δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Χρυσάντας 1
Cyrus indeed then so spoke rose and after him Chrysantas
καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε. Ἀλλὰ πολλάκις μὲν δή, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ
and spoke thus But often indeed then O men also
ἄλλοτε κατενόησα ὅτι ἄρχων ἀγαθὸς οὐδὲν διαφέρει
at-other-times I-have-observed that a-ruler good in-nothing differs
πατρὸς ἀγαθοῦ· οἵ τε γὰρ πατέρες προνοοῦσι τῶν παίδων
from-a-father good the both for fathers take-forethought for-the children
ὅπως μήποτε αὐτοὺς τἀγαθὰ ἐπιλείψει, Κῦρός τέ μοι δοκεῖ
that never them the-good-things will-fail Cyrus and to-me seems
νῦν συμβουλεύειν ἡμῖν ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστ' ἂν εὐδαιμονοῦντες
now to-advise us from what most — being-happy
διατελοῖμεν· ὃ δέ μοι δοκεῖ ἐνδεέστερον ἢ ὡς ἐχρῆν
we-could-continue what but to-me seems more-deficiently than as (one)-ought
δηλῶσαι, τοῦτο ἐγὼ πειράσομαι τοὺς μὴ εἰδότας διδάξαι.
to-have-made-clear this I shall-try the(-ones) not knowing to-teach
ἐννοήσατε γὰρ δὴ τίς ἂν πόλις πολεμία ὑπὸ μὴ 2
consider for then what — city hostile by not
πειθομένων ἁλοίη· τίς δ' ἂν φιλία ὑπὸ μὴ πειθομένων
obeying(-men) would-be-taken what and — friendly by not obeying(-men)

διαφυλαχθείη· ποῖον δ' ἂν ἀπειθούντων στράτευμα νίκης
would-be-preserved what-sort and — of-disobeying(-men) army victory
τύχοι· πῶς δ' ἂν μᾶλλον ἐν μάχαις ἡττῷντο
would-obtain how and — more in battles would-be-defeated
ἄνθρωποι ἢ ἐπειδὰν ἄρξωνται ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστος περὶ τῆς
men than when they-begin privately each about the
αὑτοῦ σωτηρίας βουλεύεσθαι· τί δ' ἂν ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν
his-own safety to-take-thought what and — other good
τελεσθείη ὑπὸ μὴ πειθομένων τοῖς κρείττοσι· ποῖαι δὲ
would-be-accomplished by not obeying(-men) the stronger what-sort and
πόλεις νομίμως ἂν οἰκήσειαν ἢ ποῖοι οἶκοι σωθείησαν·
cities lawfully — would-be-governed or what-sort houses would-be-saved
πῶς δ' ἂν νῆες ὅποι δεῖ ἀφίκοιντο·
how and — ships where (one)-must would-arrive

3 ἡμεῖς δὲ ἃ νῦν ἀγαθὰ ἔχομεν διὰ τί ἄλλο μᾶλλον
we and what now goods we-have through what other rather
κατεπράξαμεν ἢ διὰ τὸ πείθεσθαι τῷ ἄρχοντι;
did-we-accomplish(-them) than through the obeying the ruler
διὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ταχὺ μὲν ὅποι
through this for both by-night and by-day quickly indeed where
ἔδει παρεγιγνόμεθα, ἀθρόοι δὲ τῷ ἄρχοντι ἑπόμενοι
(one)-should we-were-present in-a-body and the ruler following
ἀνυπόστατοι ἦμεν, τῶν δ' ἐπιταχθέντων οὐδὲν
irresistible we-were of-the(-things) and ordered nothing
ἡμιτελὲς κατελείπομεν. ὡς τοίνυν μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν τὸ
half-done we-left as then greatest good the
πειθαρχεῖν φαίνεται εἰς τὸ καταπράττειν τἀγαθά, οὕτως
obedience appears for the accomplishing the-goods so
εὖ ἴστε ὅτι τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο καὶ εἰς τὸ διασῴζειν ἃ
well know that the same this also for the preserving what
δεῖ μέγιστον ἀγαθόν ἐστι.
(one)-must greatest good is

καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν δὴ πολλοὶ ἡμῶν ἦρχον μὲν οὐδενός, 4
and before indeed then many of-us ruled indeed no-one
ἤρχοντο δέ· νῦν δὲ κατεσκεύασθε οὕτω πάντες οἱ
were-ruled and now and you-have-been-placed so all the(-ones)
παρόντες ὥστε ἄρχετε οἳ μὲν πλειόνων, οἳ δὲ μειόνων.
present that you-rule some indeed more others and fewer
ὥσπερ τοίνυν αὐτοὶ ἀξιώσετε ἄρχειν τῶν ὑφ' ὑμῖν, οὕτω
as then yourselves you-will-claim to-rule the(-ones) under you so
καὶ αὐτοὶ πειθώμεθα οἷς ἂν ἡμᾶς καθήκῃ. τοσοῦτον δὲ
also ourselves let-us-obey those-whom — us it-befits so-much and
διαφέρειν δεῖ τῶν δούλων ὅσον οἱ μὲν δοῦλοι ἄκοντες
to-differ (one)-must from-the slaves as the indeed slaves unwilling
τοῖς δεσπόταις ὑπηρετοῦσιν, ἡμᾶς δ', εἴπερ ἀξιοῦμεν
the masters serve us and if-indeed we-claim
ἐλεύθεροι εἶναι, ἑκόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν ὃ πλείστου φαίνεται
free to-be willing must to-do what of-most appears
ἄξιον εἶναι. εὑρήσετε δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἔνθα ἄνευ μοναρχίας πόλις
worth to-be you-will-find and he-said also where without monarchy a-city
οἰκεῖται, τὴν μάλιστα τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ἐθέλουσαν πείθεσθαι
is-governed the(-one) most the rulers being-willing to-obey
ταύτην ἥκιστα τῶν πολεμίων ἀναγκαζομένην ὑπακούειν.
this(-one) least of-the enemies being-compelled to-submit
παρῶμέν τε οὖν, ὥσπερ Κῦρος κελεύει, ἐπὶ τόδε τὸ 5
let-us-be-present both then as Cyrus bids at this the
ἀρχεῖον, ἀσκῶμέν τε δι' ὧν μάλιστα δυνησόμεθα
government-house let-us-practice and through what most we-shall-be-able
κατέχειν ἃ δεῖ, παρέχωμέν τε ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς χρῆσθαι
to-hold what (one)-must let-us-offer and us ourselves to-use
Κύρῳ ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. καὶ τοῦτο γὰρ εὖ εἰδέναι
to-Cyrus what ever — there-be-need also this for well to-know
χρὴ ὅτι οὐ μὴ δυνήσεται Κῦρος εὑρεῖν ὅ τι αὑτῷ
(one)-must that not — will-be-able Cyrus to-find what ever for-himself

μὲν ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ χρήσεται, ἡμῖν δὲ οὔ, ἐπείπερ τά γε
indeed for good he-will-use for-us but not since the at-least
αὐτὰ ἡμῖν συμφέρει καὶ οἱ αὐτοί εἰσιν ἡμῖν πολέμιοι.
same-things for-us are-advantageous and the same are to-us enemies

6 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπε Χρυσάντας, οὕτω δὴ καὶ
When and these(-things) said Chrysantas so indeed also
ἄλλοι ἀνίσταντο πολλοὶ καὶ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν συμμάχων
others rose many both of-Persians and of-the allies
συνεροῦντες· καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς ἐντίμους ἀεὶ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ
to-speak-in-support and it-was-resolved the honored always to-attend at
θύρας καὶ παρέχειν αὑτοὺς χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούληται,
the-doors and to-offer themselves to-use(-them) what ever — he-might-wish
ἕως ἀφείη Κῦρος. ὡς δὲ τότε ἔδοξεν, οὕτω καὶ
until should-dismiss(-them) Cyrus as and then it-was-resolved so also
νῦν ἔτι ποιοῦσιν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ
now still do the(-ones) throughout — Asia under the-king
ὄντες, θεραπεύουσι τὰς τῶν ἀρχόντων θύρας.
being they-attend the of-the rulers doors

7 ὡς δ᾽ ἐν τῷ λόγῳ δεδήλωται Κῦρος καταστησάμενος
as and in the account has-been-shown Cyrus having-established(-them)
εἰς τὸ διαφυλάττειν ἑαυτῷ τε καὶ Πέρσαις τὴν ἀρχήν,
for the preserving for-himself both and for-Persians the empire
ταὐτὰ καὶ οἱ μετ᾽ ἐκεῖνον βασιλεῖς νόμιμα ἔτι καὶ
the-same also the(-ones) after him kings customs still also
νῦν διατελοῦσι ποιοῦντες.
now continue doing

8 οὕτω δ᾽ ἔχει καὶ ταῦτα ὥσπερ καὶ τἆλλα· ὅταν μὲν
so and is also these(-things) as also the-rest whenever indeed
ὁ ἐπιστάτης βελτίων γένηται, καθαρώτερον τὰ νόμιμα
the overseer better becomes more-purely the customs
πράττεται· ὅταν δὲ χείρων, φαυλότερον. ἐφοίτων μὲν
are-practiced whenever but worse more-poorly came indeed

οὖν ἐπὶ τὰς Κύρου θύρας οἱ ἔντιμοι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ
then to the of-Cyrus doors the honored with the horses and
ταῖς αἰχμαῖς, συνδόξαν πᾶσι τοῖς ἀρίστοις τῶν
the spears it-having-been-resolved by-all the best of-the(-men)
συγκαταστρεψαμένων τὴν ἀρχήν.
who-had-helped-subdue the empire

Κῦρος δ' ἐπὶ μὲν τἆλλα καθίστη ἄλλους ἐπιμελητάς, καὶ 9
Cyrus and over indeed the-rest appointed other overseers and
ἦσαν αὐτῷ καὶ προσόδων ἀποδεκτῆρες καὶ δαπανημάτων
there-were for-him both of-revenues receivers and of-expenses
δοτῆρες καὶ ἔργων ἐπιστάται καὶ κτημάτων φύλακες καὶ
payers and of-works overseers and of-possessions guards and
τῶν εἰς τὴν δίαιταν ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιμεληταί· καὶ ἵππων
of-the for the living necessaries overseers and of-horses
δὲ καὶ κυνῶν ἐπιμελητὰς καθίστη οὓς ἐνόμιζε ταῦτα τὰ
and also of-dogs overseers he-appointed whom he-thought these the
βοσκήματα βέλτιστ' ἂν παρέχειν αὐτῷ χρῆσθαι.
beasts best — to-provide for-himself to-use

οὓς δὲ συμφύλακας τῆς εὐδαιμονίας οἱ ᾤετο χρῆναι 10
whom but fellow-guardians of-the happiness for-himself he-thought (one)-must
ἔχειν, τούτους ὅπως ὡς βέλτιστοι ἔσοιντο οὐκέτι τούτου
to-have these so-that as best they-should-be no-longer of-this
τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν ἄλλοις προσέταττεν, ἀλλ' αὑτοῦ ἐνόμιζε τοῦτο
the care to-others he-assigned but his-own he-thought this
ἔργον εἶναι. ᾔδει γὰρ ὅτι, εἴ τι μάχης ποτὲ δεήσοι,
task to-be he-knew for that if at-all of-battle ever there-should-be-need
ἐκ τούτων αὐτῷ καὶ παραστάτας καὶ ἐπιστάτας ληπτέον
from these for-him both men-beside(-him) and men-behind(-him) must-be-taken
εἴη, σὺν οἷσπερ οἱ μέγιστοι κίνδυνοι· καὶ ταξιάρχους δὲ καὶ
(it)-was with whom-very the greatest dangers(-are) and taxiarchs and both
πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων ἐγίγνωσκεν ἐκ τούτων καταστατέον εἶναι.
of-foot and of-horse he-knew from these must-be-appointed to-be

11 εἰ δὲ δέοι καὶ στρατηγῶν που ἄνευ ἑαυτοῦ,
if and there-should-be-need also of-generals somewhere without himself
ᾔδει ὅτι ἐκ τούτων πεμπτέον εἴη· καὶ πόλεων δὲ
he-knew that from these must-be-sent (it)-was and of-cities and
καὶ ὅλων ἐθνῶν φύλαξι καὶ σατράπαις ᾔδει ὅτι τούτων
also of-whole nations as-guards and as-satraps he-knew that of-these
τισὶν εἴη χρηστέον καὶ πρέσβεις γε τούτων τινὰς
some (it)-was must-be-used and envoys at-least of-these some
πεμπτέον, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις ἡγεῖτο εἶναι εἰς τὸ
must-be-sent which among the greatest(-things) he-thought to-be for the
ἄνευ πολέμου τυγχάνειν ὧν δέοιτο.
without war obtaining what he-might-need

12 μὴ ὄντων μὲν οὖν οἵων δεῖ δι' ὧν αἱ μέγισται
not being indeed then such-as (one)-must(-be) through whom the greatest
καὶ πλεῖσται πράξεις ἔμελλον εἶναι, κακῶς ἡγεῖτο τὰ
and most actions were-going to-be badly he-thought the
αὑτοῦ ἕξειν. εἰ δ' οὗτοι εἶεν οἵους δέοι, πάντα
his-own would-fare if but these should-be such-as (one)-should(-be) all-things
ἐνόμιζε καλῶς ἔσεσθαι. ἐνέδυ μὲν οὖν οὕτω γνοὺς εἰς
he-thought well would-be he-entered indeed then so having-judged into
ταύτην τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν· ἐνόμιζε δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ αὑτῷ
this the care he-thought and the same also for-himself
ἄσκησιν εἶναι τῆς ἀρετῆς. οὐ γὰρ ᾤετο οἷόν τε εἶναι
practice to-be of-the virtue not for he-thought possible — to-be
μὴ αὐτόν τινα ὄντα οἷον δεῖ ἄλλους παρορμᾶν
not himself one being such-as (one)-must(-be) others to-urge
ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἔργα.
to the noble and good deeds

13 ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διενοήθη, ἠγήσατο σχολῆς πρῶτον
when and these(-things) he-had-considered he-thought of-leisure first
δεῖν, εἰ μέλλοι δυνήσεσθαι τῶν κρατίστων
there-to-be-need if he-was-going to-be-able the most-important-things

ἐπιμελεῖσθαι. τὸ μὲν οὖν προσόδων ἀμελεῖν οὐχ οἷόν
to-care-for the indeed then revenues to-neglect not possible
τε ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι, προνοῶν ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ τελεῖν
— he-thought to-be foreseeing that many-things also to-spend
ἀνάγκη ἔσοιτο εἰς μεγάλην ἀρχήν· τὸ δ' αὖ πολλῶν
necessity there-would-be for a-great empire the but in-turn many
κτημάτων ὄντων ἀμφὶ ταῦτα αὐτὸν ἀεὶ ἔχειν ᾔδει ὅτι
possessions being about these him always to-be-busy he-knew that
ἀσχολίαν παρέξοι τῆς τῶν ὅλων σωτηρίας ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.
lack-of-leisure it-would-cause the of-the whole safety to-care-for
οὕτω δὴ σκοπῶν, ὅπως ἂν τά τε οἰκονομικὰ καλῶς ἔχοι 14
so indeed considering how — the both household-affairs well might-be
καί οἱ σχολὴ γένοιτο, κατενόησέ πως τὴν στρατιωτικὴν
and for-him leisure might-come he-observed somehow the military
σύνταξιν. ὡς γὰρ τὰ πολλὰ δεκάδαρχοι μὲν δεκαδέων
organization as for the most-part leaders-of-ten indeed tens
ἐπιμέλονται, λοχαγοὶ δὲ δεκαδάρχων, χιλίαρχοι δὲ
care-for captains and leaders-of-ten commanders-of-a-thousand and
λοχαγῶν, μυρίαρχοι δὲ χιλιάρχων, καὶ οὕτως οὐδεὶς
captains myriarchs and commanders-of-a-thousand and so no-one
ἀτημέλητος γίγνεται, οὐδ' ἢν πάνυ πολλαὶ μυριάδες
uncared-for becomes not-even if very many ten-thousands
ἀνθρώπων ὦσι, καὶ ὅταν ὁ στρατηγὸς βούληται χρήσασθαί
of-men are and whenever the general wishes to-use
τι τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀρκεῖ ἢν τοῖς μυριάρχοις παραγγείλῃ·
at-all the army it-suffices if to-the myriarchs he-gives-orders
ὥσπερ οὖν ταῦτ' ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ὁ Κῦρος 15
as then these(-things) is so also — Cyrus
συνεκεφαλαιώσατο τὰς οἰκονομικὰς πράξεις· ὥστε καὶ
summed-up the household affairs so-that also
τῷ Κύρῳ ἐγένετο ὀλίγοις διαλεγομένῳ μηδὲν τῶν
— for-Cyrus it-came-about with-few conversing nothing of-the

οἰκείων ἀτημελήτως ἔχειν· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἤδη σχολὴν
domestic(-affairs) neglected to-be and from this now leisure
ἦγε πλείω ἢ ἄλλος μιᾶς οἰκίας καὶ μιᾶς νεὼς
he-had more than another of-one house and of-one ship
ἐπιμελούμενος. οὕτω δὴ καταστησάμενος τὸ αὑτοῦ
taking-care so indeed having-established the his-own(-affairs)
ἐδίδαξε καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν ταύτῃ τῇ καταστάσει χρῆσθαι.
he-taught also the(-men) about him this the arrangement to-use

16 Τὴν μὲν δὴ σχολὴν οὕτω κατεσκευάσατο ἑαυτῷ τε καὶ
The indeed then leisure so he-provided for-himself both and
τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, ἤρχετο δ' ἐπιστατεῖν τοῦ εἶναι οἵους
for-the(-men) about him he-began and to-oversee the being such-as
δεῖ τοὺς κοινῶνας. πρῶτον μὲν ὁπόσοι ὄντες
(one)-must(-be) the partners first indeed as-many-as being
ἱκανοὶ ἄλλων ἐργαζομένων τρέφεσθαι μὴ παρεῖεν ἐπὶ τὰς
able others working to-be-fed not attended at the
θύρας, τούτους ἐπεζήτει, νομίζων τοὺς μὲν παρόντας οὐκ
doors these he-sought-out thinking the indeed present not
ἂν ἐθέλειν οὔτε κακὸν οὔτε αἰσχρὸν οὐδὲν πράττειν καὶ
— to-be-willing either bad or shameful anything to-do both
διὰ τὸ παρ' ἄρχοντι εἶναι καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι
because-of the near the-ruler being and because-of the knowing that
ὁρῷντ' ἂν ὅ τι πράττοιεν ὑπὸ τῶν βελτίστων·
they-would-be-seen — what ever they-did by the best(-men)
οἳ δὲ μὴ παρεῖεν, τούτους ἡγεῖτο ἢ ἀκρατείᾳ τινὶ
who but not attended these he-thought either through-incontinence some
ἢ ἀδικίᾳ ἢ ἀμελείᾳ ἀπεῖναι.
or injustice or neglect to-be-absent

17 τοῦτο οὖν πρῶτον διηγησόμεθα ὡς προσηνάγκαζε τοὺς
this then first we-shall-relate how he-compelled the
τοιούτους παρεῖναι. τῶν γὰρ ἑαυτοῦ μάλιστα φίλων
such(-men) to-attend of-the for his-own most friends

ἐκέλευσεν ἄν τινα λαβεῖν τὰ τοῦ μὴ φοιτῶντος,
he-would-order — one to-take the(-things) of-the(-man) not attending
φάσκοντα λαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῦτο
claiming to-take the(-things) his-own when then this
γένοιτο, ἦκον ἂν εὐθὺς οἱ στερόμενοι ὡς ἠδικημένοι.
happened would-come — at-once the(-men) being-deprived as wronged
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πολὺν μὲν χρόνον οὐκ ἐσχόλαζε τοῖς 18
— and Cyrus long indeed time not had-leisure to-the
τοιούτοις ὑπακούειν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀκούσειεν αὐτῶν, πολὺν
such(-men) to-listen when but he-heard them long
χρόνον ἀνεβάλλετο τὴν διαδικασίαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν
time he-put-off the hearing these(-things) and doing
ἡγεῖτο προσεθίζειν αὐτοὺς θεραπεύειν, ἧττον δὲ ἐχθρῶς
he-thought to-accustom them to-pay-court less and hostilely
ἢ εἰ αὐτὸς κολάζων ἠνάγκαζε παρεῖναι.
than if himself punishing he-compelled(-them) to-attend
εἷς μὲν τρόπος διδασκαλίας ἦν αὐτῷ οὗτος τοῦ παρεῖναι· 19
one indeed way of-teaching was for-him this of-the attending
ἄλλος δὲ τὸ τὰ ῥᾷστα καὶ κερδαλεώτατα τοῖς παροῦσι
another and the the easiest and most-profitable(-tasks) to-the(-ones) present
προστάττειν· ἄλλος δὲ τὸ μηδέν ποτε τοῖς ἀποῦσι νέμειν·
to-assign another and the nothing ever to-the(-ones) absent to-allot
ὁ δὲ δὴ μέγιστος τρόπος τῆς ἀνάγκης ἦν, εἰ τούτων μηδέν 20
the but indeed greatest way of-the compulsion was if of-these nothing
τις ὑπακούοι, ἀφελόμενος ἂν τοῦτον ἃ ἔχοι ἄλλῳ
anyone heeded having-taken-away — from-this(-man) what he-had to-another
ἐδίδου ὃν ᾤετο ἂν ἐν τῷ δέοντι παρεῖναι· καὶ οὕτως
he-would-give whom he-thought — in the need to-be-present and so
ἐγίγνετο αὐτῷ φίλος χρήσιμος ἀντὶ ἀχρήστου. ἐπιζητεῖ δὲ
became for-him a-friend useful instead-of a-useless(-one) seeks and
καὶ ὁ νῦν βασιλεύς, ἤν τις ἀπῇ οἷς παρεῖναι καθήκει.
also the now king if anyone is-absent for-whom to-attend it-is-fitting

21 Τοῖς μὲν δὴ μὴ παροῦσιν οὕτω προσεφέρετο. τοὺς
To-the indeed then not present so he-behaved the(-ones)
δὲ παρέχοντας ἑαυτοὺς ἐνόμισε μάλιστ᾽ ἂν ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ
and offering themselves he-thought most — to the noble
καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἐπαίρειν, ἐπείπερ ἄρχων ἦν αὐτῶν, εἰ αὐτὸς
and good to-incite since ruler he-was of-them if himself
ἑαυτὸν ἐπιδεικνύειν πειρῷτο τοῖς ἀρχομένοις πάντων
himself to-show he-should-try to-the ruled of-all
μάλιστα κεκοσμημένον τῇ ἀρετῇ.
most adorned with-the virtue

22 αἰσθάνεσθαι μὲν γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ διὰ τοὺς γραφομένους
to-perceive indeed for he-seemed also through the written
νόμους βελτίους γιγνομένους ἀνθρώπους· τὸν δὲ ἀγαθὸν
laws better becoming men the but good
ἄρχοντα βλέποντα νόμον ἀνθρώποις ἐνόμισεν, ὅτι καὶ
ruler a-seeing law for-men he-thought because both
τάττειν ἱκανός ἐστι καὶ ὁρᾶν τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα καὶ
to-order able he-is and to-see the(-one) being-disorderly and
κολάζειν.
to-punish(-him)

23 οὕτω δὴ γιγνώσκων πρῶτον μὲν τὰ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς
so indeed judging first indeed the(-things) concerning the gods
μᾶλλον ἐκπονοῦντα ἐπεδείκνυεν ἑαυτὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ,
more working-hard-at he-showed himself in this the time
ἐπεὶ εὐδαιμονέστερος ἦν. καὶ τότε πρῶτον κατεστάθησαν οἱ
since happier he-was and then first were-appointed the
μάγοι ∗∗∗ ὑμνεῖν τε ἀεὶ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοὺς θεοὺς
magi (lacuna) to-hymn both always at-the-same-time-as the day the gods
καὶ θύειν ἀν᾽ ἑκάστην ἡμέραν οἷς οἱ μάγοι θεοῖς εἴποιεν.
and to-sacrifice on each day to-whatever the magi gods should-say

οὕτω δὴ τὰ τότε κατασταθέντα ἔτι καὶ νῦν 24
so indeed the(-things) then established still also now
διαμένει παρὰ τῷ ἀεὶ ὄντι βασιλεῖ. ταῦτ' οὖν πρῶτον
remain with the always being king these(-things) then first
ἐμιμοῦντο αὐτὸν καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, νομίζοντες καὶ
imitated him also the other Persians thinking also
αὐτοὶ εὐδαιμονέστεροι ἔσεσθαι, ἢν θεραπεύωσι τοὺς θεούς,
themselves happier to-be if they-serve the gods
ὥσπερ ὁ εὐδαιμονέστατός τε ὢν καὶ ἄρχων· καὶ
as the(-one) most-happy both being and ruling and
Κύρῳ δ' ἂν ἡγοῦντο ταῦτα ποιοῦντες ἀρέσκειν.
Cyrus and — they-thought these(-things) doing would-please
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὴν τῶν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εὐσέβειαν καὶ 25
— and Cyrus the of-the(-men) with himself piety also
ἑαυτῷ ἀγαθὸν ἐνόμιζε, λογιζόμενος ὥσπερ οἱ πλεῖν
for-himself good he-thought reckoning as the(-men) to-sail
αἱρούμενοι μετὰ τῶν εὐσεβῶν μᾶλλον ἢ μετὰ τῶν
choosing with the pious rather than with the(-ones)
ἠσεβηκέναι τι δοκούντων. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις
to-have-committed-impiety something seeming in-addition and to-these
ἐλογίζετο ὡς εἰ πάντες οἱ κοινῶνες θεοσεβεῖς εἶεν, ἧττον
he-reckoned that if all the partners god-fearing should-be less
ἂν αὐτοὺς ἐθέλειν περί τε ἀλλήλους ἀνόσιόν τι ποιεῖν
— them to-be-willing toward both one-another unholy anything to-do
καὶ περὶ ἑαυτόν, εὐεργέτης νομίζων εἶναι τῶν κοινώνων.
and toward himself benefactor thinking to-be of-the partners
ἐμφανίζων δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι περὶ πολλοῦ ἐποιεῖτο μηδένα 26
showing and also this that of much he-made(-it) no-one
μήτε φίλον ἀδικεῖν μήτε σύμμαχον, ἀλλὰ τὸ δίκαιον
either friend to-wrong or ally but the just
ἰσχυρῶς ἀθρῶν, μᾶλλον καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ᾤετ' ἂν τῶν
strongly regarding more also the others he-thought — from-the

μὲν αἰσχρῶν κερδῶν ἀπέχεσθαι, διὰ τοῦ δικαίου δ'
indeed shameful gains to-abstain through the just and
ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι.
to-be-willing to-go

27 καὶ αἰδοῦς δ' ἂν ἡγεῖτο μᾶλλον πάντας ἐμπιμπλάναι, εἰ
and with-shame and — he-thought more all to-fill if
αὐτὸς φανερὸς εἴη πάντας οὕτως αἰδούμενος ὡς μήτ'
himself evident should-be all so respecting that neither
εἰπεῖν ἂν μήτε ποιῆσαι μηδὲν αἰσχρόν.
to-say — nor to-do anything shameful

28 ἐτεκμαίρετο δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχειν ἐκ τοῦδε. μὴ γὰρ
he-inferred and this so to-be from this not for
ὅτι ἄρχοντα, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὓς οὐ φοβοῦνται, μᾶλλον τοὺς
only a-ruler but also whom not they-fear more the(-ones)
αἰδουμένους αἰδοῦνται τῶν ἀναιδῶν οἱ ἄνθρωποι· καὶ
showing-respect respect than-the shameless the men and
γυναῖκας δὲ ἃς ἂν αἰδουμένας αἰσθάνωνται, ἀνταιδεῖσθαι
women and whom — showing-respect they-perceive to-respect-in-return
μᾶλλον ἐθέλουσιν ὁρῶντες.
more they-are-willing seeing(-them)

29 τὸ δ' αὖ πείθεσθαι οὕτω μάλιστ' ἂν ᾤετο ἔμμονον
the and in-turn obeying so most — he-thought lasting
εἶναι τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, εἰ τοὺς ἀπροφασίστως
to-be for-the(-men) about him if the(-ones) unhesitatingly
πειθομένους φανερὸς εἴη μᾶλλον τιμῶν τῶν τὰς
obeying evident he-should-be more honoring than-the(-ones) the
μεγίστας ἀρετὰς καὶ ἐπιπονωτάτας δοκούντων παρέχεσθαι.
greatest virtues and most-laborious seeming to-display
γιγνώσκων δ' οὕτω καὶ ποιῶν διετέλει.
judging and so also doing he-continued

καὶ σωφροσύνην δ᾽ αὑτοῦ ἐπιδεικνὺς μᾶλλον ἐποίει καὶ 30
and self-control and his-own displaying more he-made also
ταύτην πάντας ἀσκεῖν. ὅταν γὰρ ὁρῶσιν, ᾧ μάλιστα
this all to-practice whenever for they-see for-whom most
ἔξεστιν ὑβρίζειν, τοῦτον σωφρονοῦντα, οὕτω μᾶλλον οἵ
it-is-possible to-be-insolent this(-man) being-self-controlled so more the
γε ἀσθενέστεροι ἐθέλουσιν οὐδὲν ὑβριστικὸν ποιοῦντες
at-least weaker are-willing nothing insolent doing
φανεροὶ εἶναι.
evident to-be

διήρει δὲ αἰδῶ καὶ σωφροσύνην τῇδε, ὡς τοὺς μὲν 31
he-distinguished and shame and self-control thus that the(-ones) indeed
αἰδουμένους τὰ ἐν τῷ φανερῷ αἰσχρὰ φεύγοντας,
showing-shame the(-things) in the open shameful avoiding
τοὺς δὲ σώφρονας καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ ἀφανεῖ.
the(-ones) and self-controlled also the(-things) in the unseen

καὶ ἐγκράτειαν δὲ οὕτω μάλιστ᾽ ἂν ᾤετο ἀσκεῖσθαι, εἰ 32
and self-restraint and so most — he-thought to-be-practiced if
αὐτὸς ἐπιδεικνύοι ἑαυτὸν μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν παραυτίκα ἡδονῶν
himself he-should-show himself not by the immediate pleasures
ἑλκόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν ἀγαθῶν, ἀλλὰ προπονεῖν ἐθέλοντα
being-dragged from the goods but to-toil-first being-willing
πρῶτον σὺν τῷ καλῷ τῶν εὐφροσυνῶν,
first with the noble(-way) before-the enjoyments

τοιγαροῦν τοιοῦτος ὢν ἐποίησεν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις 33
accordingly such being he-produced at the doors
πολλὴν μὲν τῶν χειρόνων εὐταξίαν, ὑπεικόντων τοῖς
much indeed of-the worse orderliness yielding to-the
ἀμείνοσι, πολλὴν δ᾽ αἰδῶ καὶ εὐκοσμίαν πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
better much and respect and decorum toward one-another
ἐπέγνως δ᾽ ἂν ἐκεῖ οὐδένα οὔτε ὀργιζόμενον
you-would-have-recognized and — there no-one either being-angry

κραυγῇ οὔτε χαίροντα ὑβριστικῷ γέλωτι, ἀλλὰ ἰδὼν
with-shouting or rejoicing with-insolent laughter but having-seen
ἂν αὐτοὺς ἡγήσω τῷ ὄντι εἰς κάλλος ζῆν.
— them you-would-have-thought in-the reality for nobility to-live

34 Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ποιοῦντες καὶ ὁρῶντες ἐπὶ θύραις
Such-things indeed then doing and seeing at the-doors
διῆγον. τῆς πολεμικῆς δ' ἕνεκα ἀσκήσεως ἐπὶ
they-spent-their-time of-the warlike and for-the-sake practice to
θήραν ἐξῆγεν οὕσπερ ἀσκεῖν ταῦτα ᾤετο χρῆναι,
hunting he-led-out whom-very to-practice these(-things) he-thought must
ταύτην ἡγούμενος καὶ ὅλως ἀρίστην ἄσκησιν πολεμικῶν
this thinking also altogether best practice of-warlike(-things)
εἶναι, καὶ ἱππικῆς δὲ ἀληθεστάτην.
to-be and of-horsemanship and truest

35 καὶ γὰρ ἐπόχους ἐν παντοδαποῖς χωρίοις αὕτη μάλιστα
and for firm-seated in all-kinds-of places this most
ἀποδείκνυσι διὰ τὸ θηρίοις φεύγουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι, καὶ
renders because-of the beasts fleeing to-follow and
ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων ἐνεργοὺς αὕτη μάλιστα ἀπεργάζεται
from the horses active this most makes
διὰ τὴν τοῦ λαμβάνειν φιλοτιμίαν καὶ ἐπιθυμίαν·
because-of the of-the taking ambition and desire

36 καὶ τὴν ἐγκράτειαν δὲ καὶ πόνους καὶ ψύχη καὶ θάλπη
and the self-restraint and and toils and colds and heats
καὶ λιμὸν καὶ δίψος δύνασθαι φέρειν ἐνταῦθα μάλιστα
and hunger and thirst to-be-able to-bear there most
προσείθιζε τοὺς κοινῶνας. καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ
he-accustomed the partners and now and still the-king and the
ἄλλοι οἱ περὶ βασιλέα ταῦτα ποιοῦντες διατελοῦσιν.
others the(-men) about the-king these(-things) doing continue

ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐκ ᾤετο προσήκειν οὐδενὶ ἀρχῆς ὅστις 37
that indeed then not he-thought it-befitted anyone rule who
μὴ βελτίων εἴη τῶν ἀρχομένων καὶ τοῖς
not better should-be than-the(-men) ruled also from-the
προειρημένοις πᾶσι δῆλον, καὶ ὅτι οὕτως ἀσκῶν τοὺς
things-said-before all (is)-clear and that so training the(-men)
περὶ αὐτὸν πολὺ μάλιστα αὐτὸς ἐξεπόνει καὶ τὴν
about him much most himself worked-at both the
ἐγκράτειαν καὶ τὰς πολεμικὰς τέχνας καὶ μελέτας.
self-restraint and the warlike arts and practices
καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ θήραν τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἐξῆγεν, ὁπότε μὴ 38
and for to hunting the indeed others he-led-out whenever not
μένειν ἀνάγκη τις εἴη· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ ὁπότε ἀνάγκη εἴη,
to-stay necessity any should-be himself but even whenever necessity should-be
οἴκοι ἐθήρα τὰ ἐν τοῖς παραδείσοις θηρία τρεφόμενα·
at-home hunted the(-beasts) in the parks beasts being-reared
καὶ οὔτ᾽ αὐτός ποτε πρὶν ἱδρῶσαι δεῖπνον ἥρεῖτο οὔτε
and neither himself ever before to-sweat dinner took nor
ἵπποις ἀγυμνάστοις σῖτον ἐνέβαλλε· συμπαρεκάλει δὲ καὶ
to-horses unexercised fodder gave he-invited-along and also
εἰς ταύτην τὴν θήραν τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν σκηπτούχους.
to this the hunt the(-men) about him scepter-bearers
τοιγαροῦν πολὺ μὲν αὐτὸς διέφερεν ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς 39
accordingly much indeed himself excelled in all the noble
ἔργοις, πολὺ δὲ οἱ περὶ ἐκεῖνον, διὰ τὴν ἀεὶ
deeds much and the(-men) about him because-of the constant
μελέτην. παράδειγμα μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτον ἑαυτὸν παρείχετο.
practice an-example indeed then such himself he-offered
πρὸς δὲ τούτῳ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οὕστινας μάλιστα ὁρῴη
in-addition and to-this also of-the others whomever most he-saw
τὰ καλὰ διώκοντας, τούτους καὶ δώροις καὶ ἀρχαῖς
the noble(-things) pursuing these both with-gifts and with-offices

καὶ ἕδραις καὶ πάσαις τιμαῖς ἐγέραιρεν· ὥστε πολλὴν
and with-seats and with-all honors he-rewarded so-that much
πᾶσι φιλοτιμίαν ἐνέβαλλεν ὅπως ὅτι ἄριστος ἕκαστος
in-all ambition he-implanted that as best each
φανήσοιτο Κύρῳ.
might-appear to-Cyrus

40 Καταμαθεῖν δὲ τοῦ Κύρου δοκοῦμεν ὡς οὐ τούτῳ μόνῳ
To-observe and — of-Cyrus we-seem that not by-this alone
ἐνόμιζε χρῆναι τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν ἀρχομένων διαφέρειν,
he-thought must the rulers from-the ruled to-differ
τῷ βελτίονας αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ καταγοητεύειν
by-the better than-them to-be but also to-enchant
ᾤετο χρῆναι αὐτούς. στολήν τε γοῦν εἵλετο τὴν
he-thought (one)-must them the-dress both at-any-rate he-chose the
Μηδικὴν αὐτός τε φορεῖν καὶ τοὺς κοινωνοὺς ταύτην
Median himself both to-wear and the partners this
ἔπεισεν ἐνδύεσθαι· αὕτη γὰρ αὐτῷ συγκρύπτειν ἐδόκει
he-persuaded to-put-on this for for-him to-conceal seemed
εἴ τίς τι ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεὲς ἔχοι, καὶ καλλίστους
if any anything in the body deficient should-have and most-beautiful
καὶ μεγίστους ἐπιδεικνύναι τοὺς φοροῦντας.
and tallest to-show the(-ones) wearing(-it)

41 καὶ γὰρ τὰ ὑποδήματα τοιαῦτα ἔχουσιν ἐν οἷς μάλιστα
and for the shoes such they-have in which most
λαθεῖν ἔστι καὶ ὑποτιθεμένους τι, ὥστε δοκεῖν
to-be-unnoticed it-is-possible even putting-under something so-that to-seem
μείζους εἶναι ἢ εἰσί. καὶ ὑποχρίεσθαι δὲ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς
taller to-be than they-are and to-paint and the eyes
προσίετο, ὡς εὐοφθαλμότεροι φαίνοιντο ἢ εἰσί, καὶ
he-allowed so-that more-bright-eyed they-might-appear than they-are and
ἐντρίβεσθαι, ὡς εὐχροώτεροι ὁρῷντο ἢ πεφύκασιν.
to-rub-on(-color) so-that better-complexioned they-might-be-seen than they-are-by-nature

ἐμελέτησε δὲ καὶ ὡς μὴ πτύοντες μηδὲ ἀπομυττόμενοι 42
he-trained and also that not spitting nor wiping-the-nose
φανεροὶ εἶεν, μηδὲ μεταστρεφόμενοι ἐπὶ θέαν μηδενός, ὡς
visible they-might-be nor turning-round for staring at-anything as
οὐδὲν θαυμάζοντες. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα ᾤετο φέρειν τι
nothing admiring all and these(-things) he-thought to-contribute somewhat
εἰς τὸ δυσκαταφρονητοτέρους φαίνεσθαι τοῖς ἀρχομένοις.
to the harder-to-despise to-appear to-the ruled
Οὓς μὲν δὴ ἄρχειν ᾤετο χρῆναι, δι' ἑαυτοῦ οὕτω 43
Whom indeed then to-rule he-thought must through himself so
κατεσκεύασε καὶ μελέτῃ καὶ τῷ σεμνῶς προεστάναι αὐτῶν·
he-prepared both by-practice and by-the majestically presiding over-them
οὓς δ' αὖ κατεσκεύαζεν εἰς τὸ δουλεύειν, τούτους οὔτε
whom but in-turn he-prepared for the being-slaves these neither
μελετᾶν τῶν ἐλευθερίων πόνων οὐδένα παρώρμα οὔθ' ὅπλα
to-practice of-the free toils any he-urged nor arms
κεκτῆσθαι ἐπέτρεπεν· ἐπεμελεῖτο δὲ ὅπως μήτε ἄσιτοι μήτε
to-possess he-allowed he-took-care and that neither without-food nor
ἄποτοί ποτε ἔσοιντο ἐλευθερίων ἕνεκα μελετημάτων.
without-drink ever they-should-be the-free for-the-sake exercises
καὶ γὰρ ὁπότε ἐλαύνοιεν τὰ θηρία τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἰς 44
and for whenever they-drove the beasts for-the horsemen into
τὰ πεδία, φέρεσθαι σῖτον εἰς θήραν τούτοις ἐπέτρεπε,
the plains to-carry food for hunting to-these he-allowed
τῶν δὲ ἐλευθέρων οὐδενί· καὶ ὁπότε πορεία εἴη, ἦγεν
of-the but free to-no-one and whenever a-march there-was he-led
αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὰ ὕδατα ὥσπερ τὰ ὑποζύγια. καὶ ὁπότε δὲ
them to the waters as the beasts-of-burden and whenever and
ὥρα εἴη ἀρίστου, ἀνέμενεν αὐτοὺς ἔστ' ἐμφάγοιέν τι,
hour was of-breakfast he-waited-for them until they-had-eaten something
ὡς μὴ βουλιμιῷεν· ὥστε καὶ οὗτοι αὐτὸν ὥσπερ οἱ
so-that not they-might-be-famished so-that also these him as the

ἄριστοι πατέρα ἐκάλουν, εἰ καὶ ἐπεμέλετο αὐτῶν ὅπως
nobles father called if even he-took-care-of them that
ἀναμφιλόγως ἀεὶ ἀνδράποδα διατελοῖεν.
indisputably always slaves they-might-continue
45 Τῇ μὲν δὴ ὅλῃ Περσῶν ἀρχῇ οὕτω τὴν ἀσφάλειαν
For-the indeed then whole of-Persians empire so the security
κατεσκεύαζεν. ἑαυτῷ δὲ ὅτι μὲν οὐχ ὑπὸ τῶν
he-was-arranging for-himself but that indeed not by the(-men)
καταστραφέντων κίνδυνος εἴη παθεῖν τι ἰσχυρῶς
subdued danger was to-suffer anything strongly
ἐθάρρει· καὶ γὰρ ἀνάλκιδας ἡγεῖτο εἶναι αὐτοὺς καὶ
he-was-confident and for unwarlike he-thought to-be them and
ἀσυντάκτους ὄντας ἑώρα, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις οὐδ'
disorganized being he-saw and in-addition to-these not-even
ἐπλησίαζε τούτων οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ οὔτε νυκτὸς οὔτε ἡμέρας.
approached of-these anyone him either by-night or by-day
46 οὓς δὲ κρατίστους τε ἡγεῖτο καὶ ὡπλισμένους καὶ
whom but strongest both he-thought and armed and
ἀθρόους ὄντας ἑώρα — καὶ τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ᾔδει
in-a-body being he-saw and the indeed of-them he-knew
ἱππέων ἡγεμόνας ὄντας, τοὺς δὲ πεζῶν· πολλοὺς δὲ
of-horsemen leaders being the(-others) and of-foot many and
αὐτῶν καὶ φρονήματα ἔχοντας ᾐσθάνετο ὡς ἱκανοὺς
of-them also proud-spirits having he-perceived as able
ὄντας ἄρχειν· καὶ τοῖς φύλαξι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὗτοι μάλιστα
being to-rule and to-the guards and his these most
ἐπλησίαζον, καὶ αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ τούτων πολλοὶ
approached and himself and — with-Cyrus of-these many
πολλάκις συνεμείγνυσαν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν, ὅ τι καὶ
often associated necessity for it-was what ever also

χρῆσθαι ἔμελλεν αὐτοῖς — ὑπὸ τούτων οὖν καὶ κίνδυνος
to-use he-was-going them by these then also danger
ἦν αὐτὸν μάλιστα παθεῖν τι κατὰ πολλοὺς τρόπους.
was him most to-suffer something in many ways
σκοπῶν οὖν ὅπως ἂν αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων ἀκίνδυνα 47
considering then how — for-him also the(-things) from these free-of-danger
γένοιτο, τὸ μὲν περιελέσθαι αὐτῶν τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἀπολέμους
might-become the indeed to-strip-off their the arms and unwarlike
ποιῆσαι ἀπεδοκίμασε, καὶ ἄδικον ἡγούμενος καὶ κατάλυσιν
to-make he-rejected both unjust thinking(-it) and destruction
τῆς ἀρχῆς ταύτην νομίζων· τὸ δ' αὖ μὴ προσίεσθαι αὐτοὺς
of-the empire this thinking the and in-turn not to-admit them
καὶ τὸ ἀπιστοῦντα φανερὸν εἶναι ἀρχὴν ἡγήσατο πολέμου·
and the distrusting evident to-be a-beginning he-thought of-war
ἓν δὲ ἀντὶ πάντων τούτων ἔγνω καὶ κράτιστον 48
one-thing and instead-of all these he-recognized both best
εἶναι πρὸς τὴν αὑτοῦ ἀσφάλειαν καὶ κάλλιστον, εἰ
to-be for the his-own safety and noblest if
δύναιτο ποιῆσαι τοὺς κρατίστους ἑαυτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους
he-could to-make the strongest to-himself more friends
ἢ ἀλλήλοις. ὡς οὖν ἐπὶ τὸ φιλεῖσθαι δοκεῖ ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν,
than to-one-another how then to the being-loved he-seems to-us to-have-come
τοῦτο πειρασόμεθα διηγήσασθαι.
this we-shall-try to-relate

II · FRIENDS BY KINDNESS

Cyrus wins friends by sharing his table, whose dishes excel as crafts excel in great cities, and by gifts, which make men his eyes and ears. A king, he says, is like a shepherd. Croesus warns that giving will make him poor; Cyrus has Hystaspas ask his friends what they could give, finds many times what Croesus reckoned he could

have hoarded, and calls his friends his treasure and his guards, more faithful than hired ones. He cares for the sick and holds contests and judgments that make his best men rivals, and so keeps them more friendly to himself than to one another.

1 Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ διὰ παντὸς ἀεὶ τοῦ χρόνου
First indeed for through all always the time
φιλανθρωπίαν τῆς ψυχῆς ὡς ἐδύνατο μάλιστα ἐνεφάνιζεν,
kindness of-the soul as he-could most he-displayed
ἡγούμενος, ὥσπερ οὐ ῥᾴδιόν ἐστι φιλεῖν τοὺς μισεῖν
thinking as not easy it-is to-love the(-ones) to-hate
δοκοῦντας οὐδ' εὐνοεῖν τοῖς κακόνοις, οὕτω καὶ τοὺς
seeming nor to-be-well-disposed to-the ill-disposed so also the(-ones)
γνωσθέντας ὡς φιλοῦσι καὶ εὐνοοῦσιν, οὐκ ἂν δύνασθαι
known that they-love and are-well-disposed not — to-be-able
μισεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν φιλεῖσθαι ἡγουμένων.
to-be-hated by the(-ones) to-be-loved thinking-themselves

2 ἕως μὲν οὖν χρήμασιν ἀδυνατώτερος ἦν εὐεργετεῖν, τῷ
while indeed then with-money less-able he-was to-do-good by-the
τε προνοεῖν τῶν συνόντων καὶ τῷ προπονεῖν
both taking-thought for-the(-men) with(-him) and by-the toiling-before(-them)
καὶ τῷ συνηδόμενος μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς φανερὸς
and by-the rejoicing-with(-them) indeed at the good(-things) evident
εἶναι, συναχθόμενος δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς κακοῖς, τούτοις ἐπειρᾶτο
to-be grieving-with(-them) and at the bad(-things) by-these he-tried
τὴν φιλίαν θηρεύειν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγένετο αὐτῷ ὥστε
the friendship to-hunt when and it-came-about for-him so-that
χρήμασιν εὐεργετεῖν, δοκεῖ ἡμῖν γνῶναι πρῶτον μὲν
with-money to-do-good he-seems to-us to-have-recognized first indeed
ὡς εὐεργέτημα ἀνθρώποις πρὸς ἀλλήλους οὐδέν ἐστιν
that benefaction for-men toward one-another no is

ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς δαπάνης ἐπιχαριτώτερον ἢ σίτων καὶ
from the same expense more-gracious than of-food and
ποτῶν μετάδοσις.
of-drink sharing
τοῦτο δ' οὕτω νομίσας πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ 3
this and so having-thought first indeed at the his-own
τράπεζαν συνέταξεν ὅπως οἷς αὐτὸς σιτοῖτο σίτοις,
table he-arranged that with-what himself he-ate food
τούτοις ὅμοια ἀεὶ παρατίθοιτο αὑτῷ ἱκανὰ παμπόλλοις
these like always might-be-set-before for-himself enough for-very-many
ἀνθρώποις· ὅσα δὲ παρατεθείη, ταῦτα πάντα, πλὴν οἷς
men what and was-set-before(-him) these(-things) all except what
αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ σύνδειπνοι χρήσαιντο, διεδίδου οἷς δὴ
himself and the table-companions used he-distributed to-whom indeed
βούλοιτο τῶν φίλων μνήμην ἐνδείκνυσθαι ἢ φιλοφροσύνην.
he-wished of-the friends remembrance to-show or kindness
διέπεμπε δὲ καὶ τούτοις οὓς ἀγασθείη ἢ ἐν φυλακαῖς
he-sent-around and also to-these whom he-admired either in guard-duties
ἢ ἐν θεραπείαις ἢ ἐν αἱστισινοῦν πράξεσιν, ἐνσημαινόμενος
or in services or in any-whatever actions signifying
τοῦτο, ὅτι οὐκ ἂν λανθάνοιεν χαρίζεσθαι βουλόμενοι.
this that not — they-would-escape-notice to-please wishing
ἐτίμα δὲ καὶ τῶν οἰκετῶν ἀπὸ τῆς τραπέζης ὁπότε 4
he-honored and also of-the servants from the table whenever
τινὰ ἐπαινέσειε· καὶ τὸν πάντα δὲ σῖτον τῶν οἰκετῶν
any he-praised and the all and food of-the servants
ἐπὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ τράπεζαν ἐπετίθετο, οἰόμενος ὥσπερ καὶ
on the his-own table he-had-set thinking as also
τοῖς κυσὶν ἐμποιεῖν τινα καὶ τοῦτο εὔνοιαν. εἰ δὲ καὶ
in-the dogs to-implant some also this goodwill if and also
θεραπεύεσθαί τινα βούλοιτο τῶν φίλων ὑπὸ πολλῶν, καὶ
to-be-courted any he-wished of-the friends by many also

τούτοις ἔπεμπεν ἀπὸ τραπέζης· καὶ νῦν γὰρ ἔτι οἷς ἂν
to-these he-sent from table also now for still to-whom —
ὁρῶσι πεμπόμενα ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως τραπέζης, τούτους
they-see sent(-things) from the of-the-king table these
πάντες μᾶλλον θεραπεύουσι, νομίζοντες αὐτοὺς ἐντίμους
all more court thinking them honored
εἶναι καὶ ἱκανοὺς διαπράττειν, ἤν τι δέωνται. ἔτι δὲ
to-be and able to-accomplish if anything they-need further and
καὶ οὐ τούτων μόνον ἕνεκα τῶν εἰρημένων εὐφραίνει
also not for-these only for-the-sake the(-reasons) stated delight
τὰ πεμπόμενα παρὰ βασιλέως, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι καὶ
the(-things) sent from the-king but in-the reality also
ἡδονῇ πολὺ διαφέρει τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως τραπέζης.
in-pleasure much excel the(-things) from the of-the-king table
καὶ τοῦτο μέντοι οὕτως ἔχειν οὐδέν τι θαυμαστόν· ὥσπερ
and this however so to-be nothing at-all wonderful as
γὰρ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τέχναι διαφερόντως ἐν ταῖς μεγάλαις
for also the other crafts surpassingly in the great
πόλεσιν ἐξειργασμέναι εἰσί, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ τὰ
cities perfected are in the same way also the
παρὰ βασιλεῖ σῖτα πολὺ διαφερόντως ἐκπεπόνηται. ἐν
at-the-court-of the-king foods much surpassingly are-elaborated in
μὲν γὰρ ταῖς μικραῖς πόλεσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ ποιοῦσι κλίνην,
indeed for the small cities the same(-men) make a-couch
θύραν, ἄροτρον, τράπεζαν, πολλάκις δ' ὁ αὐτὸς οὗτος καὶ
a-door a-plow a-table often and the same this(-man) also
οἰκοδομεῖ, καὶ ἀγαπᾷ ἢν καὶ οὕτως ἱκανοὺς αὐτὸν τρέφειν
builds and is-content if even so enough him to-support
ἐργοδότας λαμβάνῃ· ἀδύνατον οὖν πολλὰ τεχνώμενον
employers he-gets impossible then many-things practicing
ἄνθρωπον πάντα καλῶς ποιεῖν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς μεγάλαις πόλεσι
a-man all-things well to-do in but the great cities

διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἑκάστου δεῖσθαι ἀρκεῖ καὶ μία ἑκάστῳ
because-of the many each to-need it-suffices even one for-each
τέχνη εἰς τὸ τρέφεσθαι· πολλάκις δὲ οὐδ' ὅλη μία· ἀλλ'
craft for the being-supported often and not-even whole one but
ὑποδήματα ποιεῖ ὁ μὲν ἀνδρεῖα, ὁ δὲ γυναικεῖα·
shoes makes one indeed men's another and women's
ἔστι δὲ ἔνθα καὶ ὑποδήματα ὁ μὲν νευρορραφῶν
there-is and where even shoes one indeed by-stitching
μόνον τρέφεται, ὁ δὲ σχίζων, ὁ δὲ χιτῶνας μόνον
only is-supported another and by-cutting another and tunics only
συντέμνων, ὁ δέ γε τούτων οὐδὲν ποιῶν ἀλλὰ
cutting-out another and at-least of-these nothing doing but
συντιθεὶς ταῦτα. ἀνάγκη οὖν τὸν ἐν βραχυτάτῳ
putting-together these(-things) necessity then the(-man) in the-shortest
διατρίβοντα ἔργῳ τοῦτον καὶ ἄριστα δύνασθαι τοῦτο ποιεῖν.
occupying-himself work this(-man) also best to-be-able this to-do
τὸ αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο πέπονθε καὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ τὴν 6
the same and this has-experienced also the(-things) concerning the
δίαιταν. ᾧ μὲν γὰρ ὁ αὐτὸς κλίνην στρώννυσι,
living for-whom indeed for the same a-couch spreads
τράπεζαν κοσμεῖ, μάττει, ἕψει, ὄψα ἄλλοτε ἀλλοῖα ποιεῖ,
a-table arranges kneads boils relishes at-other-times different makes
ἀνάγκη οἶμαι τούτῳ, ὡς ἂν ἕκαστον προχωρῇ, οὕτως
necessity I-think for-this(-man) as — each goes so
ἔχειν· ὅπου δὲ ἱκανὸν ἔργον ἑνὶ ἕψειν κρέα, ἄλλῳ
to-be where but enough work for-one to-boil meat for-another
ὀπτᾶν, ἄλλῳ δὲ ἰχθὺν ἕψειν, ἄλλῳ ὀπτᾶν, ἄλλῳ
to-roast for-another and fish to-boil for-another to-roast for-another
ἄρτους ποιεῖν, καὶ μηδὲ τούτους παντοδαπούς, ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖ
breads to-make and not-even these of-all-kinds but it-suffices

ἐὰν ἓν εἶδος εὐδοκιμοῦν παρέχῃ, ἀνάγκη οἶμαι ταῦτα
if one kind well-approved he-supplies necessity I-think these(-things)
οὕτω ποιούμενα πολὺ διαφερόντως ἐξειργάσθαι ἕκαστον.
so being-done much surpassingly to-be-perfected each

7 Τῇ μὲν δὴ τῶν σίτων θεραπείᾳ τοιαῦτα ποιῶν πολὺ
In-the indeed then of-the food service such(-things) doing much
ὑπερεβάλλετο πάντας· ὡς δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι
he-surpassed all how and also in-the other all
θεραπεύων πολὺ ἐκράτει, τοῦτο νῦν διηγήσομαι· πολὺ γὰρ
serving much he-prevailed this now I-shall-relate much for
διενεγκὼν ἀνθρώπων τῷ πλείστας προσόδους λαμβάνειν
having-surpassed men in-the most revenues to-receive
πολὺ ἔτι πλέον διήνεγκε τῷ πλεῖστα ἀνθρώπων δωρεῖσθαι.
much still more he-surpassed in-the most of-men to-give-gifts
κατῆρξε μὲν οὖν τούτου Κῦρος, διαμένει δ' ἔτι καὶ νῦν
began indeed then this Cyrus remains and still also now
τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἡ πολυδωρία.
with-the kings the lavishness-of-gifts

8 τίνι μὲν γὰρ φίλοι πλουσιώτεροι ὄντες φανεροὶ ἢ
to-whom indeed for friends richer being evident than
Περσῶν βασιλεῖ; τίς δὲ κοσμῶν κάλλιον φαίνεται
of-Persians the-king who and adorning more-beautifully appears
στολαῖς τοὺς περὶ αὑτὸν ἢ βασιλεύς; τίνος δὲ
with-robes the(-men) about himself than the-king whose and
δῶρα γιγνώσκεται ὥσπερ ἔνια τῶν βασιλέως, ψέλια καὶ
gifts are-recognized as some of-the king's bracelets and
στρεπτοὶ καὶ ἵπποι χρυσοχάλινοι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔξεστιν
necklaces and horses gold-bridled not for indeed it-is-allowed
ἐκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν ᾧ ἂν μὴ βασιλεὺς δῷ.
there these(-things) to-have to-whom — not the-king gives(-them)

τίς δ' ἄλλος λέγεται δώρων μεγέθει ποιεῖν αἱρεῖσθαι 9
who and other is-said of-gifts by-greatness to-make to-be-preferred
αὑτὸν καὶ ἀντ' ἀδελφῶν καὶ ἀντὶ πατέρων καὶ ἀντὶ
himself even before brothers and before fathers and before
παίδων; τίς δ' ἄλλος ἐδυνάσθη ἐχθροὺς ἀπέχοντας πολλῶν
children who and other was-able enemies distant of-many
μηνῶν ὁδὸν τιμωρεῖσθαι ὡς Περσῶν βασιλεύς; τίς δ'
months a-journey to-punish as of-Persians the-king who and
ἄλλος καταστρεψάμενος ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων πατὴρ
other having-subdued an-empire by the ruled father
καλούμενος ἀπέθανεν ἢ Κῦρος; τοῦτο δὲ τοὔνομα δῆλον
being-called died than Cyrus this and the-name(-is) clear
ὅτι εὐεργετοῦντός ἐστι μᾶλλον ἢ ἀφαιρουμένου.
that of-one-benefiting it-is rather than of-one-taking-away
κατεμάθομεν δὲ ὡς καὶ τοὺς βασιλέως καλουμένους 10
we-have-learned and that also the(-men) of-the-king called
ὀφθαλμοὺς καὶ τὰ βασιλέως ὦτα οὐκ ἄλλως ἐκτήσατο ἢ
eyes and the of-the-king ears not otherwise he-acquired than
τῷ δωρεῖσθαί τε καὶ τιμᾶν· τοὺς γὰρ ἀπαγγείλαντας
by-the giving-gifts both and honoring the(-men) for having-reported
ὅσα καιρὸς αὐτῷ εἴη πυθέσθαι μεγάλως εὐεργετῶν
whatever opportune to-him might-be to-learn greatly benefiting
πολλοὺς ἐποίησεν ἀνθρώπους καὶ ὠτακουστεῖν καὶ
many he-made men both to-listen and
διοπτεύειν τί ἂν ἀγγείλαντες ὠφελήσειαν βασιλέα.
to-spy-out what — having-reported they-might-benefit the-king
ἐκ τούτου δὴ καὶ πολλοὶ ἐνομίσθησαν βασιλέως ὀφθαλμοὶ 11
from this indeed also many were-thought the-king's eyes
καὶ πολλὰ ὦτα. εἰ δέ τις οἴεται ἕνα αἱρετὸν εἶναι
and many ears if but anyone thinks one chosen to-be
ὀφθαλμὸν βασιλεῖ, οὐκ ὀρθῶς οἴεται· ὀλίγα γὰρ εἷς γ'
eye for-the-king not rightly he-thinks few(-things) for one at-least

ἂν ἴδοι καὶ εἷς ἀκούσειε· καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὥσπερ ἀμελεῖν
— would-see and one would-hear and to-the others as to-neglect
ἂν παρηγγελμένον εἴη, εἰ ἑνὶ τοῦτο προστεταγμένον
— ordered it-would-be if to-one this assigned
εἴη· πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὅντινα γιγνώσκοιεν ὀφθαλμὸν ὄντα,
should-be in-addition and also whomever they-knew eye being
τοῦτον ἂν εἰδεῖεν ὅτι φυλάττεσθαι δεῖ. ἀλλ᾽ οὐχ
this(-one) — they-would-know that to-guard-against (one)-must but not
οὕτως ἔχει, ἀλλὰ τοῦ φάσκοντος ἀκοῦσαί τι ἢ
so it-is but the(-one) claiming to-have-heard something or
ἰδεῖν ἄξιον ἐπιμελείας παντὸς βασιλεὺς ἀκούει.
to-have-seen worth attention everyone the-king hears
12 οὕτω δὴ πολλὰ μὲν βασιλέως ὦτα, πολλοὶ δ᾽ ὀφθαλμοὶ
so indeed many indeed the-king's ears many and eyes
νομίζονται· καὶ φοβοῦνται πανταχοῦ λέγειν τὰ μὴ
are-thought and they-fear everywhere to-say the(-things) not
σύμφορα βασιλεῖ, ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ ἀκούοντος, καὶ ποιεῖν
advantageous to-the-king as him hearing and to-do
ἃ μὴ σύμφορα, ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ παρόντος. οὔκουν ὅπως
what not advantageous as him being-present not-therefore how
μνησθῆναι ἄν τις ἐτόλμησε πρός τινα περὶ Κύρου
to-mention — anyone would-have-dared to anyone about Cyrus
φλαῦρόν τι, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς πᾶσι καὶ ὠσὶ
bad anything but as among eyes all and ears
βασιλέως τοῖς ἀεὶ παροῦσιν οὕτως ἕκαστος διέκειτο.
of-the-king the(-ones) always present so each was-disposed
τὸ δὲ οὕτω διακεῖσθαι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγὼ
the and so to-be-disposed the men toward him I
μὲν οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι ἄν τις αἰτιάσαιτο μᾶλλον ἢ
indeed not know what ever — anyone could-assign-as-cause more than
ὅτι μεγάλα ἤθελεν ἀντὶ μικρῶν εὐεργετεῖν.
that great(-things) he-wished instead-of small to-do-good

Καὶ τὸ μὲν δὴ μεγέθει δώρων ὑπερβάλλειν πλουσιώτατον 13
And the indeed then in-greatness of-gifts to-excel richest
ὄντα οὐ θαυμαστόν· τὸ δὲ τῇ θεραπείᾳ καὶ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ
being not wonderful the but in-the service and in-the care
τῶν φίλων βασιλεύοντα περιγίγνεσθαι, τοῦτο ἀξιολογώτερον.
of-the friends being-king to-prevail this more-remarkable
ἐκεῖνος τοίνυν λέγεται κατάδηλος εἶναι μηδενὶ ἂν οὕτως
he then is-said evident to-be at-nothing — so
αἰσχυνθεὶς ἡττώμενος ὡς φίλων θεραπείᾳ·
would-be-ashamed being-surpassed as of-friends in-service
καὶ λόγος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀπομνημονεύεται ὡς λέγοι παραπλήσια 14
and a-saying and of-his is-remembered that he-said similar
ἔργα εἶναι νομέως ἀγαθοῦ καὶ βασιλέως ἀγαθοῦ· τόν
works to-be of-a-shepherd good and of-a-king good the
τε γὰρ νομέα χρῆναι ἔφη εὐδαίμονα τὰ κτήνη ποιοῦντα
both for shepherd must he-said happy the flocks making
χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς, ἢ δὴ προβάτων εὐδαιμονία, τόν
to-use them which indeed of-sheep happiness(-is) the
τε βασιλέα ὡσαύτως εὐδαίμονας πόλεις καὶ ἀνθρώπους
and king likewise happy cities and men
ποιοῦντα χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς. οὐδὲν οὖν θαυμαστόν, εἴπερ
making to-use them nothing then wonderful if-indeed
ταύτην εἶχε τὴν γνώμην, τὸ φιλονίκως ἔχειν πάντων
this he-had the opinion the eager-to-win to-be over-all
ἀνθρώπων θεραπείᾳ περιγίγνεσθαι.
men in-service to-prevail
καλὸν δ' ἐπίδειγμα, καὶ τοῦτο λέγεται Κῦρος ἐπιδεῖξαι 15
fine and a-demonstration also this is-said Cyrus to-have-shown
Κροίσῳ, ὅτε ἐνουθέτει αὐτὸν ὡς διὰ τὸ πολλὰ
to-Croesus when he-admonished him that through the many-things

διδόναι πένης ἔσοιτο, ἐξὸν αὐτῷ θησαυροὺς χρυσοῦ
giving poor he-would-be it-being-possible for-him treasures of-gold
πλείστους ἑνί γε ἀνδρὶ ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ καταθέσθαι·
most for-one at-least man in the house to-lay-up
16 καὶ τὸν Κῦρον λέγεται ἐρέσθαι, Καὶ πόσα ἂν ἤδη
and — Cyrus is-said to-have-asked And how-much — now
οἴει μοι χρήματα εἶναι, εἰ συνέλεγον χρυσίον ὥσπερ
do-you-think to-me wealth would-be if I-had-collected gold as
σὺ κελεύεις ἐξ ὅτου ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ εἰμι; καὶ τὸν
you bid from which(-time) in the rule I-am and —
Κροῖσον εἰπεῖν πολύν τινα ἀριθμόν. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς
Croesus to-have-said great some number and — Cyrus to
ταῦτα, Ἄγε δή, φάναι, ὦ Κροῖσε, σύμπεμψον ἄνδρα σὺν
this Come then to-have-said O Croesus send-along a-man with
Ὑστάσπᾳ τουτῳΐ ὅτῳ σὺ πιστεύεις μάλιστα. σὺ δέ, ὦ
Hystaspas this-one-here whom you trust most you and O
Ὑστάσπα, ἔφη, περιελθὼν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους λέγε αὐτοῖς
Hystaspas he-said having-gone-round to the friends tell them
ὅτι δέομαι χρυσίου πρὸς πρᾶξίν τινα· καὶ γὰρ τῷ ὄντι
that I-need gold for an-enterprise some and for in-the reality
προσδέομαι· καὶ κέλευε αὐτοὺς ὁπόσα ἕκαστος δύναιτο
I-need-in-addition and bid them as-much-as each could
πορίσαι μοι χρήματα γράψαντας καὶ κατασημηναμένους
to-provide for-me money having-written and having-sealed
δοῦναι τὴν ἐπιστολὴν τῷ Κροίσου θεράποντι φέρειν.
to-give the letter to-the of-Croesus servant to-carry
17 ταῦτα δὲ ὅσα ἔλεγε καὶ γράψας καὶ σημηνάμενος
these(-things) and as-many-as he-said both having-written and having-sealed
ἐδίδου τῷ Ὑστάσπᾳ φέρειν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους· ἐνέγραψε
he-gave — to-Hystaspas to-carry to the friends he-wrote-in
δὲ πρὸς πάντας καὶ Ὑστάσπαν ὡς φίλον αὐτοῦ δέχεσθαι.
and to all also Hystaspas as friend his to-receive

ἐπεὶ δὲ περιῆλθε καὶ ἤνεγκεν ὁ Κροίσου θεράπων τὰς
when and he-had-gone-round and had-brought the of-Croesus servant the
ἐπιστολάς, ὁ δὴ Ὑστάσπας εἶπεν, Ὦ Κῦρε βασιλεῦ,
letters — indeed Hystaspas said O Cyrus king
καὶ ἐμοὶ ἤδη χρὴ ὡς πλουσίῳ χρῆσθαι· πάμπολλα
also me now (one)-must as rich(-man) to-treat very-many
γὰρ ἔχων πάρειμι δῶρα διὰ τὰ σὰ γράμματα.
for having I-am-here gifts because-of the your letters
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Εἶς μὲν τοίνυν καὶ οὗτος ἤδη θησαυρὸς 18
and — Cyrus said One indeed then also this(-one) already treasure
ἡμῖν, ὦ Κροῖσε· τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καταθεῶ καὶ λόγισαι
to-us O Croesus the and others behold and reckon
πόσα ἐστὶν ἕτοιμα χρήματα, ἤν τι δέωμαι χρῆσθαι.
how-much is ready money if anything I-need to-use
λέγεται δὴ λογιζόμενος ὁ Κροῖσος πολλαπλάσια εὑρεῖν ἢ
it-is-said indeed reckoning — Croesus many-times-as-much to-find than
ἔφη Κύρῳ ἂν εἶναι ἐν τοῖς θησαυροῖς ἤδη, εἰ συνέλεγεν.
he-had-said for-Cyrus — would-be in the treasuries already if he-had-collected
ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο φανερὸν ἐγένετο, εἰπεῖν λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος, 19
when and this evident became to-have-said is-said — Cyrus
Ὁρᾷς, φάναι ὦ Κροῖσε, ὡς εἰσὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ θησαυροί;
You-see to-have-said O Croesus that there-are also for-me treasures
ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν κελεύεις με παρ' ἐμοὶ αὐτοὺς συλλέγοντα
but you indeed bid me by me them collecting
φθονεῖσθαί τε δι' αὐτοὺς καὶ μισεῖσθαι, καὶ φύλακας
to-be-envied both because-of them and to-be-hated and guards
αὐτοῖς ἐφιστάντα μισθοφόρους τούτοις πιστεύειν· ἐγὼ δὲ
over-them setting hired these to-trust I but
τοὺς φίλους πλουσίους ποιῶν τούτους μοι νομίζω θησαυροὺς
the friends rich making these to-me I-think treasures

καὶ φύλακας ἅμα ἐμοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀγαθῶν
and guards at-once of-me both and of-the our goods
πιστοτέρους εἶναι ἢ εἰ φρουροὺς μισθοφόρους ἐπεστησάμην.
more-faithful to-be than if garrison-troops hired I-had-set-over(-them)
20 καὶ ἄλλο δέ σοι ἐρῶ· ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ Κροῖσε, ὃ μὲν
and another and to-you I-shall-say I for O Croesus what indeed
οἱ θεοὶ δόντες εἰς τὰς ψυχὰς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐποίησαν
the gods having-given into the souls to-the men made
ὁμοίως πένητας πάντας, τούτου μὲν οὐδ' αὐτὸς δύναμαι
alike poor all this indeed not-even myself can
περιγενέσθαι, ἀλλ' εἰμὶ ἄπληστος κἀγὼ ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι
to-overcome but I-am insatiable I-too like the others
χρημάτων·
of-money
21 τῇδέ γε μέντοι διαφέρειν μοι δοκῶ τῶν πλείστων
in-this at-least however to-differ to-me I-seem from-the most
ὅτι οἳ μὲν ἐπειδὰν τῶν ἀρκούντων περιττὰ κτήσωνται,
that they indeed when of-the sufficient(-things) superfluous they-acquire
τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν κατορύττουσι, τὰ δὲ κατασήπουσι,
the indeed of-them bury the(-others) and let-rot
τὰ δὲ ἀριθμοῦντες καὶ μετροῦντες καὶ ἱστάντες καὶ
the(-others) and counting and measuring and weighing and
διαψύχοντες καὶ φυλάττοντες πράγματα ἔχουσι, καὶ ὅμως
airing and guarding troubles they-have and yet
ἔνδον ἔχοντες τοσαῦτα οὔτε ἐσθίουσι πλείω ἢ δύνανται
inside having so-much neither do-they-eat more than they-can
φέρειν, διαρραγεῖεν γὰρ ἄν, οὔτ' ἀμφιέννυνται πλείω ἢ
to-bear they-would-burst for — nor do-they-wear more than
δύνανται φέρειν, ἀποπνιγεῖεν γὰρ ἄν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὰ
they-can to-bear they-would-be-choked for — but because-of the

περιττὰ χρήματα πράγματα ἔχουσιν· ἐγὼ δ᾽ ὑπηρετῶ
superfluous money troubles they-have I and serve
μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ὀρέγομαι ἀεὶ πλειόνων·
indeed the gods and reach-out always for-more
ἐπειδὰν δὲ κτήσωμαι, ἃ ἂν ἴδω περιττὰ ὄντα τῶν 22
when and I-acquire what — I-see superfluous being of-the(-things)
ἐμοὶ ἀρκούντων, τούτοις τάς τ᾽ ἐνδείας τῶν φίλων
for-me sufficient with-these the both wants of-the friends
ἐξακοῦμαι καὶ πλουτίζων καὶ εὐεργετῶν ἀνθρώπους
I-satisfy and enriching and benefiting men
εὔνοιαν ἐξ αὐτῶν κτῶμαι καὶ φιλίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτων
goodwill from them I-acquire and friendship and from these
καρποῦμαι ἀσφάλειαν καὶ εὔκλειαν· ἃ οὔτε κατασήπεται
I-reap security and good-fame which neither rots
οὔτε ὑπερπληροῦντα λυμαίνεται, ἀλλὰ ἡ εὔκλεια ὅσῳ
nor being-overfull does-harm but the good-fame as-much-as
ἂν πλείων ᾖ, τοσούτῳ καὶ μείζων καὶ καλλίων καὶ
— greater it-is so-much also greater and finer and
κουφοτέρα φέρειν γίγνεται, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τοὺς
lighter to-bear becomes often and also the(-ones)
φέροντας αὐτὴν κουφοτέρους παρέχεται.
bearing it lighter it-renders
ὅπως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο εἰδῇς, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐγὼ 23
that and also this you-may-know he-said O Croesus I
οὐ τοὺς πλεῖστα ἔχοντας καὶ φυλάττοντας πλεῖστα
not the(-men) most having and guarding most
εὐδαιμονεστάτους ἡγοῦμαι· οἱ γὰρ τὰ τείχη φυλάττοντες
happiest think the(-men) for the walls guarding
οὕτως ἂν εὐδαιμονέστατοι εἴησαν· πάντα γὰρ τὰ
so — happiest would-be all for the(-things)
ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι φυλάττουσιν· ἀλλ᾽ ὃς ἂν κτᾶσθαί τε
in the cities they-guard but whoever — to-acquire both

πλεῖστα δύνηται σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ χρῆσθαι πλείστοις
most can with the just and to-use most
σὺν τῷ καλῷ, τοῦτον ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονέστατον νομίζω. καὶ
with the noble this(-man) I happiest consider and
ταῦτα μὲν δὴ φανερὸς ἦν ὥσπερ ἔλεγε καὶ πράττων.
these(-things) indeed then evident he-was as he-said also doing
24 πρὸς δὲ τούτοις κατανοήσας τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἀνθρώπων
in-addition and to-these having-observed the many of-the men
ὅτι ἢν μὲν ὑγιαίνοντες διατελῶσι, παρασκευάζονται ὅπως
that if indeed healthy they-continue they-prepare that
ἕξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ κατατίθενται τὰ χρήσιμα εἰς
they-will-have the necessaries and lay-up the useful(-things) for
τὴν τῶν ὑγιαινόντων δίαιταν· ὅπως δὲ ἢν ἀσθενήσωσι
the of-the(-men) being-healthy living that but if they-fall-ill
τὰ σύμφορα παρέσται, τούτου οὐ πάνυ ἐπιμελουμένους
the advantageous(-things) will-be-at-hand this not very caring-for
ἑώρα· ἔδοξεν οὖν καὶ ταῦτα ἐκπονῆσαι αὐτῷ, καὶ
he-saw it-seemed-good then also these(-things) to-work-out to-him and
ἰατρούς τε τοὺς ἀρίστους συνεκομίσατο πρὸς αὑτὸν τῷ
physicians both the best he-gathered to himself by-the
τελεῖν ἐθέλειν καὶ ὁπόσα ἢ ὄργανα χρήσιμα ἔφη τις
to-pay to-be-willing and whatever either instruments useful said anyone
ἂν αὐτῶν γενέσθαι ἢ φάρμακα ἢ σῖτα ἢ ποτά, οὐδὲν
— of-them would-be or drugs or foods or drinks nothing
τούτων ὅ τι οὐχὶ παρασκευάσας ἐθησαύριζε παρ' αὑτῷ.
of-these what ever not having-prepared he-stored-up with himself
25 καὶ ὁπότε δέ τις ἀσθενήσειε τῶν θεραπεύεσθαι
and whenever and anyone fell-ill of-the(-ones) to-be-cared-for
ἐπικαιρίων, ἐπεσκόπει καὶ παρεῖχε πάντα ὅτου ἔδει.
chief he-visited and supplied everything of-which there-was-need

καὶ τοῖς ἰατροῖς δὲ χάριν ᾔδει, ὁπότε τις ἰάσαιτό τινα
and to-the physicians and gratitude he-felt whenever any cured anyone
τῶν παρ᾽ ἐκείνου λαμβάνων.
of-the(-things) from him taking
Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ καὶ τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἐμηχανᾶτο πρὸς 26
These(-things) indeed then and such many he-contrived for
τὸ πρωτεύειν παρ᾽ οἷς ἐβούλετο ἑαυτὸν φιλεῖσθαι. ὧν
the being-first with whom he-wished himself to-be-loved of-what
δὲ προηγόρευέ τε ἀγῶνας καὶ ἆθλα προυτίθει, φιλονικίας
and he-proclaimed both contests and prizes offered rivalry
ἐμποιεῖν βουλόμενος περὶ τῶν καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔργων,
to-implant wishing about the noble and good deeds
ταῦτα τῷ μὲν Κύρῳ ἔπαινον παρεῖχεν ὅτι ἐπεμέλετο
these(-things) — indeed to-Cyrus praise brought that he-took-care
ὅπως ἀσκοῖτο ἡ ἀρετή· τοῖς μέντοι ἀρίστοις οἱ ἀγῶνες
that might-be-practiced the virtue to-the however best the contests
οὗτοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους καὶ ἔριδας καὶ φιλονικίας ἐνέβαλλον.
these toward one-another both strifes and rivalries implanted
πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὥσπερ νόμον κατεστήσατο ὁ Κῦρος, 27
in-addition and to-these as-it-were a-law established — Cyrus
ὅσα διακρίσεως δέοιτο εἴτε δίκῃ εἴτε ἀγωνίσματι, τοὺς
whatever decision needed whether by-lawsuit or by-contest the(-ones)
δεομένους διακρίσεως συντρέχειν τοῖς κριταῖς. δῆλον οὖν ὅτι
needing decision to-concur on-the judges clear then that
ἐστοχάζοντο μὲν οἱ ἀνταγωνιζόμενοί τι ἀμφότεροι
aimed-at indeed the(-ones) contending at-all both
τῶν κρατίστων καὶ τῶν μάλιστα φίλων κριτῶν· ὁ δὲ
at-the strongest and at-the most friendly judges the(-one) and
μὴ νικῶν τοῖς μὲν νικῶσιν ἐφθόνει, τοὺς δὲ μὴ ἑαυτὸν
not winning the indeed winning envied the(-ones) and not him

κρίνοντας ἐμίσει· ὁ δ' αὖ νικῶν τῷ δικαίῳ
judging(-the-winner) he-hated the(-one) and in-turn winning by-the just
προσεποιεῖτο νικᾶν, ὥστε χάριν οὐδενὶ ἡγεῖτο ὀφείλειν.
claimed to-win so-that gratitude to-no-one he-thought to-owe
28 καὶ οἱ πρωτεύειν δὲ βουλόμενοι φιλίᾳ παρὰ Κύρῳ,
and the(-men) to-be-first and wishing in-friendship with Cyrus
ὥσπερ ἄλλοι ἐν πόλεσι, καὶ οὗτοι ἐπιφθόνως πρὸς
as others in cities also these enviously toward
ἀλλήλους εἶχον, ὥσθ' οἱ πλείονες ἐκποδὼν ἐβούλοντο ὁ
one-another were so-that the more out-of-the-way wished the
ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον γενέσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ συνέπραξαν
one the other to-be rather than would-have-accomplished
ἄν τι ἀλλήλοις ἀγαθόν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δεδήλωται
— anything for-one-another good and these(-things) indeed has-been-shown
ὡς ἐμηχανᾶτο τοὺς κρατίστους αὐτὸν μᾶλλον πάντας
how he-contrived the strongest him rather all
φιλεῖν ἢ ἀλλήλους.
to-love than one-another

III · THE PROCESSION

Cyrus gives the officers Median robes and has Pheraulas, a commoner, arrange his first procession: guards lining the road, bulls for Zeus, horses for the Sun, sacred chariots, and Cyrus in the purple, at whose sight all bow down; the cavalry follows. Daiphernes, slow to answer a summons, is not summoned again. At the sacrifices there are races; a young Sacian wins and gives his horse to Pheraulas, whom he has hit with a clod. Pheraulas tells how he rose from poverty, finds riches a burden, and gives all his wealth to the Sacian to manage.

Νῦν δὲ ἤδη διηγησόμεθα ὡς τὸ πρῶτον ἐξήλασε Κῦρος ἐκ 1
Now and at-last we-shall-relate how the first(-time) rode-out Cyrus from
τῶν βασιλείων· καὶ γὰρ αὐτῆς τῆς ἐξελάσεως ἡ σεμνότης
the palace and for itself of-the riding-out the majesty
ἡμῖν δοκεῖ μία τῶν τεχνῶν εἶναι τῶν μεμηχανημένων
to-us seems one of-the arts to-be of-the(-ones) contrived
τὴν ἀρχὴν μὴ εὐκαταφρόνητον εἶναι. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν
the rule not easy-to-despise to-be first indeed then
πρὸ τῆς ἐξελάσεως εἰσκαλέσας πρὸς αὑτὸν τοὺς τὰς
before the riding-out having-called-in to himself the(-men) the
ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων
offices holding of-Persians both and of-the other allies
διέδωκεν αὐτοῖς τὰς Μηδικὰς στολάς· καὶ τότε πρῶτον
he-distributed to-them the Median robes and then first
Πέρσαι Μηδικὴν στολὴν ἐνέδυσαν· διαδιδούς τε ἅμα
Persians Median robe put-on distributing and at-the-same-time
τάδε ἔλεξεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι ἐλάσαι βούλοιτο εἰς τὰ τεμένη
these(-things) he-said to-them that to-ride he-wished to the precincts
τὰ τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξῃρημένα καὶ θῦσαι μετ᾽ ἐκείνων.
the(-ones) for-the gods set-apart and to-sacrifice with them
Πάρεστε οὖν, ἔφη, αὔριον ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας κοσμηθέντες ταῖς 2
Be-present then he-said tomorrow at the doors adorned with-the
στολαῖς ταύταις πρὶν ἥλιον ἀνατέλλειν, καὶ καθίστασθε
robes these before the-sun to-rise and take-your-places
ὡς ἂν ὑμῖν Φεραύλας ὁ Πέρσης ἐξαγγείλῃ παρ᾽ ἐμοῦ·
as — to-you Pheraulas the Persian announces from me
καὶ ἐπειδάν, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἡγῶμαι, ἕπεσθε ἐν τῇ ῥηθείσῃ
and when he-said I lead follow in the stated
χώρᾳ. ἢν δ᾽ ἄρα τινὶ δοκῇ ὑμῶν ἄλλῃ κάλλιον εἶναι
place if but after-all to-anyone it-seems of-you otherwise finer to-be
ἢ ὡς νῦν ἐλαύνομεν, ἐπειδὰν πάλιν ἔλθωμεν, διδασκέτω
than as now we-ride when again we-come let-him-teach

με· ὅπῃ γὰρ ἂν κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον ὑμῖν δοκῇ εἶναι,
me where for — finest and best to-you it-seems to-be
ταύτῃ ἕκαστα δεῖ καταστήσασθαι.
there each-thing (one)-must to-arrange

3 ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς κρατίστοις διέδωκε τὰς καλλίστας στολάς,
when and to-the best he-had-distributed the finest robes
ἐξέφερε δὴ καὶ ἄλλας Μηδικὰς στολάς, παμπόλλας
he-brought-out indeed also other Median robes very-many
γὰρ παρεσκευάσατο, οὐδὲν φειδόμενος οὔτε πορφυρίδων
for he-had-prepared in-nothing sparing neither of-purple
οὔτε ὀρφνίνων οὔτε φοινικίδων οὔτε καρυκίνων ἱματίων·
nor of-dark-gray nor of-crimson nor of-scarlet garments
νείμας δὲ τούτων τὸ μέρος ἑκάστῳ τῶν ἡγεμόνων
having-distributed and of-these the share to-each of-the leaders
ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τούτοις κοσμεῖν τοὺς αὑτῶν φίλους,
he-ordered them with-these to-adorn the their-own friends
ὥσπερ, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς κοσμῶ.
as he-said I you adorn

4 καί τις τῶν παρόντων ἐπήρετο αὐτόν, Σὺ δ', ἔφη, ὦ
and one of-the(-men) present asked him You and he-said O
Κῦρε, πότε κοσμήσῃ; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, Οὐ γὰρ νῦν,
Cyrus when will-you-adorn(-yourself) he and answered Not for now
ἔφη, δοκῶ ὑμῖν αὐτὸς κοσμεῖσθαι ὑμᾶς κοσμῶν; ἀμέλει,
he-said do-I-seem to-you myself to-be-adorned you adorning never-fear
ἔφη, ἢν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν, ὁποίαν ἂν
he-said if I-can you the friends well to-treat whatever —
ἔχων στολὴν τυγχάνω, ἐν ταύτῃ καλὸς φανοῦμαι.
having robe I-happen(-to-wear) in this handsome I-shall-appear

5 οὕτω δὴ οἱ μὲν ἀπελθόντες μεταπεμπόμενοι τοὺς φίλους
so indeed they indeed having-gone-away sending-for the friends
ἐκόσμουν ταῖς στολαῖς. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος νομίζων Φεραύλαν
adorned(-them) with-the robes — and Cyrus thinking Pheraulas

τὸν ἐκ τῶν δημοτῶν καὶ συνετὸν εἶναι καὶ φιλόκαλον
the(-one) from the commoners both intelligent to-be and lover-of-beauty
καὶ εὔτακτον καὶ τοῦ χαρίζεσθαι αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀμελῆ, ὅς
and orderly and of-the pleasing him not careless who
ποτε καὶ περὶ τοῦ τιμᾶσθαι ἕκαστον κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν
once also about the being-honored each according-to the merit
συνεῖπε, τοῦτον δὴ καλέσας συνεβουλεύετο αὐτῷ
had-spoken-in-support this(-man) indeed having-called consulted him
πῶς ἂν τοῖς μὲν εὔνοις κάλλιστα ἰδεῖν ποιοῖτο τὴν
how — to-the indeed well-disposed most-beautiful to-see he-might-make the
ἐξέλασιν, τοῖς δὲ δυσμενέσι φοβερώτατα.
riding-out to-the but ill-disposed most-fearful
ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπούντοιν αὐτοῖν τὰ αὐτὰ συνέδοξεν, ἐκέλευσε 6
when and considering to-the-two the same-things had-seemed-good he-ordered
τὸν Φεραύλαν ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως ἂν οὕτω γένηται αὔριον
— Pheraulas to-take-care that — so should-be tomorrow
ἡ ἐξέλασις ὥσπερ ἔδοξε καλῶς ἔχειν. Εἴρηκα δέ, ἔφη,
the riding-out as it-had-seemed well to-be I-have-told and he-said
ἐγὼ πάντας πείθεσθαί σοι περὶ τῆς ἐν τῇ ἐξελάσει τάξεως·
I all to-obey you about the in the riding-out order
ὅπως δ' ἂν ἥδιον παραγγέλλοντός σου ἀκούωσι, φέρε
that but — more-gladly giving-orders you they-may-listen come
λαβών, ἔφη, χιτῶνας μὲν τουτουσὶ τοῖς τῶν δορυφόρων
having-taken he-said tunics indeed these-here to-the of-the spear-bearers
ἡγεμόσι, κασᾶς δὲ τούσδε τοὺς ἐφιππίους τοῖς τῶν
leaders cloaks and these the for-riding to-the of-the
ἱππέων ἡγεμόσι, δὸς δὲ καὶ τῶν ἁρμάτων τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν
horsemen leaders give and also of-the chariots to-the leaders
ἄλλους τούσδε χιτῶνας. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἔφερε λαβών·
other these tunics he indeed then carried(-them) having-taken

7 οἱ δὲ ἡγεμόνες ἐπεὶ ἴδοιεν αὐτόν, ἔλεγον, Μέγας δὴ
the and leaders when they-saw him said Great indeed
σύγε, ὦ Φεραύλα, ὁπότε γε καὶ ἡμῖν τάξεις
you-at-least(-are) O Pheraulas when at-least also to-us you-will-assign
ἃ ἂν δέῃ ποιεῖν. Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Φεραύλας, οὐ
what — there-be-need to-do Not by Zeus said — Pheraulas not
μόνον γε, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ συσκευοφορήσω· νῦν
only at-least as it-seems but also I-shall-help-carry-the-baggage now
γοῦν φέρω τώδε δύο κασᾶ, τὸν μὲν σοί, τὸν
at-any-rate I-carry these two cloaks the(-one) indeed for-you the(-other)
δὲ ἄλλῳ· σὺ μέντοι τούτων λαβὲ ὁπότερον βούλει.
and for-another you however of-these take whichever you-wish
8 ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὃ μὲν λαμβάνων τὸν κασᾶν τοῦ
from this indeed he indeed taking the cloak of-the
μὲν φθόνου ἐπελέληστο, εὐθὺς δὲ συνεβουλεύετο αὐτῷ
indeed envy had-forgotten at-once and he-consulted him
ὁπότερον λαμβάνοι· ὃ δὲ συμβουλεύσας ἂν ὁπότερος
which he-should-take he and having-advised — whichever
βελτίων εἴη καὶ εἰπών, Ἢν μου κατηγορήσῃς ὅτι αἱρεσίν
better was and having-said If me you-accuse that a-choice
σοι ἔδωκα, εἰς αὖθις ὅταν διακονῶ, ἑτέρῳ χρήσῃ
to-you I-gave for another-time when I-serve another-kind you-will-find
μοι διακόνῳ, ὁ μὲν δὴ Φεραύλας οὕτω διαδοὺς ᾗ
me servant — indeed then Pheraulas so having-distributed as
ἐτάχθη εὐθὺς ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐξέλασιν
he-had-been-ordered at-once took-care-of the(-things) for the riding-out
ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἕκαστα ἕξοι.
that as most-beautifully each-thing might-be
9 Ἡνίκα δ' ἡ ὑστεραία ἧκε, καθαρὰ μὲν ἦν πάντα πρὸ
When and the next-day came clean indeed was everything before
ἡμέρας, στοῖχοι δὲ εἱστήκεσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς
day ranks and stood on-this-side and on-that-side of-the

ὁδοῦ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἵστανται ᾗ ἂν βασιλεὺς μέλλῃ
road as also now still they-stand where — the-king is-to
ἐλαύνειν· ὧν ἐντὸς οὐδενὶ ἔστιν εἰσιέναι τῶν μὴ
ride of-which within for-no-one it-is-permitted to-go of-the(-ones) not
τετιμημένων· μαστιγοφόροι δὲ καθέστασαν οἳ ἔπαιον, εἴ
honored whip-bearers and were-stationed who struck if
τις ἐνοχλοίη. ἔστασαν δὲ πρῶτον μὲν τῶν δορυφόρων
anyone caused-trouble stood and first indeed of-the spear-bearers
εἰς τετρακισχιλίους ἔμπροσθεν τῶν πυλῶν εἰς τέτταρας,
about four-thousand in-front-of the gates in four(-deep)
δισχίλιοι δ' ἑκατέρωθεν τῶν πυλῶν.
two-thousand and on-each-side of-the gates
καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς δὲ πάντες παρῆσαν καταβεβηκότες ἀπὸ τῶν 10
and the horsemen and all were-present having-dismounted from the
ἵππων, καὶ διειρκότες τὰς χεῖρας διὰ τῶν κανδύων, ὥσπερ
horses and having-thrust the hands through the cloaks as
καὶ νῦν ἔτι διείρουσιν, ὅταν ὁρᾷ βασιλεύς. ἔστασαν δὲ
also now still they-thrust(-them) whenever sees(-them) the-king stood and
Πέρσαι μὲν ἐκ δεξιᾶς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
Persians indeed on right the and other allies on left
τῆς ὁδοῦ, καὶ τὰ ἅρματα ὡσαύτως τὰ ἡμίσεα ἑκατέρωθεν.
of-the road and the chariots likewise the halves on-each-side
ἐπεὶ δ' ἀνεπετάννυντο αἱ τοῦ βασιλείου πύλαι, πρῶτον 11
when and were-thrown-open the of-the palace gates first
μὲν ἤγοντο τῷ Διὶ ταῦροι πάγκαλοι εἰς τέτταρας καὶ
indeed were-led — for-Zeus bulls very-fine in four(-deep) and
οἷς τῶν ἄλλων θεῶν οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγοῦντο· πολὺ γὰρ
for-those of-the other gods the magi directed much for
οἴονται Πέρσαι χρῆναι τοῖς περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μᾶλλον
think Persians (one)-must the concerning the gods more
τεχνίταις χρῆσθαι ἢ περὶ τἆλλα.
craftsmen to-use than concerning the-rest

12 μετὰ δὲ τοὺς βοῦς ἵπποι ἤγοντο θῦμα τῷ Ἡλίῳ· μετὰ
after and the oxen horses were-led a-sacrifice — for-the-Sun after
δὲ τούτους ἐξήγετο ἅρμα λευκὸν χρυσόζυγον ἐστεμμένον
and these was-led-out a-chariot white with-golden-yoke garlanded
Διὸς ἱερόν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο Ἡλίου ἅρμα λευκόν, καὶ
of-Zeus sacred after and this of-the-Sun a-chariot white also
τοῦτο ἐστεμμένον ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο
this garlanded as the(-one) before after and this
ἄλλο τρίτον ἅρμα ἐξήγετο, φοινικίσι καταπεπταμένοι
another third chariot was-led-out with-crimson covered
οἱ ἵπποι, καὶ πῦρ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ ἐπ' ἐσχάρας μεγάλης
the horses and fire behind it on a-hearth great
ἄνδρες εἵποντο φέροντες.
men followed carrying

13 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἤδη αὐτὸς ἐκ τῶν πυλῶν προυφαίνετο ὁ
after and these now himself from the gates came-forth —
Κῦρος ἐφ' ἅρματος ὀρθὴν ἔχων τὴν τιάραν καὶ χιτῶνα
Cyrus on a-chariot upright having the tiara and a-tunic
πορφυροῦν μεσόλευκον, ἄλλῳ δ' οὐκ ἔξεστι μεσόλευκον
purple shot-with-white to-another but not it-is-permitted shot-with-white
ἔχειν, καὶ περὶ τοῖς σκέλεσιν ἀναξυρίδας ὑσγινοβαφεῖς,
to-have and about the legs trousers scarlet-dyed
καὶ κάνδυν ὁλοπόρφυρον. εἶχε δὲ καὶ διάδημα περὶ τῇ
and a-cloak all-purple he-had and also a-diadem about the
τιάρᾳ· καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς δὲ αὐτοῦ τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο σημεῖον
tiara and the kinsmen and his the same this mark
εἶχον, καὶ νῦν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔχουσι.
had and now the same this they-have

14 τὰς δὲ χεῖρας ἔξω τῶν χειρίδων εἶχε. παρωχεῖτο δὲ
the and hands outside the sleeves he-had rode-beside and
αὐτῷ ἡνίοχος μέγας μέν, μείων δ' ἐκείνου εἴτε καὶ τῷ
him a-charioteer tall indeed smaller but than-him whether also in-the

ὄντι εἴτε καὶ ὁπωσοῦν· μείζων δ' ἐφάνη πολὺ Κῦρος.
reality or also in-whatever-way taller and appeared much Cyrus
ἰδόντες δὲ πάντες προσεκύνησαν, εἴτε καὶ ἄρξαι τινὲς
having-seen and all did-obeisance whether also to-begin some
κεκελευσμένοι εἴτε καὶ ἐκπλαγέντες τῇ παρασκευῇ καὶ
having-been-ordered or also astounded by-the display and
τῷ δόξαι μέγαν τε καὶ καλὸν φανῆναι τὸν Κῦρον.
by-the seeming great both and handsome to-appear — Cyrus
πρόσθεν δὲ Περσῶν οὐδεὶς Κῦρον προσεκύνει.
before and of-Persians no-one to-Cyrus did-obeisance
ἐπεὶ δὲ προῄει τὸ τοῦ Κύρου ἅρμα, προηγοῦντο μὲν 15
when and went-forward the — of-Cyrus chariot led-the-way indeed
οἱ τετρακισχίλιοι δορυφόροι, παρείποντο δὲ οἱ δισχίλιοι
the four-thousand spear-bearers followed-beside and the two-thousand
ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ ἅρματος· ἐφείποντο δὲ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν
on-each-side of-the chariot followed and the(-men) about him
σκηπτοῦχοι ἐφ' ἵππων κεκοσμημένοι σὺν τοῖς παλτοῖς
scepter-bearers on horses adorned with the javelins
ἀμφὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους.
about the three-hundred
οἱ δ' αὖ τῷ Κύρῳ τρεφόμενοι ἵπποι παρήγοντο 16
the and in-turn — for-Cyrus being-kept horses were-led-beside
χρυσοχάλινοι, ῥαβδωτοῖς ἱματίοις καταπεπταμένοι, ἀμφὶ
with-golden-bridles with-striped cloths covered about
τοὺς διακοσίους· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις δισχίλιοι ξυστοφόροι· ἐπὶ
the two-hundred after and these two-thousand lance-bearers after
δὲ τούτοις ἱππεῖς οἱ πρῶτοι γενόμενοι μύριοι, εἰς
and these horsemen the(-ones) first having-become ten-thousand in
ἑκατὸν πανταχῇ τεταγμένοι. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Χρυσάντας.
hundred every-way drawn-up led and them Chrysantas

17 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις μύριοι ἄλλοι Περσῶν ἱππεῖς τεταγμένοι
after and these ten-thousand other of-Persians horsemen drawn-up
ὡσαύτως, ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Ὑστάσπας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις
likewise led and them Hystaspas after and these
ἄλλοι μύριοι ὡσαύτως, ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Δατάμας·
other ten-thousand likewise led and them Datamas
18 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἄλλοι μύριοι, ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Γαδάτας·
after and these other ten-thousand led and them Gadatas
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Μῆδοι ἱππεῖς, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Ἀρμένιοι,
after and these Median horsemen after and these Armenians
μετὰ δὲ τούτους Ὑρκάνιοι, μετὰ δὲ τούτους Καδούσιοι,
after and these Hyrcanians after and these Cadusians
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Σάκαι· μετὰ δὲ τοὺς ἱππέας ἅρματα ἐπὶ
after and these Sacians after and the horsemen chariots on
τεττάρων τεταγμένα, ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτῶν Ἀρταβάτας Πέρσης.
four(-deep) drawn-up led and them Artabatas a-Persian
19 Πορευομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ πάμπολλοι ἄνθρωποι παρείποντο
Marching and him very-many men followed-beside
ἔξω τῶν σημείων, δεόμενοι Κύρου ἄλλος ἄλλης πράξεως.
outside the standards petitioning Cyrus one for-another matter
πέμψας οὖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς τῶν σκηπτούχων τινάς, οἳ
having-sent then to them of-the scepter-bearers some who
παρείποντο αὐτῷ τρεῖς ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ ἅρματος αὐτοῦ
followed-beside him three on-each-side of-the chariot very
τούτου ἕνεκα τοῦ διαγγέλλειν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν αὐτοῖς,
of-this for-the-sake the carrying-messages he-ordered to-tell them
εἴ τίς τι αὐτοῦ δέοιτο, διδάσκειν τῶν ἱππάρχων
if anyone anything of-him should-need to-inform of-the cavalry-commanders
τινὰ ὅ τι τις βούλοιτο, ἐκείνους δ' ἔφη πρὸς αὐτὸν
some-one what ever anyone might-wish those and he-said to him

ἐρεῖν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες εὐθὺς κατὰ τοὺς ἱππέας
would-speak they indeed then departing at-once to the horsemen
ἐπορεύοντο καὶ ἐβουλεύοντο τίνι ἕκαστος προσίοι.
went and deliberated to-whom each should-go
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὓς ἐβούλετο μάλιστα θεραπεύεσθαι τῶν 20
— and Cyrus whom he-wished most to-be-courted of-the
φίλων ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων, τούτους πέμπων τινὰ πρὸς
friends by the people these sending someone to
αὑτὸν ἐκάλει καθ' ἕνα ἕκαστον καὶ ἔλεγεν αὐτοῖς οὕτως·
himself he-summoned one-by one each and said to-them so
Ἤν τις ὑμᾶς διδάσκῃ τι τούτων τῶν παρεπομένων,
If anyone you informs anything of-these the(-men) following(-us)
ὃς μὲν ἂν μηδὲν δοκῇ ὑμῖν λέγειν, μὴ προσέχετε αὐτῷ
whoever indeed — nothing seems to-you to-say not turn to-him
τὸν νοῦν· ὃς δ' ἂν δικαίων δεῖσθαι δοκῇ, εἰσαγγέλλετε
the mind whoever but — just(-things) to-need seems report(-him)
πρὸς ἐμέ, ἵνα κοινῇ βουλευόμενοι διαπράττωμεν αὐτοῖς.
to me so-that in-common deliberating we-may-accomplish(-it) for-them
οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι, ἐπεὶ καλέσειεν, ἀνὰ κράτος ἐλαύνοντες 21
the indeed then others when he-summoned at full-speed riding
ὑπήκουον, συναύξοντες τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ
obeyed increasing-together the rule — for-Cyrus and
ἐνδεικνύμενοι ὅτι σφόδρα πείθοιντο· Δαϊφέρνης δέ τις
showing that strongly they-obeyed Daiphernes but a-certain
ἦν σολοικότερος ἄνθρωπος τῷ τρόπῳ, ὃς ᾤετο, εἰ μὴ
was rather-boorish a-man in-the manner who thought if not
ταχὺ ὑπακούοι, ἐλευθερώτερος ἂν φαίνεσθαι.
quickly he-obeyed more-independent — to-appear
αἰσθόμενος οὖν ὁ Κῦρος τοῦτο, πρὶν προσελθεῖν αὐτὸν 22
having-perceived then — Cyrus this before to-approach him
καὶ διαλεχθῆναι αὐτῷ ὑποπέμψας τινὰ τῶν σκηπτούχων
and to-converse with-him having-sent-secretly one of-the scepter-bearers

εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐδὲν ἔτι δέοιτο· καὶ
to-say he-ordered to him that nothing any-longer he-needed and
τὸ λοιπὸν οὐκ ἐκάλει.
the rest(-of-the-time) not he-summoned(-him)

23 Ὡς δ' ὁ ὕστερον κληθεὶς αὐτοῦ πρότερος αὐτῷ
When and the(-man) later summoned than-him earlier to-him
προσήλασεν, ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἵππον αὐτῷ ἔδωκε τῶν
rode-up — Cyrus also a-horse to-him he-gave of-the(-ones)
παρεπομένων καὶ ἐκέλευσε τῶν σκηπτούχων τινὰ
being-led-beside and he-ordered of-the scepter-bearers one
συναπάγειν αὐτῷ ὅποι κελεύσειε. τοῖς δὲ ἰδοῦσιν
to-lead(-it)-along for-him wherever he-should-bid to-the(-men) and having-seen
ἔντιμόν τι τοῦτο ἔδοξεν εἶναι, καὶ πολὺ πλείονες ἐκ
honorable something this seemed to-be and much more from
τούτου αὐτὸν ἐθεράπευον ἀνθρώπων.
this him courted of-men

24 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὰ τεμένη, ἔθυσαν τῷ Διὶ
When and they-arrived at the precincts they-sacrificed — to-Zeus
καὶ ὡλοκαύτησαν τοὺς ταύρους· ἔπειτα τῷ Ἡλίῳ καὶ
and burned-whole the bulls then — to-the-Sun and
ὡλοκαύτησαν τοὺς ἵππους· ἔπειτα Γῇ σφάξαντες
burned-whole the horses then to-Earth having-slaughtered(-victims)
ὡς ἐξηγήσαντο οἱ μάγοι ἐποίησαν· ἔπειτα δὲ ἥρωσι
as directed the magi they-did then and to-heroes
τοῖς Συρίαν ἔχουσι.
the(-ones) Syria holding

25 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα καλοῦ ὄντος τοῦ χωρίου ἔδειξε τέρμα
after and these(-things) beautiful being the place he-showed a-goal
ὡς ἐπὶ πέντε σταδίων, καὶ εἶπε κατὰ φῦλα ἀνὰ κράτος
about over five stades and told by tribes at full-speed
ἐνταῦθα ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἵππους. σὺν μὲν οὖν τοῖς Πέρσαις

αὐτὸς ἤλασε καὶ ἐνίκα πολύ· μάλιστα γὰρ ἐμεμελήκει
himself rode and won by-far most for had-been-a-care
αὐτῷ ἱππικῆς· Μήδων δὲ Ἀρτάβαζος ἐνίκα· Κῦρος γὰρ
to-him horsemanship of-Medes and Artabazus won Cyrus for
αὐτῷ τὸν ἵππον ἐδεδώκει· Σύρων δὲ τῶν ἀποστάντων
to-him the horse had-given of-Syrians and of-the(-ones) having-revolted
Γαδάτας· Ἀρμενίων δὲ Τιγράνης· Ὑρκανίων δὲ ὁ ὑὸς τοῦ
Gadatas of-Armenians and Tigranes of-Hyrcanians and the son of-the
ἱππάρχου· Σακῶν δὲ ἰδιώτης ἀνὴρ ἀπέλιπεν ἄρα τῷ
cavalry-commander of-Sacians and a-private man left-behind then with-the
ἵππῳ τοὺς ἄλλους ἵππους ἐγγὺς τῷ ἡμίσει τοῦ δρόμου.
horse the other horses nearly by-the half of-the course
ἔνθα δὴ λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος ἐρέσθαι τὸν νεανίσκον εἰ 26
then indeed is-said — Cyrus to-have-asked the young-man whether
δέξαιτ' ἂν βασιλείαν ἀντὶ τοῦ ἵππου. τὸν δ' ἀποκρίνασθαι
he-would-accept — a-kingdom in-exchange-for the horse he and to-have-answered
ὅτι Βασιλείαν μὲν οὐκ ἂν δεξαίμην, χάριν δὲ ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ
that A-kingdom indeed not — I-would-accept gratitude but with-a-man good
καταθέσθαι δεξαίμην ἄν.
to-lay-up I-would-accept —
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε, Καὶ μὴν ἐγὼ δεῖξαί σοι θέλω ἔνθα 27
and — Cyrus said And indeed I to-show to-you wish where
κἂν μύων βάλῃς, οὐκ ἂν ἁμάρτοις ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ.
even-if with-eyes-shut you-throw not — you-would-miss a-man good
Πάντως τοίνυν, ὁ Σάκας ἔφη, δεῖξόν μοι· ὡς βαλῶ
By-all-means then the Sacian said show me as I-shall-throw
γε ταύτῃ τῇ βώλῳ, ἔφη ἀνελόμενος.
at-least with-this the clod he-said having-picked-up(-it)
καὶ ὁ μὲν Κῦρος δείκνυσιν αὐτῷ ὅπου ἦσαν πλεῖστοι τῶν 28
and — indeed Cyrus shows him where were most of-the
φίλων· ὃ δὲ καταμύων ἵησι τῇ βώλῳ καὶ παρελαύνοντος
friends he and with-eyes-shut throws the clod and riding-by

Φεραύλα τυγχάνει· ἔτυχε γὰρ ὁ Φεραύλας παραγγέλλων
Pheraulas hits(-him) happened for — Pheraulas passing-on
τι τακτὸς παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου· βληθεὶς δὲ οὐδὲ
something by-order from — Cyrus having-been-struck and not-even
μετεστράφη, ἀλλ᾽ ᾤχετο ἐφ᾽ ὅπερ ἐτάχθη.
he-turned-round but went-off to what-very he-had-been-ordered

29 ἀναβλέψας δὲ ὁ Σάκας ἐρωτᾷ τίνος ἔτυχεν. Οὐ μὰ τὸν
having-looked-up and the Sacian asks whom he-hit Not by —
Δί᾽, ἔφη, οὐδενὸς τῶν παρόντων. Ἀλλ᾽ οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη
Zeus he-said none of-the(-men) present But not however said
ὁ νεανίσκος, τῶν γε ἀπόντων. Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽ ἔφη ὁ
the young-man of-the at-least absent Yes by Zeus said —
Κῦρος, σύγε ἐκείνου τοῦ παρὰ τὰ ἅρματα ταχὺ
Cyrus you-at-least(-hit) that-man the(-one) by the chariots quickly
ἐλαύνοντος τὸν ἵππον. Καὶ πῶς, ἔφη, οὐδὲ μεταστρέφεται;
riding the horse And how he-said not-even does-he-turn-round

30 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη, Μαινόμενος γάρ τίς ἐστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν.
and — Cyrus said Mad for someone is as it-seems
ἀκούσας ὁ νεανίσκος ᾤχετο σκεψόμενος τίς εἴη· καὶ
having-heard the young-man went-off to-see who he-might-be and
εὑρίσκει τὸν Φεραύλαν γῆς τε κατάπλεων τὸ γένειον
finds — Pheraulas with-earth both full the chin
καὶ αἵματος· ἔρρει γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐκ τῆς ῥινὸς βληθέντι.
and with-blood flowed for for-him from the nose having-been-struck

31 ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθεν, ἤρετο αὐτὸν εἰ βληθείη. ὃ δὲ
when and he-approached he-asked him if he-had-been-struck he and
ἀπεκρίνατο, Ὡς ὁρᾷς. Δίδωμι τοίνυν σοι, ἔφη, τοῦτον
answered As you-see I-give then to-you he-said this
τὸν ἵππον. ὃ δ᾽ ἐπήρετο, Ἀντὶ τοῦ; ἐκ τούτου δὴ
the horse he and asked In-return-for what from this indeed

διηγεῖτο ὁ Σάκας τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ τέλος εἶπε, Καὶ οἶμαί
related the Sacian the matter and at-last said And I-think
γε οὐχ ἡμαρτηκέναι ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ.
at-least not to-have-missed a-man good
καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπεν, Ἀλλὰ πλουσιωτέρῳ μὲν ἄν, εἰ 32
and — Pheraulas said But to-a-richer(-man) indeed — if
ἐσωφρόνεις, ἢ ἐμοὶ ἐδίδους· νῦν δὲ κἀγὼ δέξομαι.
you-were-wise than to-me you-would-give(-it) now but I-too shall-accept(-it)
ἐπεύχομαι δέ, ἔφη, τοῖς θεοῖς, οἵπερ με ἐποίησαν βληθῆναι
I-pray and he-said to-the gods who-very me caused to-be-struck
ὑπὸ σοῦ, δοῦναί μοι ποιῆσαι μὴ μεταμέλειν σοι τῆς
by you to-grant to-me to-cause not to-regret for-you of-the
ἐμῆς δωρεᾶς. καὶ νῦν μέν, ἔφη, ἀπέλα, ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ
my gift and now indeed he-said ride-off having-mounted on
τὸν ἐμὸν ἵππον· αὖθις δ' ἐγὼ παρέσομαι πρὸς σέ. οἳ
the my horse another-time and I shall-be-present to you they
μὲν δὴ οὕτω διηλλάξαντο. Καδουσίων δὲ ἐνίκα Ῥαθίνης.
indeed then so parted of-Cadusians and won Rhathines
ἀφίει δὲ καὶ τὰ ἅρματα καθ' ἕκαστον· τοῖς δὲ νικῶσι 33
he-let-go and also the chariots by each(-kind) to-the and victors
πᾶσιν ἐδίδου βοῦς τε, ὅπως ἂν θύσαντες ἑστιῷντο, καὶ
to-all he-gave oxen both that — having-sacrificed they-might-feast and
ἐκπώματα. τὸν μὲν οὖν βοῦν ἔλαβε καὶ αὐτὸς τὸ νικητήριον·
cups the indeed then ox received also himself the victory-prize
τῶν δ' ἐκπωμάτων τὸ αὑτοῦ μέρος Φεραύλᾳ ἔδωκεν, ὅτι
of-the but cups the his-own share to-Pheraulas he-gave because
καλῶς ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ τὴν ἐκ τοῦ βασιλείου ἔλασιν διατάξαι.
well he-seemed to-him the from the palace procession to-have-arranged
οὕτω δὴ τότε ὑπὸ Κύρου κατασταθεῖσα ἡ βασιλέως 34
so indeed then by Cyrus established the of-the-king
ἔλασις οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει, πλὴν τὰ ἱερὰ
procession so still also now continues except the sacrifices

ἄπεστιν, ὅταν μὴ θύῃ. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα τέλος εἶχεν,
are-absent when not he-sacrifices when and these(-things) end had
ἀφικνοῦνται πάλιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν, οἷς
they-arrive back into the city and quartered(-themselves) to-whom
μὲν ἐδόθησαν οἰκίαι, κατ᾽ οἰκίας, οἷς δὲ μή, ἐν τάξει.
indeed had-been-given houses in houses to-whom and not in rank
35 Καλέσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας τὸν Σάκαν τὸν δόντα
Having-invited and also — Pheraulas the Sacian the(-one) having-given
τὸν ἵππον ἐξένιζε, καὶ τἆλλα τε παρεῖχεν ἔκπλεω,
the horse entertained(-him) and the-rest both he-provided in-abundance
καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐδεδειπνήκεσαν, τὰ ἐκπώματα αὐτῷ ἃ ἔλαβε
and when they-had-dined the cups to-him which he-had-received
παρὰ Κύρου ἐμπιμπλὰς προύπινε καὶ ἐδωρεῖτο.
from Cyrus filling he-drank-to(-him) and presented(-them)
36 καὶ ὁ Σάκας ὁρῶν πολλὴν μὲν καὶ καλὴν στρωμνήν, πολλὴν
and the Sacian seeing much indeed and fine bedding much
δὲ καὶ καλὴν κατασκευήν, καὶ οἰκέτας δὲ πολλούς, Εἰπέ
and and fine furniture and servants and many Tell
μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Φεραύλα, ἦ καὶ οἴκοι τῶν πλουσίων ἦσθα;
me he-said O Pheraulas truly also at-home of-the rich were-you
37 καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπε, Ποίων πλουσίων; τῶν μὲν
and — Pheraulas said What-sort-of rich of-the(-men) indeed
οὖν σαφῶς ἀποχειροβιώτων. ἐμὲ γάρ τοι ὁ πατὴρ τὴν
then clearly living-by-handiwork me for you-know the father the
μὲν τῶν παίδων παιδείαν γλίσχρως αὐτὸς ἐργαζόμενος
indeed of-the boys education scantily himself working
καὶ τρέφων ἐπαίδευεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ μειράκιον ἐγενόμην,
and supporting(-me) educated when and a-youth I-became
οὐ δυνάμενος τρέφειν ἀργόν, εἰς ἀγρὸν ἀπαγαγὼν
not being-able to-support(-me) idle to field having-taken(-me)
ἐκέλευσεν ἐργάζεσθαι.
he-bade(-me) to-work

ἔνθα δὴ ἐγὼ ἀντέτρεφον ἐκεῖνον, ἕως ἔζη, αὐτὸς σκάπτων 38
there indeed I supported-in-turn him while he-lived myself digging
καὶ σπείρων καὶ μάλα μικρὸν γῆδιον, οὐ μέντοι πονηρόν
and sowing even very small plot-of-land not however bad
γε, ἀλλὰ πάντων δικαιότατον· ὅ τι γὰρ λάβοι σπέρμα,
at-least but of-all most-just what ever for it-received seed
καλῶς καὶ δικαίως ἀπεδίδου αὐτό τε καὶ τόκον οὐδέν
well and justly it-returned it(-back) both and interest not
τι πολύν· ἤδη δέ ποτε ὑπὸ γενναιότητος καὶ διπλάσια
at-all much already and sometimes from nobleness also double
ἀπέδωκεν ὧν ἔλαβεν. οἴκοι μὲν οὖν ἔγωγε οὕτως ἔζων·
returned of-what it-received at-home indeed then I-at-least so lived
νῦν δὲ ταῦτα πάντα ἃ ὁρᾷς Κῦρός μοι ἔδωκε.
now and these(-things) all which you-see Cyrus to-me gave
καὶ ὁ Σάκας εἶπεν, Ὦ μακάριε σὺ τά τε ἄλλα καὶ 39
and the Sacian said O blessed(-man) you the both other(-things) and
αὐτὸ τοῦτο ὅτι ἐκ πένητος πλούσιος γεγένησαι· πολὺ
very this that from poor rich you-have-become much
γὰρ οἶομαί σε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἥδιον πλουτεῖν ὅτι
for I-think you also because-of this more-pleasantly to-be-rich that
πεινήσας χρημάτων ἐπλούτησας.
having-hungered for-money you-became-rich
καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπεν, Ἦ γὰρ οὕτως, ὦ Σάκα, 40
and — Pheraulas said Truly for so O Sacian
ὑπολαμβάνεις ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν τοσούτῳ ἥδιον ζῶ ὅσῳ
do-you-suppose that I now so-much more-pleasantly live as-much-as
πλείω κέκτημαι; οὐκ οἶσθα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐσθίω μὲν καὶ πίνω
more I-have-acquired not you-know he-said that I-eat indeed and drink
καὶ καθεύδω οὐδ' ὁτιοῦν νῦν ἥδιον ἢ τότε ὅτε
and sleep not-even at-all now more-pleasantly than then when
πένης ἦν. ὅτι δὲ ταῦτα πολλά ἐστι, τοσοῦτον κερδαίνω,
poor I-was that and these(-things) many are so-much I-gain

ὅσον πλείω μὲν φυλάττειν δεῖ, πλείω δὲ ἄλλοις
as-much-as more indeed to-guard (one)-must more and to-others
διανέμειν, πλειόνων δὲ ἐπιμελούμενον πράγματα ἔχειν.
to-distribute of-more and taking-care troubles to-have
41 νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἐμὲ πολλοὶ μὲν οἰκέται σῖτον αἰτοῦσι,
now for indeed me many indeed servants food ask
πολλοὶ δὲ πιεῖν, πολλοὶ δὲ ἱμάτια· οἳ δὲ ἰατρῶν
many and to-drink many and cloaks others and doctors
δέονται· ἥκει δέ τις ἢ τῶν προβάτων λελυκωμένα
need comes and someone either of-the sheep wolf-torn
φέρων ἢ τῶν βοῶν κατακεκρημνισμένα ἢ νόσον φάσκων
bringing or of-the oxen fallen-over-a-cliff or disease claiming
ἐμπεπτωκέναι τοῖς κτήνεσιν· ὥστε μοι δοκῶ, ἔφη ὁ
to-have-fallen-upon the flocks so-that to-me I-seem said —
Φεραύλας, νῦν διὰ τὸ πολλὰ ἔχειν πλείω λυπεῖσθαι
Pheraulas now because-of the many-things to-have more to-be-grieved
ἢ πρόσθεν διὰ τὸ ὀλίγα ἔχειν.
than before because-of the few-things to-have
42 καὶ ὁ Σάκας, Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη, ὅταν σῶα ᾖ,
and the Sacian But yes by Zeus he-said whenever safe they-are
πολλὰ ὁρῶν πολλαπλάσια ἐμοῦ εὐφραίνῃ. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας
many-things seeing many-times-more than-I you-rejoice and — Pheraulas
εἶπεν, Οὔτοι, ὦ Σάκα, οὕτως ἡδύ ἐστι τὸ ἔχειν χρήματα
said Not-indeed O Sacian so pleasant is the having money
ὡς ἀνιαρὸν τὸ ἀποβάλλειν. γνώσῃ δ᾽ ὅτι ἐγὼ ἀληθῆ
as painful the losing(-it) you-will-know and that I true-things
λέγω· τῶν μὲν γὰρ πλουτούντων οὐδεὶς ἀναγκάζεται ὑφ᾽
say of-the indeed for rich(-men) no-one is-compelled by
ἡδονῆς ἀγρυπνεῖν, τῶν δὲ ἀποβαλόντων τι ὄψει
pleasure to-stay-awake of-the(-ones) but having-lost anything you-will-see
οὐδένα δυνάμενον καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης.
no-one able to-sleep from grief

Μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Σάκας, οὐδέ γε τῶν λαμβανόντων 43
No-by Zeus said the Sacian nor at-least of-the(-men) receiving
τι νυστάζοντα οὐδένα ἂν ἴδοις ὑφ᾽ ἡδονῆς.
anything dozing anyone — would-you-see from pleasure
Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις· εἰ γάρ τοι τὸ ἔχειν οὕτως ὥσπερ τὸ 44
True-things he-said you-say if for you-know the having so as the
λαμβάνειν ἡδὺ ἦν, πολὺ ἂν διέφερον εὐδαιμονίᾳ οἱ πλούσιοι
receiving pleasant were much — would-differ in-happiness the rich
τῶν πενήτων. καὶ ἀνάγκη δέ τοί ἐστιν, ἔφη, ὦ Σάκα,
from-the poor and necessity and you-know is he-said O Sacian
τὸν πολλὰ ἔχοντα πολλὰ καὶ δαπανᾶν καὶ εἰς θεοὺς
the(-one) many-things having many-things also to-spend both on gods
καὶ εἰς φίλους καὶ εἰς ξένους· ὅστις οὖν ἰσχυρῶς χρήμασιν
and on friends and on strangers whoever then strongly in-money
ἥδεται, εὖ ἴσθι τοῦτον καὶ δαπανῶντα ἰσχυρῶς ἀνιᾶσθαι.
delights well know this(-man) also spending strongly to-be-pained
Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Σάκας· ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐγὼ τούτων εἰμί, 45
Yes by Zeus said the Sacian but not I of-these am
ἀλλὰ καὶ εὐδαιμονίαν τοῦτο νομίζω τὸ πολλὰ ἔχοντα
but also happiness this I-think the many-things having
πολλὰ καὶ δαπανᾶν.
many-things also to-spend
Τί οὖν, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὁ Φεραύλας, οὐχὶ σύγε 46
Why then he-said before the gods — Pheraulas not you-at-least
αὐτίκα μάλα εὐδαίμων ἐγένου καὶ ἐμὲ εὐδαίμονα ἐποίησας;
at-once very happy became and me happy made
λαβὼν γάρ, ἔφη, ταῦτα πάντα κέκτησο, καὶ χρῶ
having-taken for he-said these(-things) all possess(-them) and use(-them)
ὅπως βούλει αὐτοῖς· ἐμὲ δὲ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ὥσπερ ξένον
as you-wish them me and in-nothing other than as a-guest

τρέφε, καὶ ἔτι εὐτελέστερον ἢ ξένον· ἀρκέσει γάρ μοι
feed and even more-cheaply than a-guest it-will-suffice for to-me
ὅ τι ἂν καὶ σὺ ἔχῃς τούτων μετέχειν.
what ever — also you have of-these to-share

47 Παίζεις, ἔφη ὁ Σάκας. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας ὀμόσας εἶπεν
You-jest said the Sacian and — Pheraulas having-sworn said
ἦ μὴν σπουδῇ λέγειν. καὶ ἄλλα γέ σοι, ὦ Σάκα,
truly indeed in-earnest to-speak and other(-things) at-least for-you O Sacian
προσδιαπράξομαι παρὰ Κύρου, μήτε θύρας τὰς Κύρου
I-shall-obtain-besides from Cyrus neither doors the of-Cyrus
θεραπεύειν μήτε στρατεύεσθαι· ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν πλουτῶν οἴκοι
to-attend nor to-go-on-campaign but you indeed being-rich at-home
μένε· ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσω καὶ ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ
stay I and these(-things) shall-do both for you and for
ἐμοῦ· καὶ ἐάν τι ἀγαθὸν προσλαμβάνω διὰ τὴν Κύρου
me and if anything good I-gain-besides through the of-Cyrus
θεραπείαν ἢ καὶ ἀπὸ στρατείας τινός, οἴσω πρὸς σέ, ἵνα
service or also from campaign some I-shall-bring to you so-that
ἔτι πλειόνων ἄρχῃς· μόνον, ἔφη, ἐμὲ ἀπόλυσον ταύτης
still more you-may-rule only he-said me release from-this
τῆς ἐπιμελείας· ἢν γὰρ ἐγὼ σχολὴν ἄγω ἀπὸ τούτων,
the care if for I leisure have from these(-things)
ἐμοί τέ σε οἶμαι πολλὰ καὶ Κύρῳ χρήσιμον ἔσεσθαι.
to-me both you I-think much also to-Cyrus useful to-be

48 τούτων οὕτω ῥηθέντων ταῦτα συνέθεντο καὶ ταῦτα
these(-things) so having-been-said these(-things) they-agreed and these(-things)
ἐποίουν. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡγεῖτο εὐδαίμων γεγενῆσθαι,
did and the-one indeed thought happy to-have-become
ὅτι πολλῶν ἦρχε χρημάτων· ὁ δ' αὖ ἐνόμιζε
because many he-ruled possessions the-other and in-turn thought

μακαριώτατος εἶναι, ὅτι ἐπίτροπον ἕξοι, σχολὴν
most-blessed to-be because a-steward he-would-have leisure
παρέχοντα πράττειν ὅ τι ἂν αὐτῷ ἡδὺ ᾖ.
providing to-do what ever — to-him pleasant might-be
Ἦν δὲ τοῦ Φεραύλα ὁ τρόπος φιλέταιρός τε καὶ 49
Was and — of-Pheraulas the character friendly both and
θεραπεύειν οὐδὲν ἡδὺ αὐτῷ οὕτως ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδ'
to-serve nothing pleasant to-him so seemed to-be nor
ὠφέλιμον ὡς ἀνθρώπους. καὶ γὰρ βέλτιστον πάντων τῶν
beneficial as men and for best of-all the
ζῴων ἡγεῖτο ἄνθρωπον εἶναι καὶ εὐχαριστότατον, ὅτι
creatures he-thought man to-be and most-grateful because
ἑώρα τούς τε ἐπαινουμένους ὑπό τινος ἀντεπαινοῦντας
he-saw the(-ones) both being-praised by anyone praising-in-return
τούτους προθύμως τοῖς τε χαριζομένοις πειρωμένους
these eagerly to-the(-ones) and doing-favors trying
ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι, καὶ οὓς γνοῖεν εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοντας, τούτοις
to-return-the-favor and whom they-knew well-disposed being to-these
ἀντευνοοῦντας, καὶ οὓς εἰδεῖεν φιλοῦντας αὐτούς,
being-well-disposed-in-return and whom they-knew loving them
τούτους μισεῖν οὐ δυναμένους, καὶ γονέας δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον
these to-hate not being-able and parents and much more
ἀντιθεραπεύειν πάντων τῶν ζῴων ἐθέλοντας καὶ ζῶντας καὶ
to-serve-in-return than-all the creatures willing both living and
τελευτήσαντας· τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα ζῷα καὶ ἀχαριστότερα
having-died the and other all creatures both more-ungrateful
καὶ ἀγνωμονέστερα ἀνθρώπων ἐγίγνωσκεν εἶναι.
and more-unfeeling than-men he-knew to-be
οὕτω δὴ ὅ τε Φεραύλας ὑπερήδετο ὅτι ἐξέσοιτο 50
so indeed — both Pheraulas was-overjoyed that it-would-be-possible
αὐτῷ ἀπαλλαγέντι τῆς τῶν ἄλλων κτημάτων ἐπιμελείας
for-him having-been-released from-the of-the other possessions care

ἀμφὶ τοὺς φίλους ἔχειν, ὅ τε Σάκας ὅτι ἔμελλε
about the friends to-be-busy the and Sacian that he-was-going
πολλὰ ἔχων πολλοῖς χρήσεσθαι. ἐφίλει δὲ ὁ μὲν Σάκας
many-things having many to-use(-them) loved and the indeed Sacian
τὸν Φεραύλαν, ὅτι προσέφερέ τι ἀεί· ὁ δὲ τὸν
— *Pheraulas because he-brought something always the-other and the*
Σάκαν, ὅτι παραλαμβάνειν πάντα ἤθελε καὶ ἀεὶ
Sacian because to-take-over everything he-was-willing and always
πλειόνων ἐπιμελούμενος οὐδὲν μᾶλλον αὐτῷ ἀσχολίαν
more taking-care-of nothing more to-him lack-of-leisure
παρεῖχε. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω διῆγον.
gave and these indeed then so lived

IV · THE VICTORY FEAST

At a victory feast Cyrus seats his guests by honor, letting the place be won or lost by conduct, and sends dishes to friends. Gobryas says Cyrus excels more in kindness than in generalship. Hystaspas asks why Chrysantas sits above him and learns that Chrysantas anticipates Cyrus' wishes; jokes follow on matchmaking, and Gobryas gives his daughter to Hystaspas. Cyrus gives gifts, sends the allies home except those who stay, distributes the Sardis treasure through the commanders, and shows his friends his wealth, saying it is theirs for any noble need.

1 Θύσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Κῦρος νικητήρια ἑστιῶν ἐκάλεσε
Having-sacrificed and also — Cyrus victory-offerings feasting he-invited
τῶν φίλων οἳ μάλιστ' αὐτὸν αὔξειν τε βουλόμενοι
of-the friends who most him to-exalt both wishing
φανεροὶ ἦσαν καὶ τιμῶντες εὐνοϊκώτατα. συνεκάλεσε δὲ
evident were and honoring most-loyally he-invited-together and

αὐτοῖς καὶ Ἀρτάβαζον τὸν Μῆδον καὶ Τιγράνην τὸν
with-them also Artabazus the Mede and Tigranes the
Ἀρμένιον καὶ τὸν Ὑρκάνιον ἵππαρχον καὶ Γωβρύαν.
Armenian and the Hyrcanian cavalry-commander and Gobryas
Γαδάτας δὲ τῶν σκηπτούχων ἦρχεν αὐτῷ, καὶ ᾗ ἐκεῖνος 2
Gadatas and of-the scepter-bearers was-chief for-him and as he
διεκόσμησεν ἡ πᾶσα ἔνδον δίαιτα καθειστήκει· καὶ
arranged the whole indoor living was-established and
ὁπότε μὲν συνδειπνοῖέν τινες, οὐκ ἐκάθιζε Γαδάτας, ἀλλ'
whenever indeed dined-together some not sat Gadatas but
ἐπεμελεῖτο· ὁπότε δὲ αὐτοὶ εἶεν, καὶ συνεδείπνει· ἥδετο
took-care whenever and themselves they-were also he-dined-with(-him) he-delighted
γὰρ αὐτῷ συνών· ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων πολλοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις
for him being-with in-return-for and these(-things) with-many and great(-gifts)
ἐτιμᾶτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Κύρου, διὰ δὲ Κῦρον καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων.
he-was-honored by — Cyrus because-of and Cyrus also by others
ὡς δ' ἦλθον οἱ κληθέντες ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον, οὐχ ὅπου 3
when and came the(-men) invited to the dinner not where
ἔτυχεν ἕκαστον ἐκάθιζεν, ἀλλ' ὃν μὲν μάλιστα ἐτίμα,
it-happened each he-seated but whom indeed most he-honored
παρὰ τὴν ἀριστερὰν χεῖρα, ὡς εὐεπιβουλευτοτέρας ταύτης
by the left hand as more-exposed-to-plots this
οὔσης ἢ τῆς δεξιᾶς, τὸν δὲ δεύτερον παρὰ τὴν δεξιάν,
being than the right the and second by the right
τὸν δὲ τρίτον πάλιν παρὰ τὴν ἀριστεράν, τὸν δὲ τέταρτον
the and third again by the left the and fourth
παρὰ τὴν δεξιάν· καὶ ἢν πλέονες ὦσιν, ὡσαύτως.
by the right and if more there-are likewise
σαφηνίζεσθαι δὲ ὡς ἕκαστον ἐτίμα διὰ τοῦτο ἐδόκει 4
to-make-clear and how each he-honored for this seemed
αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι, ὅτι ὅπου μὲν οἴονται ἄνθρωποι τὸν
to-him good to-be that where indeed think men the(-one)

κρατιστεύοντα μήτε κηρυχθήσεσθαι μήτε ἆθλα λήψεσθαι,
excelling neither to-be-proclaimed nor prizes to-receive
δῆλοί εἰσιν ἐνταῦθα οὐ φιλονίκως πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχοντες·
evident are there not competitively toward one-another being
ὅπου δὲ μάλιστα πλεονεκτῶν ὁ κράτιστος φαίνεται,
where but most getting-the-advantage the best appears
ἐνταῦθα προθυμότατα φανεροί εἰσιν ἀγωνιζόμενοι πάντες.
there most-eagerly evident are contending all
5 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δὲ οὕτως ἐσαφήνιζε μὲν τοὺς
and — Cyrus and so made-clear indeed the(-ones)
κρατιστεύοντας παρ' ἑαυτῷ, εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἐξ ἕδρας
excelling with himself at-once beginning from seat
καὶ παραστάσεως. οὐ μέντοι ἀθάνατον τὴν ταχθεῖσαν
and station-beside(-him) not however permanent the assigned
ἕδραν κατεστήσατο, ἀλλὰ νόμιμον ἐποιήσατο καὶ ἀγαθοῖς
seat he-established but customary he-made both by-good
ἔργοις προβῆναι εἰς τὴν τιμιωτέραν ἕδραν, καὶ εἴ τις
deeds to-advance to the more-honored seat and if anyone
ῥᾳδιουργοίη, ἀναχωρῆσαι εἰς τὴν ἀτιμοτέραν. τὸν δὲ
were-slack to-withdraw to the less-honored the(-man) and
πρωτεύοντα ἐν ἕδρᾳ ᾐσχύνετο μὴ οὐ πλεῖστα καὶ ἀγαθὰ
being-first in seat was-ashamed not — most and good(-things)
ἔχοντα παρ' ἑαυτοῦ φαίνεσθαι. καὶ ταῦτα δὲ ἐπὶ
having from him to-appear and these(-things) and in-the-time-of
Κύρου γενόμενα οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένοντα αἰσθανόμεθα.
Cyrus having-arisen so still also now continuing we-perceive
6 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνουν, ἐδόκει τῷ Γωβρύᾳ τὸ μὲν πολλὰ
When and they-were-dining it-seemed — to-Gobryas the indeed many
ἕκαστα εἶναι οὐδέν τι θαυμαστὸν παρ' ἀνδρὶ πολλῶν
each(-thing) to-be nothing at-all wonderful with a-man many
ἄρχοντι· τὸ δὲ τὸν Κῦρον οὕτω μεγάλα πράττοντα, εἴ τι
ruling the but — Cyrus so great(-things) doing if anything

ἡδὺ δόξειε λαβεῖν, μηδὲν τούτων μόνον καταδαπανᾶν,
pleasant he-seemed to-receive none of-these alone to-consume
ἀλλ᾽ ἔργον ἔχειν αὐτὸν δεόμενον τούτου κοινωνεῖν τοὺς
but trouble to-have him asking this to-share the(-men)
παρόντας, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀπόντων φίλων ἔστιν οἷς
present often and also of-the absent friends there-were to-whom
ἑώρα πέμποντα ταῦτα αὐτὸν οἷς ἡσθεὶς τύχοι·
he-saw sending these(-things) him with-which pleased he-happened(-to-be)
ὥστε ἐπεὶ ἐδεδειπνήκεσαν καὶ πάντα τὰ λοιπὰ πολλὰ 7
so-that when they-had-dined and all the rest many
ὄντα διεπεπόμφει ὁ Κῦρος ἀπὸ τῆς τραπέζης, εἶπεν
being had-sent-around — Cyrus from the table said
ἄρα ὁ Γωβρύας, Ἀλλ᾽, ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, πρόσθεν μὲν
then — Gobryas But I O Cyrus before indeed
ἡγούμην τούτῳ σε πλεῖστον διαφέρειν ἀνθρώπων τῷ
thought in-this you most to-excel of-men by-the
στρατηγικώτατον εἶναι· νῦν δὲ θεοὺς ὄμνυμι ἦ μὴν ἐμοὶ
most-generalship-skilled to-be now but gods I-swear truly indeed to-me
δοκεῖν πλέον σε διαφέρειν φιλανθρωπίᾳ ἢ στρατηγίᾳ.
to-seem more you to-excel in-kindness than in-generalship
Νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ ἐπιδείκνυμαι 8
By Zeus said — Cyrus and indeed then also I-display
τὰ ἔργα πολὺ ἥδιον φιλανθρωπίας ἢ στρατηγίας.
the deeds much more-gladly of-kindness than of-generalship
Πῶς δή; ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας. Ὅτι, ἔφη, τὰ μὲν κακῶς
How then said — Gobryas Because he-said the(-deeds) indeed ill
ποιοῦντα ἀνθρώπους δεῖ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, τὰ δὲ εὖ.
doing men (one)-must to-display the(-deeds) and well
ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἐπεὶ ὑπέπινον, ἤρετο ὁ Ὑστάσπας τὸν 9
after this indeed when they-were-drinking asked — Hystaspas —
Κῦρον, Ἆρ᾽ ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἀχθεσθείης μοι, εἴ σε
Cyrus Then — he-said O Cyrus would-you-be-annoyed with-me if you

ἐροίμην ὃ βούλομαί σου πυθέσθαι; Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ τοὺς
I-should-ask what I-wish of-you to-learn But yes by the
θεούς, ἔφη, τοὐναντίον τούτου ἀχθοίμην ἄν σοι, εἰ
gods he-said the-opposite of-this I-would-be-annoyed — with-you if
αἰσθοίμην σιωπῶντα ἃ βούλοιο ἐρέσθαι. Λέγε δή μοι,
I-perceived(-you) keeping-silent what you-wished to-ask Tell then me
ἔφη, ἤδη πώποτε καλέσαντός σου οὐκ ἦλθον; Εὐφήμει,
he-said already ever having-summoned you(-me) not did-I-come Hush
ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ἀλλ' ὑπακούων σχολῇ ὑπήκουσα; Οὐδὲ
said — Cyrus But obeying slowly did-I-obey Not-even
τοῦτο. Προσταχθὲν δέ τι ἤδη σοι οὐκ ἔπραξα; Οὐκ
this Being-ordered and anything ever by-you not did-I-do Not
αἰτιῶμαι, ἔφη. Ὃ δὲ πράττοιμι, ἔστιν ὅ τι πώποτε
I-blame(-you) he-said What and I-did is-there what ever ever
οὐ προθύμως ἢ οὐχ ἡδομένως πράττοντά με κατέγνως;
not eagerly or not gladly doing me you-have-convicted
Τοῦτο δὴ πάντων ἥκιστα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος.
This indeed of-all least said — Cyrus
10 Τίνος μὴν ἕνεκα, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ Κῦρε, Χρυσάνταν
Of-what indeed for-the-sake he-said before the gods O Cyrus Chrysantas
ἔγραψας ὥστε εἰς τὴν τιμιωτέραν ἐμοῦ χώραν ἱδρυθῆναι;
did-you-enroll so-that in the more-honored than-me place to-be-seated
Ἦ λέγω; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Πάντως, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας.
Truly shall-I-tell(-you) said — Cyrus By-all-means said — Hystaspas
Καὶ σὺ αὖ οὐκ ἀχθέσῃ μοι ἀκούων τἀληθῆ;
And you in-turn not will-be-annoyed with-me hearing the-truth
11 Ἡσθήσομαι μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ἢν εἰδῶ ὅτι οὐκ ἀδικοῦμαι.
I-shall-be-pleased indeed rather he-said if I-know that not I-am-wronged
Χρυσάντας τοίνυν, ἔφη, οὑτοσὶ πρῶτον μὲν οὐ κλῆσιν
Chrysantas then he-said this-man-here first indeed not summons
ἀνέμενεν, ἀλλὰ πρὶν καλεῖσθαι παρῆν τῶν ἡμετέρων
waited-for but before being-summoned was-present of-the our(-affairs)

ἕνεκα· ἔπειτα δὲ οὐ τὸ κελευόμενον μόνον, ἀλλὰ
for-the-sake then and not the(-thing) ordered only but
καὶ ὅ τι αὐτὸς γνοίη ἄμεινον εἶναι πεπραγμένον
also what ever himself he-judged better to-be done
ἡμῖν τοῦτο ἔπραττεν. ὁπότε δὲ εἰπεῖν τι δέοι
for-us this he-did whenever and to-say anything there-was-need
εἰς τοὺς συμμάχους, ἃ μὲν ἐμὲ ᾤετο πρέπειν λέγειν
to the allies what indeed me he-thought fitting to-say
ἐμοὶ συνεβούλευεν· ἃ δὲ ἐμὲ αἴσθοιτο βουλόμενον μὲν
to-me he-advised what but me he-perceived wishing indeed
εἰδέναι τοὺς συμμάχους, αὐτὸν δέ με αἰσχυνόμενον περὶ
to-know the allies myself but me being-ashamed about
ἐμαυτοῦ λέγειν, ταῦτα οὗτος λέγων ὡς ἑαυτοῦ γνώμην
myself to-say these(-things) this(-man) saying as his-own opinion
ἀπεφαίνετο· ὥστ᾽ ἔν γε τούτοις τί κωλύει αὐτὸν καὶ
declared so-that in at-least these(-things) what prevents him even
ἐμοῦ ἐμοὶ κρείττονα εἶναι; καὶ ἑαυτῷ μὲν ἀεί φησι
than-me to-me better to-be and for-himself indeed always he-says
πάντα τὰ παρόντα ἀρκεῖν, ἐμοὶ δὲ ἀεὶ φανερός ἐστι
all the present-things to-suffice for-me but always evident he-is
σκοπῶν τί ἂν προσγενόμενον ὀνήσειεν, ἐπί τε τοῖς
considering what — having-been-added would-benefit(-me) at both the
ἐμοῖς καλοῖς πολὺ μᾶλλον ἐμοῦ ἀγάλλεται καὶ ἥδεται.
my successes much more than-I exults and delights
πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Ὑστάσπας εἶπε, Νὴ τὴν Ἥραν, ὦ 12
to these(-things) — Hystaspas said By — Hera O
Κῦρε, ἥδομαί γε ταῦτά σε ἐρωτήσας. Τί μάλιστα;
Cyrus I-am-glad at-least these(-things) you having-asked Why most
ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι κἀγὼ πειράσομαι ταῦτα ποιεῖν·
said — Cyrus Because I-too shall-try these(-things) to-do
ἓν μόνον, ἔφη, ἀγνοῶ, πῶς ἂν εἴην δῆλος χαίρων
one-thing only he-said I-do-not-know how — I-could-be evident rejoicing

ἐπὶ τοῖς σοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· πότερον κροτεῖν δεῖ τὼ χεῖρε
at the your good-fortunes whether to-clap (one)-must the two-hands
ἢ γελᾶν ἢ τί ποιεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος εἶπεν, Ὀρχεῖσθαι
or to-laugh or what to-do and — Artabazus said To-dance
δεῖ τὸ Περσικόν. ἐπὶ τούτοις μὲν δὴ γέλως ἐγένετο.
(one)-must the Persian(-dance) at these(-things) indeed then laughter arose
13 Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ συμποσίου ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν
Going-on and the drinking-party — Cyrus — Gobryas
ἐπήρετο, Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, νῦν ἂν δοκεῖς ἥδιον
asked Tell me he-said O Gobryas now — do-you-seem more-gladly
τῶνδέ τῳ τὴν θυγατέρα δοῦναι ἢ ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον
of-these to-someone the daughter to-give than when the first(-time)
ἡμῖν συνεγένου; Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, κἀγὼ τἀληθῆ
with-us you-associated Therefore said — Gobryas I-too the-truth
λέγω; Νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὡς ψεύδους γε οὐδεμία
am-to-tell By Zeus said — Cyrus since a-lie at-least no
ἐρώτησις δεῖται. Εὖ τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἂν πολὺ
question needs Well then he-said know that now — much
ἥδιον. Ἦ καὶ ἔχοις ἄν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰπεῖν διότι;
more-gladly Truly also could-you — said — Cyrus to-say why
14 Ἔγωγε. Λέγε δή. Ὅτι τότε μὲν ἑώρων τοὺς πόνους
I-at-least Tell then Because then indeed I-saw the(-men) toils
καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους εὐθύμως αὐτοὺς φέροντας, νῦν δὲ ὁρῶ
and the dangers cheerfully them bearing now but I-see
αὐτοὺς τἀγαθὰ σωφρόνως φέροντας. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ὦ
them the-good-things temperately bearing seems and to-me O
Κῦρε, χαλεπώτερον εἶναι εὑρεῖν ἄνδρα τἀγαθὰ καλῶς
Cyrus harder to-be to-find a-man the-good-things well
φέροντα ἢ τὰ κακά· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ὕβριν τοῖς
bearing than the bad(-things) the(-ones) indeed for insolence in-the
πολλοῖς, τὰ δὲ σωφροσύνην τοῖς πᾶσιν ἐμποιεῖ.
many the(-others) but self-control in-the all implant

καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἤκουσας, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, Γωβρύου τὸ 15
and — Cyrus said Did-you-hear O Hystaspas of-Gobryas the
ῥῆμα; Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη· καὶ ἐὰν πολλὰ τοιαῦτά γε
saying Yes by Zeus he-said and if many such(-things) at-least
λέγῃ, πολὺ μᾶλλόν με τῆς θυγατρὸς μνηστῆρα λήψεται
he-says much more me of-the daughter as-a-suitor he-will-take
ἢ ἐὰν ἐκπώματα πολλά μοι ἐπιδεικνύῃ.
than if cups many to-me he-shows
Ἦ μήν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, πολλά γέ μοί ἐστι τοιαῦτα 16
Truly indeed said — Gobryas many at-least to-me are such(-sayings)
συγγεγραμμένα, ὧν ἐγώ σοι οὐ φθονήσω, ἢν τὴν
written-down which I to-you not shall-begrudge if the
θυγατέρα μου γυναῖκα λαμβάνῃς· τὰ δ᾽ ἐκπώματα, ἔφη,
daughter my as-wife you-take the and cups he-said
ἐπειδὴ οὐκ ἀνέχεσθαί μοι φαίνῃ, οὐκ οἶδ᾽ εἰ Χρυσάντᾳ
since not to-tolerate(-them) to-me you-seem not I-know whether to-Chrysantas
τουτῳῒ δῶ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὴν ἕδραν σου ὑφήρπασε.
this-one-here I-should-give since also the seat your he-snatched
Καὶ μὲν δή, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι 17
And indeed then said — Cyrus O Hystaspas and the others
δὲ οἱ παρόντες, ἢν ἐμοὶ λέγητε, ὅταν τις ὑμῶν
and the(-men) present if to-me you-tell when any of-you
γαμεῖν ἐπιχειρήσῃ, γνώσεσθε ὁποῖός τις κἀγὼ συνεργὸς
to-marry attempts you-will-know what-sort-of a I-too helper
ὑμῖν ἔσομαι.
to-you shall-be
καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν, Ἢν δέ τις ἐκδοῦναι βούληται 18
and — Gobryas said If and anyone to-give-in-marriage wishes
θυγατέρα, πρὸς τίνα δεῖ λέγειν; Πρὸς ἐμέ, ἔφη ὁ
a-daughter to whom (one)-must to-speak To me said —

Κῦρος, καὶ τοῦτο· πάνυ γάρ, ἔφη, δεινός εἰμι ταύτην
Cyrus also this very for he-said skilled I-am this
τὴν τέχνην. Ποίαν; ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας.
the art What-art said — Chrysantas
19 Τὸ γνῶναι ὁποῖος ἂν γάμος ἑκάστῳ συναρμόσαι. καὶ ὁ
The knowing what-sort-of — marriage for-each would-suit and —
Χρυσάντας ἔφη, Λέγε δὴ πρὸς τῶν θεῶν ποίαν τινὰ
Chrysantas said Tell then before the gods what-sort-of a
οἴει γυναῖκά μοι συναρμόσειν κάλλιστα.
do-you-think wife for-me to-suit best
20 Πρῶτον μέν, ἔφη, μικράν· μικρὸς γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς εἶ·
First indeed he-said a-small(-one) small for also yourself you-are
εἰ δὲ μεγάλην γαμεῖς, ἢν ποτε βούλῃ αὐτὴν ὀρθὴν
if but a-tall(-one) you-marry if ever you-wish her standing-upright
φιλῆσαι, προσάλλεσθαί σε δεήσει ὥσπερ τὰ κυνάρια.
to-kiss to-jump-up you it-will-be-necessary like the puppies
Τοῦτο μὲν δή, ἔφη, ὀρθῶς προνοεῖς· καὶ γὰρ οὐδ᾽
This indeed then he-said rightly you-foresee and for not-even
ὁπωστιοῦν ἁλτικός εἰμι.
in-any-way-at-all a-jumper I-am
21 Ἔπειτα δ᾽, ἔφη, σιμὴ ἄν σοι ἰσχυρῶς συμφέροι.
Then and he-said a-snub-nosed(-one) — to-you strongly would-suit
Πρὸς τί δὴ αὖ τοῦτο; Ὅτι, ἔφη, σὺ γρυπὸς εἶ·
For what then in-turn this Because he-said you hook-nosed are
πρὸς οὖν τὴν σιμότητα σάφ᾽ ἴσθι ὅτι ἡ γρυπότης
to then the snub-nosedness clearly know that the hook-nosedness
ἄριστ᾽ ἂν προσαρμόσειε. Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὡς καὶ τῷ
best — would-fit You-say you he-said that also to-the(-man)
εὖ δεδειπνηκότι ὥσπερ καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ἄδειπνος ἂν
well having-dined as also I now dinnerless(-one) —

συναρμόττοι. Ναὶ μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· τῶν μὲν γὰρ
would-suit Yes by Zeus said — Cyrus of-the indeed for
μεστῶν γρυπὴ ἡ γαστὴρ γίγνεται, τῶν δὲ ἀδείπνων σιμή.
full(-men) hooked the belly becomes of-the but dinnerless snub
καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας ἔφη, Ψυχρῷ δ᾽ ἄν, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, 22
and — Chrysantas said For-a-cold and — before the gods
βασιλεῖ ἔχοις ἂν εἰπεῖν ποία τις συνοίσει; ἐνταῦθα
king could-you — to-say what-sort-of a(-wife) will-suit there
μὲν δὴ ὅ τε Κῦρος ἐξεγέλασε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὁμοίως.
indeed then — both Cyrus burst-out-laughing and the others likewise
γελώντων δὲ ἅμα εἶπεν ὁ Ὑστάσπας, Πολύ γ᾽, 23
laughing and at-the-same-time said — Hystaspas Much at-least
ἔφη, μάλιστα τούτου σε, ὦ Κῦρε, ζηλῶ ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ.
he-said most for-this you O Cyrus I-envy in the kingship
Τίνος; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι δύνασαι καὶ ψυχρὸς ὢν
For-what said — Cyrus Because you-can even cold being
γέλωτα παρέχειν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν, Ἔπειτα οὐκ ἂν
laughter to-provide and — Cyrus said Then not —
πρίαιό γε παμπόλλου ὥστε σοὶ ταῦτ᾽ εἰρῆσθαι,
would-you-buy at-least at-a-great-price that by-you these(-things) to-have-been-said
καὶ ἀπαγγελθῆναι παρ᾽ ᾗ εὐδοκιμεῖν βούλει ὅτι
and to-have-been-reported with whom to-be-in-good-repute you-wish that
ἀστεῖος εἶ; καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω διεσκώπτετο.
witty you-are and these(-things) indeed then so were-bandied
Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τιγράνῃ μὲν ἐξήνεγκε γυναικεῖον 24
After and these(-things) for-Tigranes indeed he-brought-out women's
κόσμον, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τῇ γυναικὶ δοῦναι, ὅτι ἀνδρείως
finery and bade(-him) to-the wife to-give(-it) because bravely
συνεστρατεύετο τῷ ἀνδρί, Ἀρταβάζῳ δὲ χρυσοῦν ἔκπωμα,
she-campaigned-with the husband to-Artabazus and a-golden cup
τῷ δ᾽ Ὑρκανίῳ ἵππον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ
to-the and Hyrcanian a-horse and other many and fine(-things)

ἐδωρήσατο. Σοὶ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, δώσω ἄνδρα τῇ
he-presented To-you and he-said O Gobryas I-shall-give a-husband for-the
θυγατρί.
daughter

25 Οὐκοῦν ἐμέ, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας, δώσεις, ἵνα καὶ τὰ
Therefore me said — Hystaspas you-will-give so-that also the
συγγράμματα λάβω. Ἦ καὶ ἔστι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐσία
writings I-may-get Truly also is to-you said — Cyrus property
ἀξία τῶν τῆς παιδός; Νὴ Δί᾽, ἔφη, πολλαπλασίων
worthy of-the(-possessions) of-the girl By Zeus he-said many-times-greater
μὲν οὖν χρημάτων. Καὶ ποῦ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἔστι σοι αὕτη
indeed rather of-money And where said — Cyrus is to-you this
ἡ οὐσία; Ἐνταῦθα, ἔφη, ὅπουπερ καὶ σὺ κάθησαι φίλος ὢν
the property There he-said where-very also you sit friend being
ἐμοί. Ἀρκεῖ μοι, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκτείνας
to-me It-suffices me said — Gobryas and at-once having-stretched-out
τὴν δεξιὰν Δίδου, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· δέχομαι γάρ.
the right-hand Give(-him) he-said O Cyrus I-accept(-him) for

26 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν τὴν Ὑστάσπου δεξιὰν ἔδωκε τῷ
and — Cyrus having-taken the of-Hystaspas right-hand gave(-it) —
Γωβρύᾳ, ὃ δ᾽ ἐδέξατο. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ
to-Gobryas he and received(-it) after and this many and fine
ἔδωκε δῶρα τῷ Ὑστάσπᾳ, ὅπως τῇ παιδὶ πέμψειε·
gave gifts — to-Hystaspas so-that to-the girl he-might-send(-them)
Χρυσάνταν δ᾽ ἐφίλησε προσαγαγόμενος.
Chrysantas and he-kissed having-drawn(-him)-to(-himself)

27 καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος εἶπε, Μὰ Δί᾽, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐχ ὁμοίου
and — Artabazus said No-by Zeus he-said O Cyrus not of-like
γε χρυσοῦ ἐμοί τε τὸ ἔκπωμα δέδωκας καὶ Χρυσάντᾳ τὸ
at-least gold to-me both the cup you-have-given and to-Chrysantas the
δῶρον. Ἀλλὰ καὶ σοί, ἔφη, δώσω. ἐπήρετο ἐκεῖνος Πότε;
gift But also to-you he-said I-shall-give asked he When

Εἰς τριακοστόν, ἔφη, ἔτος. Ὡς ἀναμενοῦντος, ἔφη, καὶ
In-the thirtieth he-said year As going-to-wait he-said and
οὐκ ἀποθανουμένου οὕτω παρασκευάζου. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ
not going-to-die so prepare and then indeed then
οὕτως ἔληξεν ἡ σκηνή· ἐξανισταμένων δ' αὐτῶν ἐξανέστη
so ended the banquet rising and them rose
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ξυμπροὐπεμψεν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας.
also — Cyrus and escorted them to the doors
Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ τοὺς ἐθελουσίους συμμάχους γενομένους 28
On-the and next-day the volunteer allies having-become
ἀπέπεμπεν οἴκαδε ἑκάστους, πλὴν ὅσοι αὐτῶν οἰκεῖν
he-sent-away home each except as-many-as of-them to-dwell
ἐβούλοντο παρ' αὐτῷ· τούτοις δὲ χώραν τε καὶ οἴκους
wished with him to-these and country both and houses
ἔδωκε, καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἔχουσιν οἱ τῶν καταμεινάντων
he-gave and now still hold(-them) the of-the(-ones) having-stayed
τότε ἀπόγονοι· πλεῖστοι δ' εἰσὶ Μήδων καὶ Ὑρκανίων·
then descendants most and are of-Medes and Hyrcanians
τοῖς δ' ἀπιοῦσι δωρησάμενος πολλὰ καὶ ἀμέμπτους
to-the(-ones) and departing having-given-gifts many and blameless
ποιησάμενος καὶ ἄρχοντας καὶ στρατιώτας ἀπεπέμψατο.
having-made(-them) both officers and soldiers he-sent(-them)-away
ἐκ τούτου δὲ διέδωκε καὶ τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν στρατιώταις 29
after this and he-distributed also to-the about him soldiers
τὰ χρήματα ὅσα ἐκ Σάρδεων ἔλαβε· καὶ τοῖς μὲν
the money which from Sardis he-had-received and to-the indeed
μυριάρχοις καὶ τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ὑπηρέταις ἐξαίρετα
myriarchs and to-the about him attendants special(-portions)
ἐδίδου πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν ἑκάστῳ, τὰ δ' ἄλλα διένειμε·
he-gave according-to the merit to-each the and rest he-divided

καὶ τὸ μέρος ἑκάστῳ δοὺς τῶν μυριάρχων ἐπέτρεψεν
and the share to-each having-given of-the myriarchs he-entrusted
αὐτοῖς διανέμειν ὥσπερ αὐτὸς ἐκείνοις διένειμεν.
to-them to-distribute as he-himself to-them had-distributed
30 ἐδίδοσαν δὲ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα χρήματα ἕκαστος ἄρχων
gave and the indeed other money each officer
ἄρχοντας τοὺς ὑφ' ἑαυτῷ δοκιμάζων· τὰ δὲ
officers the(-ones) under himself examining the(-shares) and
τελευταῖα οἱ ἑξάδαρχοι τοὺς ὑφ' ἑαυτοῖς ἰδιώτας
last the leaders-of-six the(-ones) under themselves privates
δοκιμάσαντες πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν ἑκάστῳ ἐδίδοσαν· καὶ
having-examined according-to the merit to-each gave and
οὕτω πάντες εἰλήφεσαν τὸ δίκαιον μέρος.
so all had-received the just share
31 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰλήφεσαν τὰ τότε δοθέντα, οἳ μέν τινες
when and they-had-received the(-things) then given those indeed some
ἔλεγον περὶ τοῦ Κύρου τοιάδε· Ἦπου αὐτός γε πολλὰ
said about — Cyrus as-follows Surely himself at-least many-things
ἔχει, ὅπου γε καὶ ἡμῶν ἑκάστῳ τοσαῦτα δέδωκεν· οἳ
has where at-least also of-us to-each so-much he-has-given those
δέ τινες αὐτῶν ἔλεγον, Ποῖα πολλὰ ἔχει; οὐχ ὁ
and some of-them said What-sort-of many-things has(-he) not the
Κύρου τρόπος τοιοῦτος οἷος χρηματίζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ διδοὺς
of-Cyrus character such as to-make-money but giving
μᾶλλον ἢ κτώμενος ἥδεται.
rather than acquiring he-delights
32 αἰσθόμενος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ τὰς
having-perceived and — Cyrus these the words and the
δόξας τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ συνέλεξε τοὺς φίλους τε καὶ
opinions the(-ones) about him he-gathered the friends both and
τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους ἅπαντας καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι,
the key-officers all and spoke thus Men friends

ἑόρακα μὲν ἤδη ἀνθρώπους οἳ βούλονται δοκεῖν πλείω
I-have-seen indeed already men who wish to-seem more
κεκτῆσθαι ἢ ἔχουσιν, ἐλευθεριώτεροι ἂν οἰόμενοι οὕτω
to-have-acquired than they-have more-liberal — thinking so
φαίνεσθαι· ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκοῦσιν, ἔφη, οὗτοι τοὔμπαλιν οὗ
to-appear to-me but seem he-said these the-opposite of-what
βούλονται ἐφέλκεσθαι· τὸ γὰρ πολλὰ δοκοῦντα ἔχειν
they-wish to-draw-on the for many-things seeming to-have
μὴ κατ' ἀξίαν τῆς οὐσίας φαίνεσθαι ὠφελοῦντα τοὺς
not according-to worth of-the property to-appear benefiting the
φίλους ἀνελευθερίαν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ περιάπτειν.
friends meanness to-me-at-least seems to-fasten-on(-one)
εἰσὶ δ' αὖ, ἔφη, οἳ λεληθέναι βούλονται ὅσα 33
there-are and in-turn he-said who to-escape-notice wish how-much-ever
ἂν ἔχωσι· πονηροὶ οὖν καὶ οὗτοι τοῖς φίλοις ἔμοιγε
— they-have bad then also these to-the friends to-me-at-least
δοκοῦσιν εἶναι. διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ εἰδέναι τὰ ὄντα
seem to-be because-of for the not knowing the(-things) existing
πολλάκις δεόμενοι οὐκ ἐπαγγέλλουσιν οἱ φίλοι τοῖς
often needing not announce(-it) the friends to-the
ἑταίροις, ἀλλὰ τητῶνται.
comrades but go-without
ἁπλουστάτου δέ μοι, ἔφη, δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ τὴν 34
of-a-most-straightforward(-man) and to-me he-said seems to-be the the
δύναμιν φανερὰν ποιήσαντα ἐκ ταύτης ἀγωνίζεσθαι περὶ
power evident having-made from this to-contend about
καλοκἀγαθίας. κἀγὼ οὖν, ἔφη, βούλομαι ὑμῖν ὅσα μὲν
nobility I-too then he-said wish to-you as-much-as indeed
οἷόν τ' ἐστὶν ἰδεῖν τῶν ἐμοὶ ὄντων δεῖξαι, ὅσα
possible — is to-see of-the(-things) to-me being to-show as-much-as
δὲ μὴ οἷόν τε ἰδεῖν, διηγήσασθαι.
but not possible — to-see to-describe

35 ταῦτα εἰπὼν τὰ μὲν ἐδείκνυε πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ
these(-things) having-said the indeed he-showed many and fine
κτήματα· τὰ δὲ κείμενα ὡς μὴ ῥᾴδια εἶναι ἰδεῖν
possessions the(-others) but stored-away so-that not easy to-be to-see
διηγεῖτο·
he-described

36 τέλος δ' εἶπεν ὧδε· Ταῦτα, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἅπαντα δεῖ ὑμᾶς
at-last and he-said thus These(-things) O men all must you
οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐμὰ ἡγεῖσθαι ἢ καὶ ὑμέτερα· ἐγὼ γάρ,
not-at-all more mine to-consider than also yours I for
ἔφη, ταῦτα ἁθροίζω οὔθ' ὅπως αὐτὸς καταδαπανήσω
he-said these(-things) gather neither that myself I-may-consume(-them)
οὔθ' ὅπως αὐτὸς κατατρίψω· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην·
nor that myself I-may-wear-out(-them) not for — I-could
ἀλλ' ὅπως ἔχω τῷ τε ἀεὶ καλόν τι ὑμῶν
but that I-may-be-able to-the(-one) both always noble something of-you
ποιοῦντι διδόναι καὶ ὅπως, ἤν τις ὑμῶν τινος ἐνδεῖσθαι
doing to-give and that if anyone of-you anything to-lack
νομίσῃ, πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐλθὼν λάβῃ οὗ ἂν ἐνδεὴς τυγχάνῃ
thinks to me having-come he-may-take what — lacking he-happens
ὤν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐλέχθη.
being and these(-things) indeed then so were-said

V · THE COVENANT WITH PERSIA

Cyrus marches to Persia, his camp laid out so that every man knows his place, the tents facing east, the king in the middle. In Media Cyaxares offers him his daughter and all Media as her dowry; Cyrus accepts subject to his parents' consent. In Persia he brings sacrifices and gifts for all. Cambyses makes Cyrus and the Persians swear a covenant: Cyrus to defend Persia and its laws, the Persians to defend his rule, the kingship to pass to Cyrus. Returning through Media, Cyrus marries Cyaxares' daughter.

Ἡνίκα δὲ ἤδη αὐτῷ ἐδόκει καλῶς ἔχειν τὰ ἐν 1
When and now to-him it-seemed well to-be the(-affairs) in
Βαβυλῶνι ὡς καὶ ἀποδημεῖν, συνεσκευάζετο τὴν εἰς Πέρσας
Babylon as also to-go-abroad he-prepared the to Persia
πορείαν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρήγγειλεν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐνόμισεν
journey and to-the others gave-orders when and he-thought
ἱκανὰ ἔχειν ὧν ᾤετο δεήσεσθαι, οὕτω δὴ ἀνεζεύγνυε.
enough to-have of-what he-thought he-would-need so indeed he-broke-camp
διηγησόμεθα δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ὡς πολὺς στόλος ὢν 2
we-shall-relate and also these(-things) how great an-expedition being
εὐτάκτως μὲν κατεσκευάζετο καὶ πάλιν ἀνεσκευάζετο,
in-good-order indeed it-was-set-up and again was-packed-up
ταχὺ δὲ κατεχωρίζετο ὅπου δέοι. ὅπου γὰρ ἂν
quickly and was-put-in-place where there-should-be-need where for —
στρατοπεδεύηται βασιλεύς, σκηνὰς μὲν δὴ ἔχοντες πάντες
encamps the-king tents indeed then having all
οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα στρατεύονται καὶ θέρους καὶ χειμῶνος.
the(-men) about the-king campaign both in-summer and in-winter
εὐθὺς δὲ τοῦτο ἐνόμιζε Κῦρος, πρὸς ἕω βλέπουσαν 3
at-once and this made-it-a-rule Cyrus toward dawn facing
ἵστασθαι τὴν σκηνήν· ἔπειτα ἔταξε πρῶτον μὲν
to-stand the tent then he-arranged first indeed
πόσον δεῖ ἀπολιπόντας σκηνοῦν τοὺς δορυφόρους τῆς
how-much must having-left(-space) to-tent the spear-bearers from-the
βασιλικῆς σκηνῆς· ἔπειτα σιτοποιοῖς μὲν χώραν ἀπέδειξε
royal tent then for-bread-makers indeed place he-assigned
τὴν δεξιάν, ὀψοποιοῖς δὲ τὴν ἀριστεράν, ἵπποις δὲ τὴν
the right(-side) for-cooks and the left for-horses and the
δεξιάν, ὑποζυγίοις δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὴν ἀριστεράν· καὶ
right for-beasts-of-burden and the other the left and

τἆλλα δὲ διετέτακτο ὥστε εἰδέναι ἕκαστον τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
the-rest and had-been-arranged so-that to-know each the his-own
χώραν καὶ μέτρῳ καὶ τόπῳ.
place both in-measure and in-location

4 ὅταν δὲ ἀνασκευάζωνται, συντίθησι μὲν ἕκαστος σκεύη
when and they-pack-up puts-together indeed each the-baggage
οἷσπερ τέτακται χρῆσθαι, ἀνατίθενται δ' αὖ ἄλλοι
which-very he-is-assigned to-use load and in-turn others
ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ὥσθ' ἅμα μὲν πάντες ἔρχονται
on the beasts-of-burden so-that at-the-same-time indeed all go
οἱ σκευαγωγοὶ ἐπὶ τὰ τεταγμένα ἄγειν, ἅμα
the baggage-carriers to the(-things) assigned to-carry at-the-same-time
δὲ πάντες ἀνατιθέασιν ἐπὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος. οὕτω
and all load(-them) on the his-own each so
δὴ ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος ἀρκεῖ μιᾷ τε σκηνῇ καὶ πάσαις
indeed the same time suffices for-one both tent and for-all
ἀνῃρῆσθαι.
to-have-been-taken-down

5 ὡσαύτως οὕτως ἔχει καὶ περὶ κατασκευῆς. καὶ περὶ τοῦ
likewise so it-is also about setting-up and about the
πεποιῆσθαι δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πάντα ἐν καιρῷ ὡσαύτως
having-made and the necessaries all in time likewise
διατέτακται ἑκάστοις τὰ ποιητέα· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ὁ
is-assigned to-each the(-things) to-be-done and because-of this the
αὐτὸς χρόνος ἀρκεῖ ἑνί τε μέρει καὶ πᾶσι πεποιῆσθαι.
same time suffices for-one both part and for-all to-have-been-done

6 ὥσπερ δὲ οἱ περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια θεράποντες χώραν
as and the(-men) about the necessaries servants place
εἶχον τὴν προσήκουσαν ἕκαστοι, οὕτω καὶ οἱ ὁπλοφόροι
had the(-one) befitting each so also the weapon-bearers
αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει χώραν τε εἶχον τὴν τῇ
for-him in the encampment place both had the(-one) for-the

ὁπλίσει ἑκάστῃ ἐπιτηδείαν, καὶ ᾔδεσαν ταύτην ὁποία
armament each suitable and they-knew this what-sort-of
ἦν, καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀναμφισβήτητον πάντες κατεχωρίζοντο.
it-was and in an-undisputed(-place) all were-put-in-place
καλὸν μὲν γὰρ ἡγεῖτο ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν οἰκίᾳ εἶναι ἐπιτήδευμα 7
fine indeed for thought — Cyrus also in a-house to-be a-practice
τὴν εὐθημοσύνην· ὅταν γάρ τίς του δέηται, δῆλόν ἐστι
the orderliness whenever for anyone anything needs clear it-is
ὅπου δεῖ ἐλθόντα λαβεῖν· πολὺ δ᾽ ἔτι κάλλιον ἐνόμιζε τὴν
where (one)-must having-gone to-take(-it) much and still finer he-thought the
τῶν στρατιωτικῶν φύλων εὐθημοσύνην εἶναι, ὅσῳ τε
of-the military tribes orderliness to-be by-as-much-as both
ὀξύτεροι οἱ καιροὶ τῶν εἰς τὰ πολεμικὰ χρήσεων καὶ μείζω
sharper the occasions of-the for the warlike(-things) uses and greater
τὰ σφάλματα τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑστεριζόντων ἐν αὐτοῖς·
the blunders the(-ones) from the(-men) being-late in them
ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐν καιρῷ παραγιγνομένων πλείστου ἄξια
from and the(-men) in time being-present of-most worth
πλεονεκτήματα ἑώρα γιγνόμενα ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς· διὰ
advantages he-saw arising in the warlike(-matters) because-of
ταῦτα οὖν καὶ ἐπεμέλετο ταύτης τῆς εὐθημοσύνης μάλιστα.
these(-things) then also he-took-care-of this the orderliness most
καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν δὴ πρῶτον ἑαυτὸν ἐν μέσῳ κατετίθετο τοῦ 8
and himself indeed then first himself in middle placed of-the
στρατοπέδου, ὡς ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἐχυρωτάτης οὔσης·
camp as this the place strongest being
ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς μὲν πιστοτάτους ὥσπερ εἰώθει περὶ
then and the indeed most-faithful as he-was-accustomed about
ἑαυτὸν εἶχε, τούτων δ᾽ ἐν κύκλῳ ἐχομένους ἱππέας τ᾽
himself he-had of-these and in a-circle next(-to-them) horsemen both
εἶχε καὶ ἁρματηλάτας.
he-had and charioteers

9 καὶ γὰρ τούτους ἰσχυρὰς ἐνόμιζε χώρας δεῖσθαι, ὅτι
and for these strong he-thought a-place to-need because
οἷς μάχονται ὅπλοις οὐδὲν πρόχειρον ἔχοντες τούτων
with-what they-fight arms nothing ready-to-hand having of-these
στρατοπεδεύονται, ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ χρόνου δέονται εἰς τὴν
they-encamp but much time they-need for the
ἐξόπλισιν, εἰ μέλλουσι χρησίμως ἕξειν.
arming if they-are-going usefully to-fare

10 ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἱππέων
on right and also on left of-him both and of-the horsemen
πελτασταῖς χώρα ἦν· τοξοτῶν δ' αὖ χώρα ἡ
for-peltasts place was of-archers and in-turn the-place the(-one)
πρόσθεν ἦν καὶ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἱππέων.
in-front was and behind of-him both and of-the horsemen

11 ὁπλίτας δὲ καὶ τοὺς τὰ μεγάλα γέρρα ἔχοντας κύκλῳ
hoplites and and the(-men) the large wicker-shields having around
πάντων εἶχεν ὥσπερ τεῖχος, ὅπως καὶ εἴ δέοι
all he-had like a-wall so-that even if there-should-be-need
τι ἐνσκευάζεσθαι τοὺς ἱππέας, οἱ μονιμώτατοι πρόσθεν
at-all to-equip the horsemen the steadiest in-front
ὄντες παρέχοιεν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλῆ τὴν καθόπλισιν.
being might-provide for-them safe the arming

12 ἐκάθευδον δὲ αὐτῷ ἐν τάξει ὥσπερ οἱ ὁπλῖται, οὕτω
slept and for-him in rank as the hoplites so
δὲ καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ τοξόται, ὅπως καὶ ἐκ
and also the peltasts and the archers so-that also from
νυκτῶν, εἴ δέοι τι, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ ὁπλῖται
night if there-should-be-need at-all as also the hoplites
παρεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶ παίειν τὸν εἰς χεῖρας ἰόντα, οὕτω
prepared are to-strike the(-man) into hands coming so

καὶ οἱ τοξόται καὶ οἱ ἀκοντισταί, εἴ τινες προσίοιεν, ἐξ
also the archers and the javelin-men if any should-approach from
ἑτοίμου ἀκοντίζοιεν καὶ τοξεύοιεν ὑπὲρ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν.
readiness they-might-throw-javelins and might-shoot over the hoplites
εἶχον δὲ καὶ σημεῖα πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ ταῖς σκηναῖς· 13
had and also standards all the officers on the tents
οἱ δ' ὑπηρέται ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν οἱ σώφρονες
the and attendants as also in the cities the sensible
ἴσασι μὲν καὶ τῶν πλείστων τὰς οἰκήσεις, μάλιστα δὲ
know indeed also of-the most the dwellings most and
τῶν ἐπικαιρίων, οὕτω καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς στρατοπέδοις
of-the chief(-men) so also of-the(-men) in the camps
τάς τε χώρας τὰς τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἠπίσταντο οἱ Κύρου
the both places the of-the leaders knew the of-Cyrus
ὑπηρέται καὶ τὰ σημεῖα ἐγίγνωσκον ἃ ἑκάστοις ἦν·
attendants and the standards they-recognized which to-each were
ὥστε ὅτου δέοιτο Κῦρος, οὐκ ἐζήτουν, ἀλλὰ τὴν
so-that whomever needed Cyrus not they-searched but the
συντομωτάτην ἐφ' ἕκαστον ἔθεον.
shortest(-way) to each they-ran
καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰλικρινῆ ἕκαστα εἶναι τὰ φῦλα πολὺ μᾶλλον 14
and because-of the unmixed each to-be the tribes much more
ἦν δῆλα καὶ ὁπότε τις εὐτακτοίη καὶ εἴ τις μὴ πράττοι
were clear both whenever anyone was-orderly and if anyone not did
τὸ προσταττόμενον. οὕτω δὴ ἐχόντων ἡγεῖτο, εἴ
the(-thing) ordered so indeed being(-arranged) he-thought if
τις καὶ ἐπίθοιτο νυκτὸς ἢ ἡμέρας, ὥσπερ ἂν εἰς ἐνέδραν
anyone even should-attack by-night or by-day as — into an-ambush
εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τοὺς ἐπιτιθεμένους ἐμπίπτειν.
into the camp the attackers would-fall

15 καὶ τὸ τακτικὸν δὲ εἶναι οὐ τοῦτο μόνον ἡγεῖτο εἴ τις
and the tactical and to-be not this only he-thought if anyone
ἐκτεῖναι φάλαγγα εὐπόρως δύναιτο ἢ βαθῦναι ἢ ἐκ
to-extend a-phalanx easily could or to-deepen(-it) or from
κέρατος εἰς φάλαγγα καταστῆσαι ἢ ἐκ δεξιᾶς ἢ ἀριστερᾶς
column into phalanx to-form or from right or left
ἢ ὄπισθεν ἐπιφανέντων πολεμίων ὀρθῶς ἐξελίξαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ
or behind appearing enemies correctly to-wheel(-it) but also
τὸ διασπᾶν ὁπότε δέοι τακτικὸν ἡγεῖτο, καὶ τὸ
the dividing(-it) whenever there-should-be-need tactical he-thought and the
τιθέναι γε τὸ μέρος ἕκαστον ὅπου μάλιστα ἐν ὠφελείᾳ
placing at-least the part each where most in usefulness
ἂν εἴη, καὶ τὸ ταχύνειν δὲ ὅπου φθάσαι δέοι,
— it-would-be and the hastening and where to-get-ahead there-should-be-need
πάντα ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τακτικοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐνόμιζεν
all these(-things) and the such(-things) of-a-tactical man he-thought
εἶναι καὶ ἐπεμελεῖτο τούτων πάντων ὁμοίως.
to-be and took-care-of these all alike

16 καὶ ἐν μὲν ταῖς πορείαις πρὸς τὸ συμπῖπτον ἀεὶ
and on indeed the marches according-to the(-thing) occurring always
διατάττων ἐπορεύετο, ἐν δὲ τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει ὡς τὰ
arranging he-marched in but the encampment as the
πολλὰ ὥσπερ εἴρηται κατεχώριζεν.
most-part as has-been-said he-placed(-them)

17 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι γίγνονται κατὰ τὴν Μηδικήν, τρέπεται
When and marching they-come into the Median(-land) turns
ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς Κυαξάρην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσπάσαντο ἀλλήλους,
— Cyrus to Cyaxares when and they-had-greeted one-another
πρῶτον μὲν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε τῷ Κυαξάρῃ ὅτι οἶκος
first indeed then — Cyrus told — to-Cyaxares that a-house
αὐτῷ ἐξῃρημένος εἴη ἐν Βαβυλῶνι καὶ ἀρχεῖα, ὅπως
for-him selected was in Babylon and official-quarters that

ἔχῃ καὶ ὅταν ἐκεῖσε ἔλθῃ εἰς οἰκεῖα κατάγεσθαι·
he-might-be-able even whenever there he-came into his-own to-lodge
ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλα δῶρα ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ πολλὰ καὶ καλά.
then and also other gifts he-gave him many and fine
ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ταῦτα μὲν ἐδέχετο, προσέπεμψε δὲ αὐτῷ 18
— and Cyaxares these(-things) indeed accepted he-sent and to-him
τὴν θυγατέρα στέφανόν τε χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια φέρουσαν
the daughter a-crown both golden and bracelets carrying
καὶ στρεπτὸν καὶ στολὴν Μηδικὴν ὡς δυνατὸν καλλίστην.
and a-necklace and a-robe Median as possible most-beautiful
καὶ ἡ μὲν δὴ παῖς ἐστεφάνου τὸν Κῦρον, ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης 19
and the indeed then girl crowned — Cyrus — and Cyaxares
εἶπε, Δίδωμί σοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ αὐτὴν ταύτην γυναῖκα,
said I-give to-you he-said O Cyrus also very this-one as-wife
ἐμὴν οὖσαν θυγατέρα· καὶ ὁ σὸς δὲ πατὴρ ἔγημε τὴν τοῦ
my being daughter and the your and father married the of-the
ἐμοῦ πατρὸς θυγατέρα, ἐξ ἧς σὺ ἐγένου· αὕτη δ' ἐστὶν
my father daughter from whom you were-born she and is
ἣν σὺ πολλάκις παῖς ὢν ὅτε παρ' ἡμῖν ἦσθα ἐτιθηνήσω·
whom you often a-child being when with us you-were nursed
καὶ ὁπότε τις ἐρωτῴη αὐτὴν τίνι γαμοῖτο, ἔλεγεν
and whenever anyone asked her to-whom she-would-marry she-said
ὅτι Κύρῳ· ἐπιδίδωμι δὲ αὐτῇ ἐγὼ καὶ φερνὴν Μηδίαν
that to-Cyrus I-give-besides and to-her I also as-dowry Media
τὴν πᾶσαν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔστι μοι ἄρρην παῖς γνήσιος.
the whole nor for is to-me male child legitimate
ὃ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἀλλ' ὦ 20
he indeed so spoke — and Cyrus answered But O
Κυαξάρη, τό τε γένος ἐπαινῶ καὶ τὴν παῖδα καὶ τὰ
Cyaxares the both family I-praise and the girl and the
δῶρα· βούλομαι δέ, ἔφη, σὺν τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς γνώμῃ
gifts I-wish and he-said with the of-the father judgment

καὶ τῇ τῆς μητρὸς ταῦτά σοι συναινέσαι. εἶπε
and the(-one) of-the mother these(-things) with-you to-agree he-spoke
μὲν οὖν οὕτως ὁ Κῦρος, ὅμως δὲ τῇ παιδὶ πάντα
indeed then so — Cyrus yet and to-the girl all-things
ἐδωρήσατο ὁπόσα ᾤετο καὶ τῷ Κυαξάρῃ χαριεῖσθαι.
he-presented whatever he-thought also — Cyaxares would-please
ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας εἰς Πέρσας ἐπορεύετο.
these(-things) and having-done to Persia he-marched

21 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς Περσῶν ὁρίοις ἐγένετο πορευόμενος,
When and at the of-Persians borders he-was marching
τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτοῦ κατέλιπεν, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν
the indeed other army his he-left himself and with
τοῖς φίλοις εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐπορεύετο, ἱερεῖα μὲν ἄγων
the friends to the city went victims indeed leading
ὡς πᾶσι Πέρσαις ἱκανὰ θύειν τε καὶ ἑστιᾶσθαι· δῶρα
so-as for-all Persians enough to-sacrifice both and to-feast gifts
δ' ἦγεν οἷα μὲν ἔπρεπε τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ
and he-brought such-as indeed befitted the father and the mother and
τοῖς ἄλλοις φίλοις, οἷα δ' ἔπρεπεν ταῖς ἀρχαῖς καὶ τοῖς
the other friends such-as and befitted the authorities and the
γεραιτέροις καὶ τοῖς ὁμοτίμοις πᾶσιν· ἔδωκε δὲ καὶ πᾶσι
elders and the peers all he-gave and also to-all
Πέρσαις καὶ Περσίσιν ὅσαπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι δίδωσιν
Persians and Persian-women as-much-as-very also now still gives
ὅτανπερ ἀφίκηται βασιλεὺς εἰς Πέρσας.
whenever-very arrives the-king in Persia

22 ἐκ δὲ τούτου συνέλεξε Καμβύσης τούς τε γεραιτέρους
after and this gathered Cambyses the both elders
Περσῶν καὶ τὰς ἀρχάς, οἵπερ τῶν μεγίστων κύριοί
of-Persians and the authorities who-very of-the greatest(-matters) masters
εἰσι· παρεκάλεσε δὲ καὶ Κῦρον, καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες
are he-summoned and also Cyrus and spoke as-follows Men

Πέρσαι καὶ σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐγὼ ἀμφοτέροις ὑμῖν εἰκότως
Persians and you O Cyrus I to-both you reasonably
εὔνους εἰμί· ὑμῶν μὲν γὰρ βασιλεύω, σὺ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε,
well-disposed am of-you indeed for I-am-king you and O Cyrus
παῖς ἐμὸς εἶ. δίκαιος οὖν εἰμι, ὅσα γιγνώσκειν δοκῶ
child my are just then I-am what to-know I-seem
ἀγαθὰ ἀμφοτέροις, ταῦτα εἰς τὸ μέσον λέγειν.
good for-both these(-things) in the middle to-say
τὰ μὲν γὰρ παρελθόντα ὑμεῖς μὲν Κῦρον ηὐξήσατε 23
the indeed for past(-things) you indeed Cyrus exalted
στράτευμα δόντες καὶ ἄρχοντα τούτου αὐτὸν
an-army having-given and commander of-this him
καταστήσαντες, Κῦρος δὲ ἡγούμενος τούτου σὺν θεοῖς
having-appointed Cyrus and leading this with gods
εὐκλεεῖς μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις
famous indeed you O Persians among all men
ἐποίησεν, ἐντίμους δ' ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πάσῃ· τῶν δὲ
made honored and in — Asia all of-the(-men) and
συστρατευσαμένων αὐτῷ τοὺς μὲν ἀρίστους καὶ πεπλούτικε,
having-campaigned-with him the indeed best also he-has-enriched
τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς μισθὸν καὶ τροφὴν παρεσκεύακεν· ἱππικὸν
for-the and many pay and food he-has-provided a-cavalry
δὲ καταστήσας Περσῶν πεποίηκε Πέρσαις καὶ πεδίων
and having-established of-Persians he-has-made for-Persians also of-plains
εἶναι μετουσίαν.
to-be a-share
ἢν μὲν οὖν καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν οὕτω γιγνώσκητε, πολλῶν 24
if indeed then also the future so you-judge of-many
καὶ ἀγαθῶν αἴτιοι ἀλλήλοις ἔσεσθε· εἰ δὲ ἢ σύ, ὦ
and good(-things) causes to-one-another you-will-be if but either you O
Κῦρε, ἐπαρθεὶς ταῖς παρούσαις τύχαις ἐπιχειρήσεις καὶ
Cyrus elated by-the present fortunes will-attempt also

Περσῶν ἄρχειν ἐπὶ πλεονεξίᾳ ὥσπερ τῶν ἄλλων, ἢ
of-Persians to-rule for self-aggrandizement as of-the others or
ὑμεῖς, ὦ πολῖται, φθονήσαντες τούτῳ τῆς δυνάμεως
you O citizens envying this(-man) for-the power
καταλύειν πειράσεσθε τοῦτον τῆς ἀρχῆς, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι
to-depose will-try him from-the rule well know that
ἐμποδὼν ἀλλήλοις πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔσεσθε.
a-hindrance to-one-another of-many and good(-things) you-will-be
25 ὡς οὖν μὴ ταῦτα γίγνηται, ἀλλὰ τἀγαθά, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ,
that then not these(-things) may-happen but the-good-things to-me it-seems
ἔφη, θύσαντας ὑμᾶς κοινῇ καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιμαρτυραμένους
he-said having-sacrificed you in-common and gods having-called-to-witness
συνθέσθαι, σὲ μέν, ὦ Κῦρε, ἤν τις ἐπιστρατεύηται χώρᾳ
to-agree you indeed O Cyrus if anyone marches-against country
Περσίδι ἢ Περσῶν νόμους διασπᾶν πειρᾶται, βοηθήσειν παντὶ
Persian or of-Persians laws to-destroy tries to-help with-all
σθένει, ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἤν τις ἢ ἀρχῆς Κῦρον ἐπιχειρῇ
strength you and O Persians if anyone either from-rule Cyrus attempts
καταπαύειν ἢ ἀφίστασθαί τις τῶν ὑποχειρίων, βοηθήσειν
to-depose or to-revolt anyone of-the subjects to-help
καὶ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς καὶ Κύρῳ καθ' ὅ τι ἂν οὗτος ἐπαγγέλλῃ.
both you yourselves and Cyrus in what ever — this(-man) may-order
26 καὶ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐγὼ ζῶ, ἐμὴ γίγνεται ἡ ἐν Πέρσαις
and while indeed — I live mine is the among Persians
βασιλεία· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ τελευτήσω, δῆλον ὅτι Κύρου,
kingship when but I die clear(-it-is) that Cyrus'(-it-will-be)
ἐὰν ζῇ. καὶ ὅταν μὲν οὗτος ἀφίκηται εἰς Πέρσας,
if he-lives and whenever indeed this(-man) arrives in Persia
ὁσίως ἂν ὑμῖν ἔχοι τοῦτον θύειν τὰ ἱερὰ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν
piously — for-you it-would-be this(-man) to-sacrifice the sacrifices for you
ἅπερ νῦν ἐγὼ θύω· ὅταν δ' οὗτος ἔκδημος ᾖ, καλῶς
which-very now I sacrifice when but this(-man) abroad is well

ἂν οἶμαι ὑμῖν ἔχειν εἰ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ὃς ἂν δοκῇ
— I-think for-you it-would-be if from the family whoever — seems
ὑμῖν ἄριστος εἶναι, οὗτος τὰ τῶν θεῶν ἀποτελοίη.
to-you best to-be this(-one) the(-rites) of-the gods should-perform
ταῦτα εἰπόντος Καμβύσου συνέδοξε Κύρῳ τε καὶ 27
these(-things) having-said Cambyses it-seemed-good-also to-Cyrus both and
τοῖς Περσῶν τέλεσι· καὶ συνθέμενοι ταῦτα τότε καὶ
to-the of-Persians magistrates and having-agreed-to these(-things) then and
θεοὺς ἐπιμαρτυράμενοι οὕτω καὶ νῦν ἔτι διαμένουσι
gods having-called-to-witness so also now still they-continue
ποιοῦντες πρὸς ἀλλήλους Πέρσαι τε καὶ βασιλεύς.
doing toward one-another Persians both and the-king
τούτων δὲ πραχθέντων ἀπῄει ὁ Κῦρος.
these(-things) and having-been-done departed — Cyrus
ὡς δ' ἀπιὼν ἐγένετο ἐν Μήδοις, συνδόξαν τῷ 28
when and departing he-was among Medes it-having-seemed-good to-the
πατρὶ καὶ τῇ μητρὶ γαμεῖ τὴν Κυαξάρου θυγατέρα,
father and to-the mother he-marries the of-Cyaxares daughter
ἧς ἔτι καὶ νῦν λόγος ὡς παγκάλης γενομένης.
of-whom still also now the-report(-is) as very-beautiful having-been
γήμας δ' εὐθὺς ἔχων ἀνεζεύγνυεν.
having-married and at-once having(-her) he-broke-camp

VI · THE SATRAPS

Cyrus sends satraps to the subject nations but keeps the garrison commanders answerable to himself, and gives his friends houses and lands in every province. He tells the satraps to imitate his court, train horsemen and chariots, and educate their sons at their doors. A yearly inspector with an army visits each province, and posting stations carry the king's letters, some say faster than cranes fly. He subdues the peoples from Syria to the Red Sea, and Egypt, ruling from the Red

Sea to the Euxine and from Cyprus to Ethiopia; he winters in Babylon, springs in Susa, and summers in Ecbatana. Every nation sends him its best, and he gives back what each lacks.

1 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἦν, ἐδόκει αὐτῷ σατράπας
When and in Babylon he-was it-seemed-good to-him satraps
ἤδη πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὰ κατεστραμμένα ἔθνη. τοὺς μέντοι
now to-send to the subdued nations the however
ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις φρουράρχους καὶ τοὺς χιλιάρχους
in the citadels garrison-commanders and the commanders-of-a-thousand
τῶν κατὰ τὴν χώραν φυλακῶν οὐκ ἄλλου ἢ ἑαυτοῦ
of-the throughout the country guards not of-another than himself
ἐβούλετο ἀκούειν· ταῦτα δὲ προεωρᾶτο ἐννοῶν ὅπως εἴ
he-wished to-obey these(-things) and he-foresaw considering that if
τις τῶν σατραπῶν ὑπὸ πλούτου καὶ πλήθους ἀνθρώπων
any of-the satraps by wealth and number of-men
ἐξυβρίσειε καὶ ἐπιχειρήσειε μὴ πείθεσθαι, εὐθὺς
should-become-insolent and attempt not to-obey at-once
ἀντιπάλους ἔχοι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
opponents he-might-have in the country
2 ταῦτ' οὖν βουλόμενος πρᾶξαι ἔγνω συγκαλέσαι πρῶτον
these(-things) then wishing to-do he-decided to-call-together first
τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους καὶ προειπεῖν, ὅπως εἰδεῖεν ἐφ'
the chief(-men) and to-tell(-them)-beforehand so-that they-might-know on
οἷς ἴασιν οἱ ἰόντες· ἐνόμιζε γὰρ οὕτως ἂν ῥᾷον
what(-terms) will-go the(-men) going he-thought for so — more-easily
φέρειν αὐτούς· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατασταίη τις ἄρχων καὶ
to-bear(-it) them when but should-be-established anyone as-governor and
αἰσθάνοιτο ταῦτα, χαλεπῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ φέρειν,
perceive these(-things) ill — they-seemed to-him to-bear(-it)
νομίζοντες δι' ἑαυτῶν ἀπιστίαν ταῦτα γενέσθαι.
thinking because-of their-own untrustworthiness these(-things) to-have-happened

οὕτω δὴ συλλέξας λέγει αὐτοῖς τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες 3
so indeed having-gathered(-them) he-says to-them as-follows Men
φίλοι, εἰσὶν ἡμῖν ἐν ταῖς κατεστραμμέναις πόλεσι φρουροὶ
friends there-are for-us in the subdued cities garrisons
καὶ φρούραρχοι, οὓς τότε κατελίπομεν· καὶ τούτοις ἐγὼ
and garrison-commanders whom then we-left and to-these I
προστάξας ἀπῆλθον ἄλλο μὲν μηδὲν πολυπραγμονεῖν, τὰ
having-ordered went-away other indeed nothing to-meddle-with the
δὲ τείχη διασῴζειν. τούτους μὲν οὖν οὐ παύσω τῆς
and walls to-preserve these indeed then not I-shall-stop from-the
ἀρχῆς, ἐπεὶ καλῶς διαπεφυλάχασι τὰ προσταχθέντα·
command since well they-have-guarded the(-things) ordered
ἄλλους δὲ σατράπας πέμψαι μοι δοκεῖ, οἵτινες ἄρξουσι τῶν
other but satraps to-send to-me it-seems who will-rule the
ἐνοικούντων καὶ τὸν δασμὸν λαμβάνοντες τοῖς τε φρουροῖς
inhabitants and the tribute receiving to-the both garrisons
δώσουσι μισθὸν καὶ ἄλλο τελοῦσιν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ.
will-give pay and other will-pay what ever — there-be-need
δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ τῶν ἐνθάδε μενόντων ὑμῶν, οἷς ἂν 4
it-seems and to-me also of-the here staying of-you to-whom —
ἐγὼ πράγματα παρέχω πέμπων πράξοντάς τι ἐπὶ
I troubles give sending(-them) to-do something to
ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη, χώρας γενέσθαι καὶ οἴκους ἐκεῖ, ὅπως
these the nations countries to-be and houses there so-that
δασμοφορῆταί τε αὐτοῖς δεῦρο, ὅταν τε ἴωσιν ἐκεῖσε,
tribute-may-be-paid both to-them here when and they-go there
εἰς οἰκεῖα ἔχωσι κατάγεσθαι.
into their-own they-may-have to-lodge
ταῦτα εἶπε καὶ ἔδωκε πολλοῖς τῶν φίλων κατὰ 5
these(-things) he-said and he-gave to-many of-the friends throughout
πάσας τὰς καταστραφείσας πόλεις οἴκους καὶ ὑπηκόους·
all the subdued cities houses and subjects

καὶ νῦν εἰσιν ἔτι τοῖς ἀπογόνοις τῶν τότε λαβόντων
and now are still for-the descendants of-the(-men) then having-received
αἱ χῶραι καταμένουσαι ἄλλαι ἐν ἄλλῃ γῇ· αὐτοὶ δὲ
the lands remaining some in another land they-themselves and
οἰκοῦσι παρὰ βασιλεῖ.
dwell with the-king

6 Δεῖ δέ, ἔφη, τοὺς ἰόντας σατράπας ἐπὶ ταύτας τὰς
Must and he-said the(-men) going(-as) satraps to these the
χώρας τοιούτους ἡμᾶς σκοπεῖν οἵτινες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν τῇ
countries such us to-look-for who what ever — in the
γῇ ἑκάστῃ καλὸν ἢ ἀγαθὸν ᾖ, μεμνήσονται καὶ δεῦρο
land each fine or good may-be will-remember also here
ἀποπέμπειν, ὡς μετέχωμεν καὶ οἱ ἐνθάδε ὄντες τῶν
to-send so-that we-may-share also the(-ones) here being in-the
πανταχοῦ γιγνομένων ἀγαθῶν· καὶ γὰρ ἤν τί που
everywhere arising goods and for if anything somewhere
δεινὸν γίγνηται, ἡμῖν ἔσται ἀμυντέον.
terrible happens by-us it-will-be necessary-to-defend

7 ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν τότε μὲν ἔπαυσε τὸν λόγον, ἔπειτα δὲ
these(-things) having-said then indeed he-stopped the speech then and
οὓς ἐγίγνωσκε τῶν φίλων ἐπὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις ἐπιθυμοῦντας
whom he-knew of-the friends on the stated(-terms) desiring
ἰέναι, ἐκλεξάμενος αὐτῶν τοὺς δοκοῦντας ἐπιτηδειοτάτους
to-go having-picked of-them the(-ones) seeming most-suitable
εἶναι ἔπεμπε σατράπας εἰς Ἀραβίαν μὲν Μεγάβυζον, εἰς
to-be he-sent(-them) as-satraps to Arabia indeed Megabyzus to
Καππαδοκίαν δὲ Ἀρταβάταν, εἰς Φρυγίαν δὲ τὴν μεγάλην
Cappadocia and Artabatas to Phrygia and the great
Ἀρτακάμαν, εἰς Λυδίαν δὲ καὶ Ἰωνίαν Χρυσάνταν, εἰς
Artacamas to Lydia and and Ionia Chrysantas to

Καρίαν δὲ Ἀδούσιον, ὅνπερ ᾐτοῦντο, εἰς Φρυγίαν δὲ
Caria and Adusius whom-very they-had-asked-for to Phrygia and
τὴν παρ' Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ Αἰολίδα Φαρνοῦχον.
the(-one) by the-Hellespont and Aeolis Pharnuchus
Κιλικίας δὲ καὶ Κύπρου καὶ Παφλαγόνων οὐκ ἔπεμψε 8
of-Cilicia and and of-Cyprus and of-Paphlagonians not he-sent
Πέρσας σατράπας, ὅτι ἑκόντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ συστρατεῦσαι
Persians as-satraps because willingly they-seemed to-him to-have-campaigned
ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα· δασμοὺς μέντοι συνέταξεν ἀποφέρειν καὶ
against Babylon tribute however he-arranged to-pay also
τούτους.
these
ὡς δὲ τότε ὁ Κῦρος κατεστήσατο, οὕτως ἔτι καὶ 9
as and then — Cyrus established so still also
νῦν βασιλέως εἰσὶν αἱ ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις φυλακαὶ καὶ
now of-the-king are the in the citadels garrisons and
οἱ χιλίαρχοι τῶν φυλακῶν ἐκ βασιλέως εἰσὶ
the commanders-of-a-thousand of-the garrisons from the-king are
καθεστηκότες καὶ παρὰ βασιλεῖ ἀπογεγραμμένοι.
appointed and with the-king enrolled
προεῖπε δὲ πᾶσι τοῖς ἐκπεμπομένοις σατράπαις, ὅσα 10
he-told-beforehand and all the being-sent-out satraps whatever
αὐτὸν ἑώρων ποιοῦντα, πάντα μιμεῖσθαι· πρῶτον μὲν
him they-saw doing all-things to-imitate first indeed
ἱππέας καθιστάναι ἐκ τῶν συνεπισπομένων Περσῶν καὶ
horsemen to-establish from the having-followed(-him) Persians and
συμμάχων καὶ ἁρματηλάτας· ὁπόσοι δ' ἂν γῆν καὶ
allies and charioteers as-many-as and — land and
ἀρχεῖα λάβωσιν, ἀναγκάζειν τούτους ἐπὶ θύρας ἰέναι
official-quarters receive to-compel these to the-doors to-go
καὶ σωφροσύνης ἐπιμελουμένους παρέχειν ἑαυτοὺς τῷ
and self-control practicing to-offer themselves to-the

σατράπῃ χρῆσθαι, ἤν τι δέηται· παιδεύειν δὲ καὶ τοὺς
satrap to-use if at-all he-needs to-educate and also the
γιγνομένους παῖδας ἐπὶ θύραις, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτῷ· ἐξάγειν
being-born children at the-doors as with him to-lead-out
δ' ἐπὶ θήραν τὸν σατράπην τοὺς ἀπὸ θυρῶν καὶ ἀσκεῖν
and to hunting the satrap the(-men) from the-doors and to-train
αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ τὰ πολεμικά.
himself both and the(-men) with himself in-the warlike(-arts)

11 Ὃς δ' ἂν ἐμοί, ἔφη, κατὰ λόγον τῆς δυνάμεως
Whoever and — to-me he-said according-to proportion of-the power
πλεῖστα μὲν ἅρματα, πλείστους δὲ καὶ ἀρίστους ἱππέας
most indeed chariots most and also best horsemen
ἀποδεικνύῃ, τοῦτον ἐγὼ ὡς ἀγαθὸν σύμμαχον καὶ ὡς
shows this(-man) I as a-good ally and as
ἀγαθὸν συμφύλακα Πέρσαις τε καὶ ἐμοὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς
a-good fellow-guardian for-Persians both and for-me of-the empire
τιμήσω. ἔστων δὲ παρ' ὑμῖν καὶ ἕδραις ὥσπερ παρ'
shall-honor let-there-be and with you also by-seats as with
ἐμοὶ οἱ ἄριστοι προτετιμημένοι, καὶ τράπεζα, ὥσπερ ἡ
me the best preferred-in-honor and a-table as the
ἐμή, τρέφουσα μὲν πρῶτον τοὺς οἰκέτας, ἔπειτα δὲ
mine feeding indeed first the household then and
καὶ ὡς φίλοις μεταδιδόναι ἱκανῶς κεκοσμημένη καὶ ὡς
also so-as with-friends to-share sufficiently furnished and so-as
τὸν καλόν τι ποιοῦντα καθ' ἡμέραν ἐπιγεραίρειν.
the(-one) noble something doing per day to-reward

12 κτᾶσθε δὲ καὶ παραδείσους καὶ θηρία τρέφετε, καὶ μήτε
acquire and also parks and beasts rear and neither
αὐτοί ποτε ἄνευ κόπου σῖτον παραθῆσθε μήτε ἵπποις
yourselves ever without toil food set-before(-yourselves) nor to-horses
ἀγυμνάστοις χόρτον ἐμβάλλετε· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην ἐγὼ εἷς
unexercised fodder throw not for — could I one

ὢν ἀνθρωπίνῃ ἀρετῇ τὰ πάντων ὑμῶν ἀγαθὰ διασῴζειν,
being with-human virtue the of-all you goods to-preserve
ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἐμὲ μὲν ἀγαθὸν ὄντα σὺν ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς παρ᾽
but must me indeed good being with good the(-men) from
ἐμοῦ ὑμῖν ἐπίκουρον εἶναι· ὑμᾶς δὲ ὁμοίως αὐτοὺς ἀγαθοὺς
me for-you a-helper to-be you and likewise yourselves good
ὄντας σὺν ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς μεθ᾽ ὑμῶν ἐμοὶ συμμάχους εἶναι.
being with good the(-men) with you to-me allies to-be
βουλοίμην δ᾽ ἂν ὑμᾶς καὶ τοῦτο κατανοῆσαι ὅτι 13
I-would-wish and — you also this to-observe that
τούτων ὧν νῦν ὑμῖν παρακελεύομαι οὐδὲν τοῖς δούλοις
of-these which now you I-urge nothing to-the slaves
προστάττω· ἃ δ᾽ ὑμᾶς φημι χρῆναι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα καὶ
I-order what but you I-say must to-do these(-things) also
αὐτὸς πειρῶμαι πάντα πράττειν. ὥσπερ δ᾽ ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς
myself I-try all to-do as and I you
κελεύω ἐμὲ μιμεῖσθαι, οὕτω καὶ ὑμεῖς τοὺς ὑφ᾽ ὑμῶν
bid me to-imitate so also you the(-men) under you
ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας μιμεῖσθαι ὑμᾶς διδάσκετε.
offices holding to-imitate you teach
Ταῦτα δὲ Κύρου οὕτω τότε τάξαντος ἔτι καὶ νῦν 14
These(-things) and Cyrus so then having-arranged still also now
τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ πᾶσαι μὲν αἱ ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ φυλακαὶ
in-the same way all indeed the under the-king garrisons
ὁμοίως φυλάττονται, πᾶσαι δὲ αἱ τῶν ἀρχόντων θύραι
likewise are-guarded all and the of-the officers doors
ὁμοίως θεραπεύονται, πάντες δὲ οἱ οἶκοι καὶ μεγάλοι
likewise are-attended all and the households both great
καὶ μικροὶ ὁμοίως οἰκοῦνται, πᾶσι δὲ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν
and small likewise are-managed in-all and the best of-the(-men)
παρόντων ἕδραις προτετίμηνται, πᾶσαι δὲ αἱ πορεῖαι
present by-seats are-preferred-in-honor all and the marches

συντεταγμέναι κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον εἰσί, πᾶσαι δὲ
arranged in the same way are all and
συγκεφαλαιοῦνται πολιτικαὶ πράξεις εἰς ὀλίγους ἐπιστάτας.
are-summed-up civil affairs into few overseers
15 Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ὡς χρὴ ποιεῖν ἑκάστους καὶ δύναμιν
These(-things) having-said how must to-act each and a-force
ἑκάστῳ προσθεὶς ἐξέπεμπε, καὶ προεῖπεν ἅπασι
to-each having-added he-sent(-them)-out and told-beforehand all
παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς εἰς νέωτα στρατείας ἐσομένης καὶ
to-prepare as for next-year a-campaign going-to-be and
ἀποδείξεως ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὅπλων καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἁρμάτων.
a-review of-men and of-arms and of-horses and of-chariots
16 Κατενοήσαμεν δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι Κύρου κατάρξαντος,
We-have-observed and also this that Cyrus having-begun(-it)
ὥς φασι, καὶ νῦν ἔτι διαμένει· ἐφοδεύει γὰρ ἀνὴρ κατ᾽
as they-say also now still remains goes-round for a-man by
ἐνιαυτὸν ἀεὶ στράτευμα ἔχων, ὡς ἢν μέν τις τῶν
year always an-army having that if indeed any of-the
σατραπῶν ἐπικουρίας δέηται, ἐπικουρῇ, ἢν δέ τις ὑβρίζῃ,
satraps help needs he-may-help if and anyone is-insolent
σωφρονίζῃ, ἢν δέ τις ἢ δασμῶν φορᾶς ἀμελῇ ἢ
he-may-chasten if and anyone either of-tribute payment neglects or
τῶν ἐνοίκων φυλακῆς ἢ ὅπως ἡ χώρα ἐνεργὸς ᾖ
of-the inhabitants protection or that the country cultivated may-be
ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τεταγμένων παραλείπῃ, ταῦτα πάντα
or other any of-the (things)-assigned omits these(-things) all
κατευτρεπίζῃ· ἢν δὲ μὴ δύνηται, βασιλεῖ ἀπαγγέλλῃ·
he-may-set-right if but not he-can to-the-king he-may-report
ὃ δὲ ἀκούων βουλεύεται περὶ τοῦ ἀτακτοῦντος. καὶ
he and hearing deliberates about the(-one) disorderly and
οἱ πολλάκις λεγόμενοι ὅτι βασιλέως ὑὸς καταβαίνει,
the(-ones) often said that the-king's son comes-down

βασιλέως ἀδελφός, βασιλέως ὀφθαλμός, καὶ ἐνίοτε οὐκ
the-king's brother the-king's eye and sometimes not
ἐκφαινόμενοι, οὗτοι τῶν ἐφόδων εἰσίν· ἀποτρέπεται γὰρ
appearing these of-the inspectors are is-turned-back for
ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ὁπόθεν ἂν βασιλεὺς κελεύῃ.
each of-them from-wherever — the-king orders
Κατεμάθομεν δὲ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἄλλο μηχάνημα προσῆκον 17
We-have-learned and of-him also another device befitting
πρὸς τὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς μέγεθος, ἐξ οὗ ταχέως ᾐσθάνετο καὶ
for the of-the empire greatness from which quickly he-perceived even
τὰ πάμπολυ ἀπέχοντα ὅπως ἔχοι. σκεψάμενος γὰρ
the(-things) very-far being-distant how they-were having-considered for
πόσην ἂν ὁδὸν ἵππος καθανύτοι τῆς ἡμέρας ἐλαυνόμενος
how-great — a-distance a-horse could-cover of-the day being-ridden
ὥστε διαρκεῖν, ἐποιήσατο ἱππῶνας τοσοῦτον διαλείποντας
so-as to-hold-out he-made posting-stations so-much apart
καὶ ἵππους ἐν αὐτοῖς κατέστησε καὶ τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους
and horses in them he-stationed and the(-men) taking-care
τούτων, καὶ ἄνδρα ἐφ' ἑκάστῳ τῶν τόπων ἔταξε
of-these and a-man at each of-the places he-appointed
τὸν ἐπιτήδειον παραδέχεσθαι τὰ φερόμενα γράμματα
the(-one) suitable to-receive the being-brought letters
καὶ παραδιδόναι καὶ παραλαμβάνειν τοὺς ἀπειρηκότας
and to-pass(-them)-on and to-take-over the exhausted
ἵππους καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἄλλους πέμπειν νεαλεῖς·
horses and men and others to-send fresh
ἔστι δ' ὅτε οὐδὲ τὰς νύκτας φασὶν ἵστασθαι ταύτην 18
there-are and times-when not-even the nights they-say to-stop this
τὴν πορείαν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἡμερινῷ ἀγγέλῳ τὸν νυκτερινὸν
the journey but to-the day messenger the night(-one)
διαδέχεσθαι. τούτων δὲ οὕτω γιγνομένων φασί τινες θᾶττον
to-succeed these and so happening say some faster

τῶν γεράνων τὴν πορείαν ταύτην ἀνύτειν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο
than-the cranes the journey this to-accomplish if and this
ψεύδονται, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι γε τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πεζῇ πορειῶν
they-lie but that at-least of-the human on-land journeys
αὕτη ταχίστη, τοῦτο εὔδηλον. ἀγαθὸν δὲ ὡς τάχιστα
this(-is) fastest this(-is) clear good and(-it-is) as quickly-as-possible
ἕκαστον αἰσθανόμενον ὡς τάχιστα ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.
each(-thing) perceiving as quickly-as-possible to-take-care(-of-it)

19 Ἐπεὶ δὲ περιῆλθεν ὁ ἐνιαυτός, συνήγειρε στρατιὰν εἰς
When and had-come-round the year he-gathered an-army into
Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ λέγεται αὐτῷ γενέσθαι εἰς δώδεκα μὲν
Babylon and is-said to-him to-have-been about twelve indeed
ἱππέων μυριάδας, εἰς δισχίλια δὲ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα,
of-horsemen ten-thousands about two-thousand and chariots scythe-bearing
πεζῶν δὲ εἰς μυριάδας ἑξήκοντα.
of-foot and about ten-thousands sixty

20 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα συνεσκεύαστο αὐτῷ, ὥρμα δὴ ταύτην
when and these(-things) had-been-prepared by-him he-set-out indeed this
τὴν στρατείαν ἐν ᾗ λέγεται καταστρέψασθαι πάντα τὰ
the campaign in which he-is-said to-have-subdued all the
ἔθνη ὅσα Συρίαν ἐκβάντι οἰκεῖ μέχρι Ἐρυθρᾶς
nations as-many-as Syria to-one-going-beyond dwell as-far-as Red
θαλάττης. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἡ εἰς Αἴγυπτον στρατεία
Sea after and these(-things) the into Egypt campaign
λέγεται γενέσθαι καὶ καταστρέψασθαι Αἴγυπτον.
is-said to-have-occurred and to-have-subdued Egypt

21 καὶ ἐκ τούτου τὴν ἀρχὴν ὥριζεν αὐτῷ πρὸς ἕω μὲν
and after this the empire bounded for-him toward dawn indeed
ἡ Ἐρυθρὰ θάλαττα, πρὸς ἄρκτον δὲ ὁ Εὔξεινος πόντος,
the Red Sea toward north and the Euxine sea
πρὸς ἑσπέραν δὲ Κύπρος καὶ Αἴγυπτος, πρὸς μεσημβρίαν
toward evening and Cyprus and Egypt toward south

δὲ Αἰθιοπία. τούτων δὲ τὰ πέρατα τὰ μὲν διὰ
and Ethiopia of-these and the extremities the(-ones) indeed because-of
θάλπος, τὰ δὲ διὰ ψῦχος, τὰ δὲ διὰ ὕδωρ,
heat the(-others) and because-of cold the(-others) and because-of water
τὰ δὲ δι' ἀνυδρίαν δυσοίκητα.
the(-others) and because-of waterlessness hard-to-inhabit(-are)
αὐτὸς δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων τὴν δίαιταν ποιησάμενος, τὸν 22
himself and in middle of-these the living having-made the
μὲν ἀμφὶ τὸν χειμῶνα χρόνον διῆγεν ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἑπτὰ
indeed about the winter time he-spent in Babylon seven
μῆνας· αὕτη γὰρ ἀλεεινὴ ἡ χώρα· τὸν δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸ ἔαρ
months this for warm the country the and about the spring
τρεῖς μῆνας ἐν Σούσοις· τὴν δὲ ἀκμὴν τοῦ θέρους δύο
three months in Susa the and height of-the summer two
μῆνας ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις· οὕτω δὴ ποιοῦντ' αὐτὸν λέγουσιν
months in Ecbatana so indeed doing him they-say
ἐν ἐαρινῷ θάλπει καὶ ψύχει διάγειν ἀεί.
in spring-like warmth and coolness to-live always
οὕτω δὲ διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὡς πᾶν μὲν 23
so and were-disposed toward him the men that every indeed
ἔθνος μειονεκτεῖν ἐδόκει, εἰ μὴ Κύρῳ πέμψειεν ὅ τι καλὸν
nation to-be-worse-off seemed if not to-Cyrus it-should-send what ever fine
αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἢ φύοιτο ἢ τρέφοιτο ἢ τεχνῷτο,
with-them in the country either grew or was-reared or was-crafted
πᾶσα δὲ πόλις ὡσαύτως, πᾶς δὲ ἰδιώτης πλούσιος ἂν
every and city likewise every and private(-man) rich —
ᾤετο γενέσθαι, εἴ τι Κύρῳ χαρίσαιτο· καὶ γὰρ ὁ
thought to-become if anything to-Cyrus he-should-gratify and for —
Κῦρος λαμβάνων παρ' ἑκάστων ὧν ἀφθονίαν εἶχον οἱ
Cyrus receiving from each of-what abundance had the(-ones)
διδόντες ἀντεδίδου ὧν σπανίζοντας αὐτοὺς αἰσθάνοιτο.
giving gave-in-return of-what lacking them he-perceived

In old age, at home in Persia, Cyrus dreams that he will soon depart to the gods, sacrifices on the heights, and thanks them for his life. On the third day, still taking no food, he calls his sons and friends and counts his life happy. He leaves the kingdom to Cambyses and satrapies to Tanaoxares, urges them to honor each other, since brothers are the truest friends, says the soul does not die with the body, and asks to be buried in the earth. He bids farewell, covers his face, and dies.

1 Οὕτω δὲ τοῦ αἰῶνος προκεχωρηκότος, μάλα δὴ πρεσβύτης
So and the life having-advanced very indeed an-old-man
ὢν ὁ Κῦρος ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Πέρσας τὸ ἕβδομον ἐπὶ τῆς
being — Cyrus arrives to Persia the seventh(-time) in the
αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς· καὶ ὁ μὲν πατὴρ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ πάλαι δὴ
his-own rule and the indeed father and the mother long-before indeed
ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐτετελευτήκεσαν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔθυσε τὰ
as fitting had-died for-him — and Cyrus sacrificed the
νομιζόμενα ἱερὰ καὶ τοῦ χοροῦ ἡγήσατο Πέρσαις κατὰ τὰ
customary sacrifices and the dance led for-Persians according-to the
πάτρια καὶ τὰ δῶρα πᾶσι διέδωκεν ὥσπερ εἰώθει.
ancestral(-customs) and the gifts to-all distributed as he-was-accustomed
2 κοιμηθεὶς δ' ἐν τῷ βασιλείῳ ὄναρ εἶδε τοιόνδε.
having-fallen-asleep and in the palace a-dream he-saw such
ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ προσελθὼν κρείττων τις ἢ κατὰ
it-seemed to-him having-approached greater someone than in-the-likeness-of
ἄνθρωπον εἰπεῖν, Συσκευάζου, ὦ Κῦρε· ἤδη γὰρ εἰς
a-man to-say Make-ready O Cyrus already for to
θεοὺς ἄπει. τοῦτο δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ ὄναρ ἐξηγέρθη καὶ
gods you-will-depart this and having-seen the dream he-awoke and
σχεδὸν ἐδόκει εἰδέναι ὅτι τοῦ βίου ἡ τελευτὴ παρείη.
almost he-seemed to-know that of-the life the end was-at-hand

εὐθὺς οὖν λαβὼν ἱερεῖα ἔθυε Διί τε πατρῴῳ καὶ 3
at-once then having-taken victims he-sacrificed to-Zeus both ancestral and
Ἡλίῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, ὡς Πέρσαι
to-the-Sun and to-the other gods on the heights as Persians
θύουσιν, ὧδε ἐπευχόμενος, Ζεῦ πατρῷε καὶ Ἥλιε καὶ πάντες
sacrifice thus praying Zeus ancestral and Sun and all
θεοί, δέχεσθε τάδε καὶ τελεστήρια πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν
gods accept these both as-offerings-for-success for-many and fine
πράξεων καὶ χαριστήρια ὅτι ἐσημήνατέ μοι καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς
deeds and as-thanks that you-signified to-me both in sacrifices
καὶ ἐν οὐρανίοις σημείοις καὶ ἐν οἰωνοῖς καὶ ἐν φήμαις
and in heavenly signs and in birds and in omens
ἅ τ' ἐχρῆν ποιεῖν καὶ ἃ οὐκ ἐχρῆν. πολλὴ δ' ὑμῖν
what both (one)-should to-do and what not (one)-should much and to-you
χάρις ὅτι κἀγὼ ἐγίγνωσκον τὴν ὑμετέραν ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ
thanks that I-too recognized the your care and
οὐδεπώποτε ἐπὶ ταῖς εὐτυχίαις ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον ἐφρόνησα.
never at the good-fortunes beyond man was-I-proud
αἰτοῦμαι δ' ὑμᾶς δοῦναι καὶ νῦν παισὶ μὲν καὶ γυναικὶ
I-ask and you to-grant also now to-children indeed and to-wife
καὶ φίλοις καὶ πατρίδι εὐδαιμονίαν, ἐμοὶ δὲ οἷόνπερ
and to-friends and to-fatherland happiness to-me and such-very-as
αἰῶνα δεδώκατε, τοιαύτην καὶ τελευτὴν δοῦναι.
life you-have-given such also an-end to-grant
ὃ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ποιήσας καὶ οἴκαδε ἐλθὼν ἔδοξεν ἡδέως 4
he indeed then such(-things) having-done and home having-come seemed gladly
ἀναπαύσεσθαι καὶ κατεκλίθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, οἱ
to-rest and lay-down when and the-hour was the(-men)
τεταγμένοι προσιόντες λούσασθαι αὐτὸν ἐκέλευον. ὃ δ'
appointed approaching to-bathe him bade he and
ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡδέως ἀναπαύοιτο. οἱ δ' αὖ τεταγμένοι,
said that gladly he-was-resting the(-men) and in-turn appointed

ἐπεὶ ὥρα ἦν, δεῖπνον παρετίθεσαν· τῷ δὲ ἡ ψυχὴ
when the-hour was dinner set-before(-him) for-the(-man) and the soul
σῖτον μὲν οὐ προσίετο, διψῆν δ᾽ ἐδόκει, καὶ ἔπιεν ἡδέως.
food indeed not accepted to-thirst and he-seemed and drank gladly
5 ὡς δὲ καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ συνέβαινεν αὐτῷ ταὐτὰ
when and also on-the next-day happened to-him the-same
καὶ τῇ τρίτῃ, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς παῖδας· οἳ δ᾽ ἔτυχον
and on-the third he-summoned the sons they and happened
συνηκολουθηκότες αὐτῷ καὶ ὄντες ἐν Πέρσαις· ἐκάλεσε
having-followed him and being in Persia he-summoned
δὲ καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τὰς Περσῶν ἀρχάς· παρόντων
and also the friends and the of-Persians authorities present
δὲ πάντων ἤρχετο τοιοῦδε λόγου.
and all he-began such a-speech
6 Παῖδες ἐμοὶ καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες φίλοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν
Sons my and all the(-men) present friends to-me indeed
τοῦ βίου τὸ τέλος ἤδη πάρεστιν· ἐκ πολλῶν τοῦτο
of-the life the end already is-at-hand from many(-signs) this
σαφῶς γιγνώσκω· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή, ὅταν τελευτήσω, ὡς περὶ
clearly I-know you and must when I-die as about
εὐδαίμονος ἐμοῦ καὶ λέγειν καὶ ποιεῖν πάντα. ἐγὼ γὰρ
a-happy me both to-speak and to-do all-things I for
παῖς τε ὢν τὰ ἐν παισὶ νομιζόμενα καλὰ δοκῶ
a-child both being the(-things) among children held fine I-seem
κεκαρπῶσθαι, ἐπεί τε ἤβησα, τὰ ἐν νεανίσκοις, τέλειός
to-have-enjoyed when and I-grew-up the(-things) among young-men full-grown
τε ἀνὴρ γενόμενος τὰ ἐν ἀνδράσι· σὺν τῷ χρόνῳ
and a-man having-become the(-things) among men with the time
τε προϊόντι ἀεὶ συναυξανομένην ἐπιγιγνώσκειν ἐδόκουν
and advancing always increasing-along to-recognize I-seemed
καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν δύναμιν, ὥστε καὶ τοὐμὸν γῆρας οὐδεπώποτε
also the my power so-that also the-my old-age never

ἠσθόμην τῆς ἐμῆς νεότητος ἀσθενέστερον γιγνόμενον, καὶ
did-I-perceive than-the my youth weaker becoming and
οὔτ' ἐπιχειρήσας οὔτ' ἐπιθυμήσας οἶδα ὅτου ἠτύχησα.
neither having-attempted nor having-desired(-anything) I-know of-what I-failed
καὶ τοὺς μὲν φίλους ἐπεῖδον δι' ἐμοῦ εὐδαίμονας 7
and the indeed friends I-have-seen through me happy
γενομένους, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους ὑπ' ἐμοῦ δουλωθέντας·
having-become the and enemies by me enslaved
καὶ τὴν πατρίδα πρόσθεν ἰδιωτεύουσαν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ
and the fatherland before private in — Asia
νῦν προτετιμημένην καταλείπω· ὧν τ' ἐκτησάμην
now preferred-in-honor I-leave of-what and I-acquired
οὐδὲν ὅ τι οὐ διεσωσάμην. καὶ τὸν μὲν παρελθόντα
nothing what ever not I-preserved and the indeed past
χρόνον ἔπραττον οὕτως ὥσπερ ηὐχόμην· φόβος δέ μοι
time I-fared so as I-prayed a-fear but me
συμπαρομαρτῶν μή τι ἐν τῷ ἐπιόντι χρόνῳ ἢ
accompanying lest anything in the coming time either
ἴδοιμι ἢ ἀκούσαιμι ἢ πάθοιμι χαλεπόν, οὐκ εἴα τελέως
I-should-see or should-hear or should-suffer hard not allowed fully
με μέγα φρονεῖν οὐδ' εὐφραίνεσθαι ἐκπεπταμένως.
me greatly to-be-proud nor to-rejoice unrestrainedly
νῦν δ' ἢν τελευτήσω, καταλείπω μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, 8
now and if I-die I-leave indeed you O sons
ζῶντας οὓς μοι ἔδοσαν οἱ θεοὶ γενέσθαι· καταλείπω δὲ
living whom to-me granted the gods to-be-born I-leave and
πατρίδα καὶ φίλους εὐδαιμονοῦντας·
fatherland and friends being-happy
ὥστε πῶς οὐκ ἂν ἐγὼ δικαίως μακαριζόμενος τὸν ἀεὶ 9
so-that how not — I justly being-deemed-blessed the always
χρόνον μνήμης τυγχάνοιμι; δεῖ δὲ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν
time remembrance should-obtain (one)-must and also the kingship

με ἤδη σαφηνίσαντα καταλιπεῖν, ὡς ἂν μὴ ἀμφίλογος
me now having-made-clear to-leave so-that — not disputed
γενομένη πράγματα ὑμῖν παράσχῃ. ἐγὼ δ' οὖν φιλῶ μὲν
having-become troubles to-you it-may-cause I and then love indeed
ἀμφοτέρους ὑμᾶς ὁμοίως, ὦ παῖδες· τὸ δὲ προβουλεύειν
both you equally O sons the and to-take-counsel-first
καὶ τὸ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐφ' ὅ τι ἂν καιρὸς δοκῇ εἶναι, τοῦτο
and the to-lead in what ever — occasion seems to-be this
προστάττω τῷ προτέρῳ γενομένῳ καὶ πλειόνων κατὰ
I-assign to-the earlier born and of-more according-to
τὸ εἰκὸς ἐμπείρῳ.
the likelihood experienced
10 ἐπαιδεύθην δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως ὑπὸ τῆσδε τῆς ἐμῆς
I-was-educated and also myself so by this the my
τε καὶ ὑμετέρας πατρίδος, τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις οὐ μόνον
both and your fatherland to-the elder not only
ἀδελφοῖς ἀλλὰ καὶ πολίταις καὶ ὁδῶν καὶ θάκων καὶ
brothers but also fellow-citizens both in-ways and in-seats and
λόγων ὑπείκειν, καὶ ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ παῖδες, οὕτως ἐξ
in-speaking to-yield and you and O sons so from
ἀρχῆς ἐπαίδευον, τοὺς μὲν γεραιτέρους προτιμᾶν, τῶν
beginning I-educated the indeed elders to-honor-above by-the
δὲ νεωτέρων προτετιμῆσθαι· ὡς οὖν παλαιὰ καὶ εἰθισμένα
and younger to-be-honored-above as then ancient and customary
καὶ ἔννομα λέγοντος ἐμοῦ οὕτως ἀποδέχεσθε.
and lawful(-things) saying me so accept(-them)
11 καὶ σὺ μέν, ὦ Καμβύση, τὴν βασιλείαν ἔχε, θεῶν
and you indeed O Cambyses the kingship hold the-gods
τε διδόντων καὶ ἐμοῦ ὅσον ἐν ἐμοί· σοὶ δ',
both granting(-it) and I as-far-as in my-power(-is) to-you and
ὦ Ταναοξάρη, σατράπην εἶναι δίδωμι Μήδων τε καὶ
O Tanaoxares satrap to-be I-give of-Medes both and

Ἀρμενίων καὶ τρίτων Καδουσίων· ταῦτα δέ σοι διδοὺς
of-Armenians and third of-Cadusians these(-things) and to-you giving
νομίζω ἀρχὴν μὲν μείζω καὶ τοὔνομα τῆς βασιλείας τῷ
I-think rule indeed greater and the-name of-the kingship to-the
πρεσβυτέρῳ καταλιπεῖν, εὐδαιμονίαν δὲ σοὶ ἀλυποτέραν.
elder to-leave happiness and to-you more-free-from-pain
ὁποίας μὲν γὰρ ἀνθρωπίνης εὐφροσύνης ἐνδεὴς ἔσῃ 12
what-sort indeed for of-human enjoyment lacking you-will-be
οὐχ ὁρῶ· ἀλλὰ πάντα σοι τὰ δοκοῦντα ἀνθρώπους
not I-see but all-things for-you the(-things) seeming men
εὐφραίνειν παρέσται. τὸ δὲ δυσκαταπρακτοτέρων τε ἐρᾶν
to-delight will-be-at-hand the but harder-to-achieve-things both to-desire
καὶ τὸ πολλὰ μεριμνᾶν καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἡσυχίαν
and the many-things to-be-anxious-about and the not to-be-able quiet
ἔχειν κεντριζόμενον ὑπὸ τῆς πρὸς τἀμὰ ἔργα φιλονικίας καὶ
to-have being-goaded by the toward my deeds rivalry and
τὸ ἐπιβουλεύειν καὶ τὸ ἐπιβουλεύεσθαι, ταῦτα τῷ
the plotting and the being-plotted-against these(-things) for-the(-man)
βασιλεύοντι ἀνάγκη σοῦ μᾶλλον συμπαρομαρτεῖν, ἃ
being-king necessity than-you more to-accompany which
σάφ᾽ ἴσθι τοῦ εὐφραίνεσθαι πολλὰς ἀσχολίας παρέχει.
clearly know of-the enjoying many hindrances provide
οἶσθα μὲν οὖν καὶ σύ, ὦ Καμβύση, ὅτι οὐ τόδε τὸ 13
you-know indeed then also you O Cambyses that not this the
χρυσοῦν σκῆπτρον τὸ τὴν βασιλείαν διασῴζόν ἐστιν,
golden scepter the(-thing) the kingship preserving is
ἀλλ᾽ οἱ πιστοὶ φίλοι σκῆπτρον βασιλεῦσιν ἀληθέστατον
but the faithful friends scepter for-kings truest
καὶ ἀσφαλέστατον. πιστοὺς δὲ μὴ νόμιζε φύσει φύεσθαι
and safest faithful but not think by-nature to-grow
ἀνθρώπους· πᾶσι γὰρ ἂν οἱ αὐτοὶ πιστοὶ φαίνοιντο, ὥσπερ
men to-all for — the same faithful would-appear as

καὶ τἆλλα τὰ πεφυκότα πᾶσι τὰ αὐτὰ φαίνεται· ἀλλὰ
also the-other(-things) the natural to-all the same appear but
πιστοὺς τίθεσθαι δεῖ ἕκαστον ἑαυτῷ· ἡ δὲ κτῆσις αὐτῶν
faithful to-make must each for-himself the and acquisition of-them
ἔστιν οὐδαμῶς σὺν τῇ βίᾳ, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σὺν τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ.
is in-no-way with the force but rather with the kindness
14 εἰ οὖν καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς πειράσῃ συμφύλακας τῆς βασιλείας
if then also others some you-will-try fellow-guardians of-the kingship
ποιεῖσθαι μηδαμόθεν πρότερον ἄρχου ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ
to-make from-nowhere earlier begin than from the(-one)
ὁμόθεν γενομένου. καὶ πολῖταί τοι ἄνθρωποι
from-the-same-source born also fellow-citizens you-know men
ἀλλοδαπῶν οἰκειότεροι καὶ σύσσιτοι ἀποσκήνων· οἱ
than-foreigners closer and messmates than-those-of-other-tents the(-ones)
δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σπέρματος φύντες καὶ ὑπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς
but from the same seed sprung and by the same
μητρὸς τραφέντες καὶ ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ οἰκίᾳ αὐξηθέντες καὶ
mother reared and in the same house grown-up and
ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν γονέων ἀγαπώμενοι καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν
by the same parents loved and the same
μητέρα καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν πατέρα προσαγορεύοντες, πῶς οὐ
mother and the same father addressing how not
πάντων οὗτοι οἰκειότατοι;
of-all these closest(-are)
15 μὴ οὖν ἃ οἱ θεοὶ ὑφήγηνται ἀγαθὰ εἰς οἰκειότητα
not then what the gods have-led-the-way(-to) goods for kinship
ἀδελφοῖς μάταιά ποτε ποιήσητε, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ ταῦτα
to-brothers vain ever make but on these(-things)
εὐθὺς οἰκοδομεῖτε ἄλλα φιλικὰ ἔργα· καὶ οὕτως ἀεὶ
at-once build other friendly deeds and so always
ἀνυπέρβλητος ἄλλοις ἔσται ἡ ὑμετέρα φιλία. ἑαυτοῦ τοι
unsurpassable by-others will-be the your friendship himself you-know

κήδεται ὁ προνοῶν ἀδελφοῦ· τίνι γὰρ ἄλλῳ
cares-for the(-man) taking-forethought-for a-brother for-whom for other
ἀδελφὸς μέγας ὢν οὕτω καλὸν ὡς ἀδελφῷ; τίς δ' ἄλλος
a-brother great being so fine(-is) as for-a-brother who and other
τιμήσεται δι' ἄνδρα μέγα δυνάμενον οὕτως ὡς ἀδελφός;
will-be-honored through a-man greatly being-powerful so as a-brother
τίνα δὲ φοβήσεταί τις ἀδικεῖν ἀδελφοῦ μεγάλου ὄντος 16
whom and will-fear anyone to-wrong a-brother great being
οὕτως ὡς τὸν ἀδελφόν; μήτε οὖν θᾶττον μηδεὶς σοῦ
so as the brother neither then more-quickly let-anyone than-you
τούτῳ ὑπακουέτω μήτε προθυμότερον παρέστω· οὐδενὶ
to-this(-man) submit nor more-eagerly stand-by(-him) to-no-one
γὰρ οἰκειότερα τὰ τούτου οὔτε ἀγαθὰ οὔτε
for more-one's-own(-are) the(-things) of-this(-man) either good or
δεινὰ ἢ σοί. ἐννόει δὲ καὶ τάδε· τίνι χαρισάμενος
terrible than to-you consider and also these(-things) to-whom having-done-a-favor
ἐλπίσαις ἂν μειζόνων τυχεῖν ἢ τούτῳ; τίνι δ' ἂν
could-you-hope — greater(-things) to-obtain than to-this(-man) whom and —
βοηθήσας ἰσχυρότερον σύμμαχον ἀντιλάβοις; τίνα δ'
having-helped a-stronger ally could-you-receive-in-return whom and
αἴσχιον μὴ φιλεῖν ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; τίνα δὲ ἁπάντων
more-shameful not to-love than the brother whom and of-all
κάλλιον προτιμᾶν ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; μόνου τοι, ὦ
more-fittingly to-honor-first than the brother alone you-know O
Καμβύση, πρωτεύοντος ἀδελφοῦ παρ' ἀδελφῷ οὐδὲ
Cambyses being-first a-brother with a-brother not-even
φθόνος παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐφικνεῖται.
envy from the others reaches
ἀλλὰ πρὸς θεῶν πατρῴων, ὦ παῖδες, τιμᾶτε ἀλλήλους, 17
but by gods ancestral O sons honor one-another
εἴ τι καὶ τοῦ ἐμοὶ χαρίζεσθαι μέλει ὑμῖν· οὐ γὰρ δήπου
if at-all also the to-me to-be-gracious concerns you not for surely

τοῦτό γε σαφῶς δοκεῖτε εἰδέναι ὡς οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐγὼ
this at-least clearly you-seem to-know that nothing any-longer I
ἔσομαι, ἐπειδὰν τοῦ ἀνθρωπίνου βίου τελευτήσω· οὐδὲ
shall-be when of-the human life I-end not-even
γὰρ νῦν τοι τήν γ' ἐμὴν ψυχὴν ἑωρᾶτε, ἀλλ' οἷς
for now you-know the at-least my soul did-you-see but by-what
διεπράττετο, τούτοις αὐτὴν ὡς οὖσαν κατεφωρᾶτε.
it-accomplished by-these it as existing you-detected

18 τὰς δὲ τῶν ἄδικα παθόντων ψυχὰς οὔπω κατενοήσατε
the and of-the(-ones) wrongs having-suffered souls not-yet have-you-observed
οἵους μὲν φόβους τοῖς μιαιφόνοις ἐμβάλλουσιν, οἵους δὲ
what-sort indeed terrors on-the blood-guilty they-cast what-sort and
παλαμναίους τοῖς ἀνοσίοις ἐπιπέμπουσι; τοῖς δὲ φθιμένοις
avengers on-the unholy they-send-against to-the and dead
τὰς τιμὰς διαμένειν ἔτι ἂν δοκεῖτε, εἰ μηδενὸς αὐτῶν
the honors to-remain still — do-you-think if of-none of-them
αἱ ψυχαὶ κύριαι ἦσαν;
the souls masters were

19 οὔτοι ἔγωγε, ὦ παῖδες, οὐδὲ τοῦτο πώποτε ἐπείσθην ὡς ἡ
not-indeed I-at-least O sons even this ever was-persuaded that the
ψυχὴ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐν θνητῷ σώματι ᾖ, ζῇ, ὅταν δὲ τούτου
soul as-long-as indeed — in a-mortal body it-is lives when but from-this
ἀπαλλαγῇ, τέθνηκεν· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι καὶ τὰ θνητὰ σώματα
it-is-released has-died I-see for that also the mortal bodies
ὅσον ἂν ἐν αὐτοῖς χρόνον ᾖ ἡ ψυχή, ζῶντα παρέχεται.
as-much — in them time is the soul alive it-renders

20 οὐδέ γε ὅπως ἄφρων ἔσται ἡ ψυχή, ἐπειδὰν τοῦ
nor at-least that senseless will-be the soul when from-the
ἄφρονος σώματος δίχα γένηται, οὐδὲ τοῦτο πέπεισμαι·
senseless body apart it-becomes even this have-I-been-persuaded
ἀλλ' ὅταν ἄκρατος καὶ καθαρὸς ὁ νοῦς ἐκκριθῇ, τότε καὶ
but when unmixed and pure the mind is-separated then also

φρονιμώτατον αὑτοῦ εἰκὸς εἶναι. διαλυομένου δὲ ἀνθρώπου
most-intelligent than-itself likely to-be being-dissolved and a-man
δῆλά ἐστιν ἕκαστα ἀπιόντα πρὸς τὸ ὁμόφυλον πλὴν τῆς
clear it-is each(-part) departing to the kindred except the
ψυχῆς· αὕτη δὲ μόνη οὔτε παροῦσα οὔτε ἀπιοῦσα ὁρᾶται.
soul this and alone neither being-present nor departing is-seen
ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγγύτερον μὲν τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων 21
consider and he-said that nearer indeed of-the human(-things)
θανάτῳ οὐδέν ἐστιν ὕπνου· ἡ δὲ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ψυχὴ τότε
to-death nothing is than-sleep the and of-the man soul then
δήπου θειοτάτη καταφαίνεται καὶ τότε τι τῶν μελλόντων
surely most-divine appears and then something of-the future
προορᾷ· τότε γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, μάλιστα ἐλευθεροῦται.
it-foresees then for as it-seems most it-is-freed
εἰ μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔχει ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἐγὼ οἶομαι 22
if indeed then so is these(-things) as I think
καὶ ἡ ψυχὴ καταλείπει τὸ σῶμα, καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ψυχὴν
also the soul leaves the body also the my soul
καταιδούμενοι ποιεῖτε ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ
revering do what I ask if but not so but
μένουσα ἡ ψυχὴ ἐν τῷ σώματι συναποθνῄσκει, ἀλλὰ θεούς
remaining the soul in the body dies-with(-it) but gods
γε τοὺς ἀεὶ ὄντας καὶ πάντ' ἐφορῶντας καὶ πάντα
at-least the(-ones) always being and all-things overseeing and all-things
δυναμένους, οἳ καὶ τήνδε τὴν τῶν ὅλων τάξιν συνέχουσιν
being-able who also this the of-the whole order hold-together
ἀτριβῆ καὶ ἀγήρατον καὶ ἀναμάρτητον καὶ ὑπὸ κάλλους
unworn and ageless and unerring and from beauty
καὶ μεγέθους ἀδιήγητον, τούτους φοβούμενοι μήποτ' ἀσεβὲς
and greatness indescribable these fearing never impious
μηδὲν μηδὲ ἀνόσιον μήτε ποιήσητε μήτε βουλεύσητε.
anything or unholy either do or plan

23 μετὰ μέντοι θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπων τὸ πᾶν γένος τὸ ἀεὶ
after however gods also of-men the whole race the always
ἐπιγιγνόμενον αἰδεῖσθε· οὐ γὰρ ἐν σκότῳ ὑμᾶς οἱ θεοὶ
succeeding reverence not for in darkness you the gods
ἀποκρύπτονται, ἀλλ' ἐμφανῆ πᾶσιν ἀνάγκη ἀεὶ ζῆν τὰ
hide but conspicuous to-all necessity always to-live the
ὑμέτερα ἔργα· ἃ ἢν μὲν καθαρὰ καὶ ἔξω τῶν ἀδίκων
your deeds which if indeed pure and outside the unjust
φαίνηται, δυνατοὺς ὑμᾶς ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἀναδείξει·
appear powerful you among all men they-will-show
εἰ δὲ εἰς ἀλλήλους ἄδικόν τι φρονήσετε, ἐκ πάντων
if but against one-another unjust anything you-will-intend from all
ἀνθρώπων τὸ ἀξιόπιστοι εἶναι ἀποβαλεῖτε. οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἂν
men the trustworthy to-be you-will-lose no-one for —
ἔτι πιστεῦσαι δύναιτο ὑμῖν, οὐδ' εἰ πάνυ προθυμοῖτο,
any-longer to-trust could you not-even if very he-were-eager
ἰδὼν ἀδικούμενον τὸν μάλιστα φιλίᾳ προσήκοντα.
having-seen being-wronged the(-one) most in-friendship related
24 εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ἱκανῶς διδάσκω οἵους χρὴ πρὸς
if indeed then I you sufficiently teach what-sort (one)-must toward
ἀλλήλους εἶναι· εἰ δὲ μή, καὶ παρὰ τῶν προγεγενημένων
one-another to-be if but not also from the(-men) of-the-past
μανθάνετε· αὕτη γὰρ ἀρίστη διδασκαλία. οἱ μὲν γὰρ
learn this for best teaching(-is) the indeed for
πολλοὶ διαγεγένηνται φίλοι μὲν γονεῖς παισί, φίλοι δὲ
many have-continued friends indeed parents to-children friends and
ἀδελφοὶ ἀδελφοῖς· ἤδη δέ τινες τούτων καὶ ἐναντία
brothers to-brothers already and some of-these also opposite(-things)
ἀλλήλοις ἔπραξαν· ὁποτέροις ἂν οὖν αἰσθάνησθε τὰ
to-one-another did whichever — then you-perceive the(-things)

πραχθέντα συνενεγκόντα, ταῦτα δὴ αἱρούμενοι ὀρθῶς
done having-been-advantageous these(-things) indeed choosing rightly
ἂν βουλεύοισθε.
— you-would-deliberate
καὶ τούτων μὲν ἴσως ἤδη ἄλις. τὸ δ' ἐμὸν σῶμα, ὦ παῖδες, 25
and of-these indeed perhaps already enough the and my body O sons
ὅταν τελευτήσω, μήτε ἐν χρυσῷ θῆτε μήτε ἐν ἀργύρῳ μήτε
when I-die neither in gold place nor in silver nor
ἐν ἄλλῳ μηδενί, ἀλλὰ τῇ γῇ ὡς τάχιστα ἀπόδοτε. τί
in other none but to-the earth as quickly-as-possible give(-it)-back what
γὰρ τούτου μακαριώτερον τοῦ γῇ μειχθῆναι, ἢ πάντα
for than-this more-blessed than-the with-earth to-be-mingled which all
μὲν τὰ καλά, πάντα δὲ τἀγαθὰ φύει τε καὶ τρέφει;
indeed the fine(-things) all and the-good-things brings-forth both and nourishes
ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ ἄλλως φιλάνθρωπος ἐγενόμην καὶ νῦν ἡδέως ἄν
I and also otherwise a-lover-of-men became and now gladly —
μοι δοκῶ κοινωνῆσαι τοῦ εὐεργετοῦντος ἀνθρώπους.
to-me I-seem to-share with-the(-thing) benefiting men
ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἤδη, ἔφη, ἐκλείπειν μοι φαίνεται ἡ ψυχὴ 26
but for already he-said to-fail to-me appears the soul
ὅθενπερ, ὡς ἔοικε, πᾶσιν ἄρχεται ἀπολείπουσα. εἴ τις
from-where-very as it-seems in-all it-begins leaving if anyone
οὖν ὑμῶν ἢ δεξιᾶς βούλεται τῆς ἐμῆς ἅψασθαι ἢ
then of-you either right-hand wishes the my to-touch or
ὄμμα τοὐμὸν ζῶντος ἔτι προσιδεῖν ἐθέλει, προσίτω· ὅταν
eye my living still to-look-at wishes let-him-approach when
δ' ἐγὼ ἐγκαλύψωμαι, αἰτοῦμαι ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, μηδεὶς
and I cover-my-face I-ask you O sons no-one
ἔτ' ἀνθρώπων τοὐμὸν σῶμα ἰδέτω, μηδ' αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς.
any-longer of-men my body let-see nor yourselves you

27 Πέρσας μέντοι πάντας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους ἐπὶ τὸ μνῆμα
Persians however all and the allies to the monument
τοὐμὸν παρακαλεῖτε συνησθησομένους ἐμοὶ ὅτι ἐν τῷ
my summon to-rejoice-with me that in the
ἀσφαλεῖ ἤδη ἔσομαι, ὡς μηδὲν ἂν ἔτι κακὸν παθεῖν,
safe already I-shall-be so-that nothing — any-longer evil to-suffer
μήτε ἢν μετὰ τοῦ θείου γένωμαι μήτε ἢν μηδὲν ἔτι
either if with the divine I-am or if nothing any-longer
ὦ· ὁπόσοι δ' ἂν ἔλθωσι, τούτους εὖ ποιήσαντες ὁπόσα
I-am as-many-as and — come these well having-treated as-much-as
ἐπ' ἀνδρὶ εὐδαίμονι νομίζεται ἀποπέμπετε.
for a-man happy is-customary send-away

28 καὶ τοῦτο, ἔφη, μέμνησθέ μου τελευταῖον, τοὺς φίλους
and this he-said remember of-me last the friends
εὐεργετοῦντες καὶ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς δυνήσεσθε κολάζειν. καὶ
benefiting also the enemies you-will-be-able to-punish and
χαίρετε, ὦ φίλοι παῖδες, καὶ τῇ μητρὶ ἀπαγγέλλετε ὡς
farewell O dear sons and to-the mother report(-it) as
παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες καὶ οἱ
from me and all and the(-ones) present and the(-ones)
ἀπόντες φίλοι χαίρετε. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ πάντας
absent friends farewell these(-things) having-said and all
δεξιωσάμενος ἐνεκαλύψατο καὶ οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν.
having-given-the-right-hand he-covered-his-face and so died

VIII · THE DECLINE OF THE PERSIANS

Xenophon argues that after Cyrus' death his sons quarreled, the nations revolted, and the Persians declined in every respect. They break their oaths and reward traitors, extort money from the innocent, and neglect the toil and hunting of their ancestors, keeping customs like the single daily meal in name only. Their children learn injustice and poisoning, their nobles grow soft with carpets and

gloves, and their cavalry is made up of servants. Their chariots and infantry no longer close with the enemy, so that the Persians now go to war only with Greeks beside them, and he rests his case on their deeds.

Ὅτι μὲν δὴ καλλίστη καὶ μεγίστη τῶν 1
That indeed then finest and greatest of-the(-kingdoms)
ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἡ Κύρου βασιλεία ἐγένετο αὐτὴ
in — Asia the of-Cyrus kingdom became itself
ἑαυτῇ μαρτυρεῖ. ὡρίσθη γὰρ πρὸς ἕω μὲν τῇ
for-itself bears-witness it-was-bounded for toward dawn indeed by-the
Ἐρυθρᾷ θαλάττῃ, πρὸς ἄρκτον δὲ τῷ Εὐξείνῳ
Red Sea toward north and by-the Euxine
πόντῳ, πρὸς ἑσπέραν δὲ Κύπρῳ καὶ Αἰγύπτῳ, πρὸς
sea toward evening and by-Cyprus and by-Egypt toward
μεσημβρίαν δὲ Αἰθιοπίᾳ. τοσαύτη δὲ γενομένη μιᾷ
south and by-Ethiopia so-great and having-become by-one
γνώμῃ τῇ Κύρου ἐκυβερνᾶτο, καὶ ἐκεῖνός τε τοὺς
mind the of-Cyrus it-was-governed and he both the(-men)
ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτῷ ὥσπερ ἑαυτοῦ παῖδας ἐτίμα τε καὶ
under himself as his-own children honored both and
ἐθεράπευεν, οἵ τε ἀρχόμενοι Κῦρον ὡς πατέρα
cared-for the(-men) and ruled Cyrus as a-father
ἐσέβοντο.
revered

ἐπεὶ μέντοι Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν, εὐθὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ 2
when however Cyrus died at-once indeed his
οἱ παῖδες ἐστασίαζον, εὐθὺς δὲ πόλεις καὶ ἔθνη
the sons quarreled at-once and cities and nations
ἀφίσταντο, πάντα δ᾽ ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἐτρέπετο. ὡς
revolted all-things and to the worse turned that
δ᾽ ἀληθῆ λέγω ἄρξομαι διδάσκων ἐκ τῶν θείων.
and true-things I-say I-shall-begin teaching from the divine(-things)

οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι πρότερον μὲν βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ
I-know for that earlier indeed the-king and the(-men)
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς τὰ ἔσχατα πεποιηκόσιν
under him even to-the(-men) the worst having-done
εἴτε ὅρκους ὀμόσαιεν, ἠμπέδουν, εἴτε δεξιὰς δοῖεν,
whether oaths they-swore kept(-them) or right-hands they-gave
ἐβεβαίουν.
confirmed(-them)

3 εἰ δὲ μὴ τοιοῦτοι ἦσαν καὶ τοιαύτην δόξαν εἶχον
if but not such they-were and such reputation had
οὐδ᾽ ἂν εἷς αὐτοῖς ἐπίστευσεν, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ
not-even — one them would-have-trusted as not-even
νῦν πιστεύει οὐδὲ εἷς ἔτι, ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσται ἡ
now trusts even one any-longer since has-become-known the
ἀσέβεια αὐτῶν. οὕτως οὐδὲ τότε ἐπίστευσαν ἂν
impiety of-them so not-even then would-have-trusted —
οἱ τῶν σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντων στρατηγοί· νῦν
the of-the(-men) with Cyrus having-gone-up generals now
δὲ δὴ τῇ πρόσθεν αὐτῶν δόξῃ πιστεύσαντες
but indeed by-the former their reputation having-trusted
ἐνεχείρισαν ἑαυτούς, καὶ ἀναχθέντες πρὸς βασιλέα
they-delivered themselves and having-been-led-up to the-king
ἀπετμήθησαν τὰς κεφαλάς. πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν
they-were-cut-off the heads many and also of-the
συστρατευσάντων βαρβάρων ἄλλοι ἄλλαις πίστεσιν
having-campaigned-with(-them) barbarians others by-other pledges
ἐξαπατηθέντες ἀπώλοντο.
having-been-deceived perished

4 πολὺ δὲ καὶ τάδε χείρονες νῦν εἰσι. πρόσθεν μὲν
much and also in-these(-things) worse now are before indeed
γὰρ εἴ τις ἢ διακινδυνεύσειε πρὸ βασιλέως ἢ πόλιν
for if anyone either risked-his-life for the-king or a-city

ἢ ἔθνος ὑποχείριον ποιήσειεν ἢ ἄλλο τι καλὸν ἢ
or nation subject made or other some fine or
ἀγαθὸν αὐτῷ διαπράξειεν, οὗτοι ἦσαν οἱ τιμώμενοι·
good for-him accomplished these were the(-ones) honored
νῦν δὲ καὶ ἤν τις ὥσπερ Μιθραδάτης τὸν πατέρα
now but even if anyone as Mithradates the father
Ἀριοβαρζάνην προδούς, καὶ ἤν τις ὥσπερ Ῥεομίθρης
Ariobarzanes having-betrayed and if anyone as Rheomithres
τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰ τέκνα καὶ τοὺς τῶν φίλων παῖδας
the wife and the children and the of-the friends children
ὁμήρους παρὰ τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ ἐγκαταλιπὼν καὶ τοὺς
as-hostages with the Egyptian having-left-behind and the
μεγίστους ὅρκους παραβὰς βασιλεῖ δόξῃ τι
greatest oaths having-transgressed to-the-king should-seem something
σύμφορον ποιῆσαι, οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ ταῖς μεγίσταις
advantageous to-have-done these are the(-ones) with-the greatest
τιμαῖς γεραιρόμενοι.
honors rewarded
ταῦτα οὖν ὁρῶντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πάντες 5
these(-things) then seeing the(-men) in — Asia all
ἐπὶ τὸ ἀσεβὲς καὶ τὸ ἄδικον τετραμμένοι εἰσίν·
to the impious and the unjust have-turned are
ὁποῖοί τινες γὰρ ἂν οἱ προστάται ὦσι, τοιοῦτοι
what-sort ever for — the leaders are such
καὶ οἱ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ
also the(-men) under them as for the most-part
γίγνονται. ἀθεμιστότεροι δὴ νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν
become more-lawless indeed now than before
ταύτῃ γεγένηνται.
in-this they-have-become

6 Εἴς γε μὴν χρήματα τῇδε ἀδικώτεροι· οὐ γὰρ
In at-least indeed money-matters in-this-way more-unjust not for
μόνον τοὺς πολλὰ ἡμαρτηκότας, ἀλλ᾽ ἤδη τοὺς
only the(-men) many-things having-erred but already the(-ones)
οὐδὲν ἠδικηκότας συλλαμβάνοντες ἀναγκάζουσι πρὸς
nothing having-done-wrong arresting they-compel for
οὐδὲν δίκαιον χρήματα ἀποτίνειν· ὥστ᾽ οὐδὲν ἧττον οἱ
nothing just money to-pay so-that nothing less the(-men)
πολλὰ ἔχειν δοκοῦντες τῶν πολλὰ ἠδικηκότων
much to-have seeming than-the(-men) many-things having-done-wrong
φοβοῦνται· καὶ εἰς χεῖρας οὐδ᾽ οὗτοι ἐθέλουσι τοῖς
are-afraid and into hands not-even these are-willing with-the
κρείττοσιν ἰέναι. οὐδέ γε ἀθροίζεσθαι εἰς βασιλικὴν
stronger to-come nor at-least to-assemble into royal
στρατιὰν θαρροῦσι.
army they-dare

7 τοιγαροῦν ὅστις ἂν πολεμῇ αὐτοῖς, πᾶσιν ἔξεστιν ἐν
accordingly whoever — makes-war on-them for-all it-is-possible in
τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν ἀναστρέφεσθαι ἄνευ μάχης ὅπως
the country their to-move-about without battle as
ἂν βούλωνται διὰ τὴν ἐκείνων περὶ μὲν θεοὺς
— they-wish because-of the their toward indeed gods
ἀσέβειαν, περὶ δὲ ἀνθρώπους ἀδικίαν. αἱ μὲν δὴ γνῶμαι
impiety toward and men injustice the indeed then minds
ταύτῃ τῷ παντὶ χείρους νῦν ἢ τὸ παλαιὸν
in-this-respect in-the whole(-thing) worse now than the old(-time)
αὐτῶν.
their(-are)

8 Ὡς δὲ οὐδὲ τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλονται ὥσπερ
That and not-even the bodies they-care-for as
πρόσθεν, νῦν αὖ τοῦτο διηγήσομαι. νόμιμον γὰρ
before now in-turn this I-shall-relate customary for

δὴ ἦν αὐτοῖς μήτε πτύειν μήτε ἀπομύττεσθαι.
indeed it-was for-them neither to-spit nor to-blow-the-nose
δῆλον δὲ ὅτι ταῦτα οὐ τοῦ ἐν τῷ σώματι
clear and that these(-things) not the in the body
ὑγροῦ φειδόμενοι ἐνόμισαν, ἀλλὰ βουλόμενοι
moisture sparing they-made-customary but wishing
διὰ πόνων καὶ ἱδρῶτος τὰ σώματα στερεοῦσθαι.
through toils and sweat the bodies to-harden
νῦν δὲ τὸ μὲν μὴ πτύειν μηδὲ ἀπομύττεσθαι ἔτι
now and the indeed not to-spit nor to-blow-the-nose still
διαμένει,
remains
τὸ δ' ἐκπονεῖν οὐδαμοῦ ἐπιτηδεύεται. καὶ μὴν πρόσθεν 9
the and working-hard nowhere is-practiced and indeed before
μὲν ἦν αὐτοῖς μονοσιτεῖν νόμιμον, ὅπως ὅλῃ
indeed it-was for-them to-eat-one-meal customary so-that whole
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ χρῷντο εἰς τὰς πράξεις καὶ εἰς τὸ
the day they-might-use for the affairs and for the
διαπονεῖσθαι. νῦν γε μὴν τὸ μὲν μονοσιτεῖν
toiling now at-least indeed the indeed eating-one-meal
ἔτι διαμένει, ἀρχόμενοι δὲ τοῦ σίτου ἡνίκαπερ
still remains beginning and the food at-the-hour-when
οἱ πρῳαίτατα ἀριστῶντες μέχρι τούτου ἐσθίοντες
the(-ones) earliest breakfasting until this(-time) eating
καὶ πίνοντες διάγουσιν ἕστεπερ οἱ ὀψιαίτατα
and drinking they-continue until-very the(-ones) latest
κοιμώμενοι.
going-to-bed
Ἦν δὲ αὐτοῖς νόμιμον μηδὲ προχοΐδας εἰσφέρεσθαι εἰς 10
It-was and for-them customary not-even chamber-pots to-bring-in into
τὰ συμπόσια, δῆλον ὅτι νομίζοντες τὸ μὴ ὑπερπίνειν
the drinking-parties clear that thinking the not over-drinking

ἧττον ἂν καὶ σώματα καὶ γνώμας σφάλλειν· νῦν
less — both bodies and minds to-trip-up now
δὲ τὸ μὲν μὴ εἰσφέρεσθαι ἔτι αὖ διαμένει,
but the indeed not to-bring(-them)-in still in-turn remains
τοσοῦτον δὲ πίνουσιν ὥστε ἀντὶ τοῦ εἰσφέρειν
so-much and they-drink that instead-of the carrying-in
αὐτοὶ ἐκφέρονται, ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι δύνωνται ὀρθούμενοι
themselves are-carried-out when no-longer they-can standing-upright
ἐξιέναι.
to-go-out

11 Ἀλλὰ μὴν κἀκεῖνο ἦν αὐτοῖς ἐπιχώριον τὸ μεταξὺ
But indeed also-that was for-them native the in-between
πορευομένους μήτε ἐσθίειν μήτε πίνειν μήτε τῶν
marching neither to-eat nor to-drink nor of-the
διὰ ταῦτα ἀναγκαίων μηδὲν ποιοῦντας φανεροὺς
because-of these(-things) necessary(-acts) anything doing evident
εἶναι· νῦν δ᾽ αὖ τὸ μὲν τούτων ἀπέχεσθαι ἔτι
to-be now and in-turn the indeed from-these to-abstain still
διαμένει, τὰς μέντοι πορείας οὕτω βραχείας ποιοῦνται
remains the however marches so short they-make
ὡς μηδέν᾽ ἂν ἔτι θαυμάσαι τὸ ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν
that no-one — any-longer would-wonder-at the abstaining from-the
ἀναγκαίων.
necessary(-acts)

12 Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐπὶ θήραν πρόσθεν μὲν τοσαυτάκις
But indeed also to hunting before indeed so-often
ἐξῄσαν ὥστε ἀρκεῖν αὐτοῖς τε καὶ ἵπποις γυμνάσια
they-went-out that to-suffice for-them both and for-horses as-exercise
τὰς θήρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξης ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ
the hunts when but Artaxerxes the king and the(-men)
σὺν αὐτῷ ἥττους τοῦ οἴνου ἐγένοντο, οὐκέτι ὁμοίως
with him weaker than-the wine became no-longer alike

οὔτ᾽ αὐτοὶ ἐξῇσαν οὔτε τοὺς ἄλλους ἐξῆγον ἐπὶ τὰς
either themselves went-out or the others led-out to the
θήρας· ἀλλὰ καὶ εἴ τινες φιλόπονοι γενόμενοι σὺν
hunts but even if any toil-loving having-become with
τοῖς περὶ αὑτοὺς ἱππεῦσι θαμὰ θηρῷεν φθονοῦντες
the about themselves horsemen often should-hunt envying
αὐτοῖς δῆλοι ἦσαν καὶ ὡς βελτίονας αὑτῶν
them evident they-were and as better than-themselves
ἐμίσουν.
they-hated(-them)

Ἀλλά τοι καὶ τοὺς παῖδας τὸ μὲν παιδεύεσθαι 13
But you-know also the children the indeed being-educated
ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔτι διαμένει· τὸ μέντοι τὰ ἱππικὰ
at the doors still remains the however the horsemanship
μανθάνειν καὶ μελετᾶν ἀπέσβηκε διὰ τὸ
to-learn and to-practice has-been-extinguished because-of the
μὴ εἶναι ὅπου ἂν ἀποφαινόμενοι εὐδοκιμοῖεν.
not to-be where — displaying(-it) they-might-win-repute
καὶ ὅτι γε οἱ παῖδες ἀκούοντες ἐκεῖ πρόσθεν
and that at-least the children hearing there before
τὰς δίκας δικαίως δικαζομένας ἐδόκουν μανθάνειν
the lawsuits justly being-decided seemed to-learn
δικαιότητα, καὶ τοῦτο παντάπασιν ἀνέστραπται·
justice also this altogether has-been-overturned
σαφῶς γὰρ ὁρῶσι νικῶντας ὁπότεροι ἂν πλέον
clearly for they-see winning whichever — more
διδῶσιν.
give

ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν φυομένων ἐκ τῆς γῆς τὰς 14
but also of-the(-plants) growing from the earth the
δυνάμεις οἱ παῖδες πρόσθεν μὲν ἐμάνθανον, ὅπως
powers the children before indeed learned so-that

τοῖς μὲν ὠφελίμοις χρῷντο, τῶν δὲ βλαβερῶν
the indeed beneficial they-might-use from-the but harmful
ἀπέχοιντο· νῦν δὲ ἐοίκασι ταῦτα διδασκομένοις, ὅπως
they-might-abstain now but they-seem these(-things) being-taught so-that
ὅτι πλεῖστα κακοποιῶσιν· οὐδαμοῦ γοῦν πλείους
as most they-may-do-harm nowhere at-any-rate more
ἢ ἐκεῖ οὔτ' ἀποθνῄσκουσιν οὔτε διαφθείρονται ὑπὸ
than there either die or are-destroyed by
φαρμάκων.
poisons

15 Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θρυπτικώτεροι πολὺ νῦν ἢ ἐπὶ
But indeed also more-effeminate much now than in-the-time-of
Κύρου εἰσί. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἔτι τῇ ἐκ Περσῶν παιδείᾳ
Cyrus are then indeed for still the from Persians education
καὶ ἐγκρατείᾳ ἐχρῶντο, τῇ δὲ Μήδων στολῇ καὶ
and self-restraint they-used the and of-Medes dress and
ἁβρότητι· νῦν δὲ τὴν μὲν ἐκ Περσῶν καρτερίαν
luxury now and the indeed from Persians endurance
περιορῶσιν ἀποσβεννυμένην, τὴν δὲ τῶν Μήδων μαλακίαν
they-overlook being-extinguished the and of-the Medes softness
διασῴζονται.
they-preserve

16 σαφηνίσαι δὲ βούλομαι καὶ τὴν θρύψιν αὐτῶν.
to-make-clear and I-wish also the effeminacy their
ἐκείνοις γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν τὰς εὐνὰς οὐ μόνον
for-them for first indeed the beds not only
ἀρκεῖ μαλακῶς ὑποστρώννυσθαι, ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ τῶν
it-suffices softly to-be-spread but already also of-the
κλινῶν τοὺς πόδας ἐπὶ ταπίδων τιθέασιν, ὅπως μὴ
couches the feet on carpets they-set so-that not
ἀντερείδῃ τὸ δάπεδον, ἀλλ' ὑπείκωσιν αἱ τάπιδες.
resist the floor but give-way the carpets

καὶ μὴν τὰ πεττόμενα ἐπὶ τράπεζαν ὅσα
and indeed the(-things) baked for table whatever
τε πρόσθεν ηὕρητο, οὐδὲν αὐτῶν ἀφῄρηται,
both before had-been-invented nothing of-them has-been-taken-away
ἄλλα τε ἀεὶ καινὰ ἐπιμηχανῶνται· καὶ ὄψα γε
others and always new they-contrive and relishes at-least
ὡσαύτως· καὶ γὰρ καινοποιητὰς ἀμφοτέρων τούτων
likewise and for inventors of-both these
κέκτηνται.
they-have-acquired

ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι οὐ μόνον κεφαλὴν 17
but indeed also in the winter not only head
καὶ σῶμα καὶ πόδας ἀρκεῖ αὐτοῖς ἐσκεπάσθαι,
and body and feet suffices for-them to-be-covered
ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ἄκραις ταῖς χερσὶ χειρῖδας δασείας
but also about tips the hands gloves thick
καὶ δακτυλήθρας ἔχουσιν. ἔν γε μὴν τῷ θέρει
and finger-sheaths they-have in at-least indeed the summer
οὐκ ἀρκοῦσιν αὐτοῖς οὔθ' αἱ τῶν δένδρων
not suffice for-them either the(-shades) of-the trees
οὔθ' αἱ τῶν πετρῶν σκιαί, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ
or the(-ones) of-the rocks shades but in-addition-to
ταύταις ἑτέρας σκιὰς ἄνθρωποι μηχανώμενοι αὐτοῖς
these other shades men contriving for-them
παρεστᾶσι.
stand-beside(-them)

καὶ μὴν ἐκπώματα ἢν μὲν ὡς πλεῖστα ἔχωσι, 18
and indeed cups if indeed as most they-have
τούτῳ καλλωπίζονται· ἢν δ' ἐξ ἀδίκου φανερῶς
in-this they-pride-themselves if and from injustice openly
ᾖ μεμηχανημένα, οὐδὲν τοῦτο αἰσχύνονται·
they-are contrived not-at-all this they-are-ashamed-of

πολὺ γὰρ ηὔξηται ἐν αὐτοῖς ἡ ἀδικία τε καὶ
much for has-grown among them the injustice both and
αἰσχροκέρδεια.
greed-for-gain

19 Ἀλλὰ καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν ἦν ἐπιχώριον αὐτοῖς μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι
But also before indeed it-was native for-them not to-be-seen
πεζῇ πορευομένοις, οὐκ ἄλλου τινὸς ἕνεκα ἢ τοῦ
on-foot marching not of-other any for-the-sake than of-the
ὡς ἱππικωτάτους γίγνεσθαι· νῦν δὲ στρώματα πλείω
as most-skilled-horsemen to-become now but coverings more
ἔχουσιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἢ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐνῶν· οὐ γὰρ
they-have on the horses than on the beds not for
τῆς ἱππείας οὕτως ὥσπερ τοῦ μαλακῶς καθῆσθαι
of-the horsemanship so as of-the softly sitting
ἐπιμέλονται.
they-take-care

20 τά γε μὴν πολεμικὰ πῶς οὐκ εἰκότως νῦν τῷ
the(-things) at-least indeed of-war how not reasonably now in-the
παντὶ χείρους ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσίν; οἷς ἐν μὲν
whole(-thing) worse than before are-they for-whom in indeed
τῷ παρελθόντι χρόνῳ ἐπιχώριον εἶναι ὑπῆρχε τοὺς
the past time native to-be it-was the(-men)
μὲν τὴν γῆν ἔχοντας ἀπὸ ταύτης ἱππότας παρέχεσθαι,
indeed the land having from this horsemen to-provide
οἳ δὴ καὶ ἐστρατεύοντο εἰ δέοι στρατεύεσθαι,
who indeed also campaigned if there-were-need to-campaign
τοὺς δὲ φρουροῦντας πρὸ τῆς χώρας μισθοφόρους
the(-ones) and guarding before the country hired
εἶναι· νῦν δὲ τούς τε θυρωροὺς καὶ τοὺς σιτοποιοὺς
to-be now but the both doorkeepers and the bread-makers
καὶ τοὺς ὀψοποιοὺς καὶ οἰνοχόους καὶ λουτροχόους καὶ
and the cooks and wine-pourers and bath-attendants and

παρατιθέντας καὶ ἀναιροῦντας καὶ κατακοιμίζοντας καὶ
the(-ones)-serving and the(-ones)-clearing and the(-ones)-putting-to-bed and
ἀνιστάντας, καὶ τοὺς κοσμητάς, οἳ ὑποχρίουσί τε καὶ
the(-ones)-raising and the beauticians who paint both and
ἐντρίβουσιν αὐτοὺς καὶ τἆλλα ῥυθμίζουσι, τούτους πάντας
rub them and the-rest arrange these all
ἱππέας οἱ δυνάσται πεποιήκασιν, ὅπως μισθοφορῶσιν
horsemen the lords have-made so-that they-may-serve-for-pay
αὐτοῖς.
them

πλῆθος μὲν οὖν καὶ ἐκ τούτων φαίνεται, οὐ 21
a-multitude indeed then also from these appears not
μέντοι ὄφελός γε οὐδὲν αὐτῶν εἰς πόλεμον· δηλοῖ
however use at-least any of-them for war shows
δὲ καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ γιγνόμενα· κατὰ γὰρ τὴν
and also very the(-things) happening in for the
χώραν αὐτῶν ῥᾷον οἱ πολέμιοι ἢ οἱ φίλοι
country their more-easily the enemies than the friends
ἀναστρέφονται.
move-about

καὶ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν ἀκροβολίζεσθαι 22
and for indeed — Cyrus from-the indeed skirmishing
ἀποπαύσας, θωρακίσας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ
having-stopped(-them) having-armored and both them and
ἵππους καὶ ἓν παλτὸν ἑκάστῳ δοὺς εἰς χεῖρα
horses and one javelin to-each having-given into hand
ὁμόθεν τὴν μάχην ἐποιεῖτο· νῦν δὲ οὔτε
at-close-quarters the battle made now but neither
ἀκροβολίζονται ἔτι οὔτ' εἰς χεῖρας συνιόντες
they-skirmish any-longer nor to hands coming
μάχονται.
they-fight

23 καὶ οἱ πεζοὶ ἔχουσι μὲν γέρρα καὶ κοπίδας
and the foot-soldiers have indeed wicker-shields and sabers
καὶ σαγάρεις ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπὶ Κύρου τὴν
and battle-axes as the(-men) in-the-time-of Cyrus the
μάχην ποιησάμενοι· εἰς χεῖρας δὲ ἰέναι οὐδ' οὗτοι
battle having-made to hands but to-come not-even these
ἐθέλουσιν.
are-willing

24 οὐδέ γε τοῖς δρεπανηφόροις ἅρμασιν ἔτι χρῶνται
nor at-least the scythe-bearing chariots any-longer they-use
ἐφ' ᾧ Κῦρος αὐτὰ ἐποιήσατο. ὃ μὲν γὰρ τιμαῖς
for which(-purpose) Cyrus them made he indeed for with-honors
αὐξήσας τοὺς ἡνιόχους καὶ ἀγαστοὺς ποιήσας εἶχε
having-exalted the charioteers and admirable having-made(-them) had
τοὺς εἰς τὰ ὅπλα ἐμβαλοῦντας· οἱ δὲ νῦν
the(-men) into the armed(-ranks) going-to-charge the(-men) and now
οὐδὲ γιγνώσκοντες τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς ἅρμασιν οἴονται
not-even knowing the(-men) on the chariots think
σφίσιν ὁμοίους τοὺς ἀνασκήτους τοῖς ἠσκηκόσιν
for-themselves alike the untrained to-the trained
ἔσεσθαι.
to-be

25 οἳ δὲ ὁρμῶσι μέν, πρὶν δ' ἐν τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶναι
they and charge indeed before but among the enemies to-be
οἳ μὲν ἄκοντες ἐκπίπτουσιν, οἳ δ' ἐξάλλονται,
some indeed unwillingly fall-out others and leap-off
ὥστε ἄνευ ἡνιόχων γιγνόμενα τὰ ζεύγη πολλάκις
so-that without charioteers being the teams often
πλείω κακὰ τοὺς φίλους ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους
more harm to-the friends than to-the enemies
ποιεῖ.
does

ἐπεὶ μέντοι καὶ αὐτοὶ γιγνώσκουσιν οἷα σφίσι 26
since however also themselves they-know what-sort for-them
τὰ πολεμιστήρια ὑπάρχει, ὑφίενται, καὶ οὐδεὶς
the war-equipment is they-give-way and no-one
ἔτι ἄνευ Ἑλλήνων εἰς πόλεμον καθίσταται,
any-longer without Greeks into war is-set
οὔτε ὅταν ἀλλήλοις πολεμῶσιν οὔτε ὅταν
either when with-one-another they-make-war or when
Ἕλληνες αὐτοῖς ἀντιστρατεύωνται· ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς
Greeks against-them campaign but even against
τούτους ἐγνώκασι μεθ' Ἑλλήνων τοὺς πολέμους
these they-have-decided with Greeks the wars
ποιεῖσθαι.
to-make

Ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ οἶμαι ἅπερ ὑπεθέμην ἀπείργασταί 27
I indeed then think what-very I-proposed has-been-accomplished
μοι. φημὶ γὰρ Πέρσας καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτοῖς καὶ
by-me I-say for Persians and the(-men) with them both
ἀσεβεστέρους περὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνοσιωτέρους περὶ συγγενεῖς
more-impious toward gods and more-unholy toward kin
καὶ ἀδικωτέρους περὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ ἀνανδροτέρους
and more-unjust toward the others and more-cowardly
τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν ἀποδεδεῖχθαι.
in-the(-things) for the war now than before to-have-been-shown
εἰ δέ τις τἀναντία ἐμοὶ γιγνώσκοι, τὰ ἔργα αὐτῶν
if but anyone the-opposite to-me should-think the deeds their
ἐπισκοπῶν εὑρήσει αὐτὰ μαρτυροῦντα τοῖς ἐμοῖς
examining he-will-find them bearing-witness to-the my
λόγοις.
words